

Yazarlar

Atiye Gamze ALTUNAY Ayhan Ayten TANRIVERDİ Esra AKBAŞ DAKNİ Halil ibrahim DEMİRBİLEK Janset FIRAT Muhibbe Nazan YURT Ruhan EREN TERZİ Yeşim AKMANOL ÇINAR Zehra TAMER



Editör Doç. Dr. Perihan SAVAŞ

Program Geliştirme Uzmanı Seçil YILDIRIM PALABIYIK

Ölçme ve Değerlendirme Uzmanı İlkay ÜÇGÜL ÖCAL

Rehberlik ve Psikolojik Danışma Uzmanı Mustafa KARA

> Dil Uzmanı Nuriye KARAKAYA Nur GEDİK BAL

Grafik Tasarım Uzmanı Yelis ERBİL Fatih SAĞLAM



İSTİKLÂL MARŞI

Korkma, sönmez bu şafaklarda yüzen al sancak; Sönmeden yurdumun üstünde tüten en son ocak. O benim milletimin yıldızıdır, parlayacak; O benimdir, o benim milletimindir ancak.

Çatma, kurban olayım, çehreni ey nazlı hilâl! Kahraman ırkıma bir gül! Ne bu şiddet, bu celâl? Sana olmaz dökülen kanlarımız sonra helâl. Hakkıdır Hakk'a tapan milletimin istiklâl.

Ben ezelden beridir hür yaşadım, hür yaşarım. Hangi çılgın bana zincir vuracakmış? Şaşarım! Kükremiş sel gibiyim, bendimi çiğner, aşarım. Yırtarım dağları, enginlere sığmam, taşarım.

Garbın âfâkını sarmışsa çelik zırhlı duvar, Benim iman dolu göğsüm gibi serhaddim var. Ulusun, korkma! Nasıl böyle bir imanı boğar, Medeniyyet dediğin tek dişi kalmış canavar?

Arkadaş, yurduma alçakları uğratma sakın; Siper et gövdeni, dursun bu hayâsızca akın. Doğacaktır sana va'dettiği günler Hakk'ın; Kim bilir, belki yarın, belki yarından da yakın. Bastığın yerleri toprak diyerek geçme, tanı: Düşün altındaki binlerce kefensiz yatanı. Sen şehit oğlusun, incitme, yazıktır, atanı: Verme, dünyaları alsan da bu cennet vatanı.

Kim bu cennet vatanın uğruna olmaz ki feda? Şüheda fışkıracak toprağı sıksan, şüheda! Cânı, cânânı, bütün varımı alsın da Huda, Etmesin tek vatanımdan beni dünyada cüda.

Ruhumun senden İlâhî, şudur ancak emeli: Değmesin mabedimin göğsüne nâmahrem eli. Bu ezanlar -ki şehadetleri dinin temeli-Ebedî yurdumun üstünde benim inlemeli.

O zaman vecd ile bin secde eder -varsa- taşım, Her cerîhamdan İlâhî, boşanıp kanlı yaşım, Fışkırır ruh-ı mücerret gibi yerden na'şım; O zaman yükselerek arşa değer belki başım.

Dalgalan sen de şafaklar gibi ey şanlı hilâl! Olsun artık dökülen kanlarımın hepsi helâl. Ebediyyen sana yok, ırkıma yok izmihlâl; Hakkıdır hür yaşamış bayrağımın hürriyet; Hakkıdır Hakk'a tapan milletimin istiklâl!

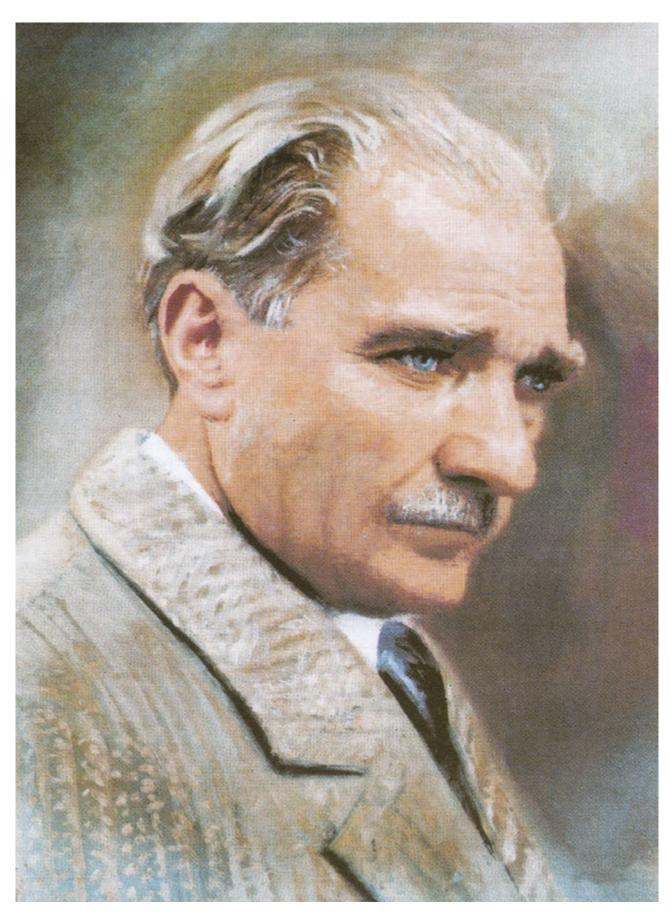
GENÇLİĞE HİTABE

Ey Türk gençliği! Birinci vazifen, Türk istiklâlini, Türk Cumhuriyetini, ilelebet muhafaza ve müdafaa etmektir.

Mevcudiyetinin ve istikbalinin yegâne temeli budur. Bu temel, senin en kıymetli hazinendir. İstikbalde dahi, seni bu hazineden mahrum etmek isteyecek dâhilî ve hâricî bedhahların olacaktır. Bir gün, istiklâl ve cumhuriyeti müdafaa mecburiyetine düşersen, vazifeye atılmak için, içinde bulunacağın vaziyetin imkân ve şeraitini düşünmeyeceksin! Bu imkân ve şerait, çok namüsait bir mahiyette tezahür edebilir. İstiklâl ve cumhuriyetine kastedecek düşmanlar, bütün dünyada emsali görülmemiş bir galibiyetin mümessili olabilirler. Cebren ve hile ile aziz vatanın bütün kaleleri zapt edilmiş, bütün tersanelerine girilmiş, bütün orduları dağıtılmış ve memleketin her köşesi bilfiil işgal edilmiş olabilir. Bütün bu şeraitten daha elîm ve daha vahim olmak üzere, memleketin dâhilinde iktidara sahip olanlar gaflet ve dalâlet ve hattâ hıyanet içinde bulunabilirler. Hattâ bu iktidar sahipleri şahsî menfaatlerini, müstevlîlerin siyasî emelleriyle tevhit edebilirler. Millet, fakr u zaruret içinde harap ve bîtap düşmüş olabilir.

Ey Türk istikbalinin evlâdı! İşte, bu ahval ve şerait içinde dahi vazifen, Türk istiklâl ve cumhuriyetini kurtarmaktır. Muhtaç olduğun kudret, damarlarındaki asil kanda mevcuttur.

Mustafa Kemal Atatürk



MUSTAFA KEMAL ATATÜRK

STUDENT'S BOOK CONTENTS

UNIT	MODULES	LISTENING & SPEAKING	READING & WRITING
UNIT 1 STUDYING ABROAD (p. 12)	1A First Day at School, (p. 14) 1B Nationalities (p. 20) 1C My family (p. 26)	Identifying words related to greetings Identifying countries and languages Introducing oneself Talking about possessions and jobs Exchanging personal information	Identifying countries, nationalities, languages, and jobs Reading about classroom language Spelling Writing a simple postcard Drawing a family tree
UNIT 2 MY NEIGHBOURHOOD (p. 34)	2A East or West, Home's Best (p. 34) 2B My Town (p. 40) 2C Shopping Time (p. 45)	Finding a place on the map Identifying permissions Distinguishing differences in vocabulary between British and American English Describing neighbourhood Making a dialogue Asking for and giving simple directions Talking about location of things	Responding to questions Distinguishing between cardinal numbers and ordinal numbers Highlighting the prepositions of place Identifying compound nouns Describing neighbourhood
UNIT 3 MOVIES (p. 52)	3A Action! (p. 54) 3B The Seventh Art: Cinema (p. 60) 3C Fame (p. 66)	Identifying vocabulary Talking about movie posters Practising conversations Making excuses Asking and telling the time, dates, seasons, and months of a year, days of a week Talking about likes, dislikes, and interests	Finding out movie types Reading about films Writing a short paragraph Writing text messages Preparing movie posters
UNIT 4 ANIMALS AND NATURE (p. 70)	4A People Taking Care of Animals (p. 72) 4B Animals' Lives (p. 78) 4C Natural Events (p. 84)	Identifying main ideas Recognizing tag questions Talking about animals Offering solutions Discussing preferences with reasons Modifying actions in descriptions Talking about daily activities	Identifying specific information Describing natural events Identifying time expressions Identifying the words that modify actions Writing a short paragraph Preparing a poster
UNIT 5 CELEBRITIES (p. 90)	5A Famous People (p. 92) 5B Stars (p. 98) 5C Runway (p. 104)	Listening in order to give opinions Identifying people in pictures Describing a celebrity's appearance and character Discussing and comparing characteristics Expressing opinions Describing emotions	Guessing the meanings of related words Distinguishing main differences in vocabulary between British and American English Writing a descriptive paragraph Describing things Creating words by adding prefixes
UNIT 6 INTERCULTURAL TOPICS (p. 110)	6A Different Weather Events and Cultures (p. 112) 6B Travel and Tourism (p. 118) 6C National, Moral, and Cultural Values (p. 124)	Identifying the public announcements Finding out how to buy a flight ticket Making use of facial, paralinguistic, and other clues Taking part in conversations Talking about landmarks and weather conditions Talking about the events happening in pictures Talking about national values	Getting the idea of the content Finding out the required information in timetables or time zones Filling out a hotel registration form Filling in a table Writing a short paragraph
UNIT 7 WONDERS OF THE WORLD (p. 130)	7A Wonderfully Talented People (p. 132) 7B Seven Wonders of the World (p. 138) 7C Natural Wonders of the World (p. 144)	Identifying main ideas Organizing information Asking and answering simple questions Talking about actions performed without help or alone	Reading simple informative texts Matching headings with paragraphs Finding out topic sentences Identifying vocabulary related to the topic Answering questions on a quiz show Writing a paragraph

UNIT	MODULES	LISTENING & SPEAKING	READING & WRITING
UNIT 8 EMERGENCY AND HEALTH PROBLEMS (p. 150)	8A What's Wrong? (p. 152) 8B An Apple a Day Keeps the Doctor Away (p. 157) 8C Emergency (p. 163)	Identifying regulations about health care Completing dialogues Asking for help from the emergency services Offering solution for health problems Responding to simple questions Talking about healthy activities Making an appointment	Recognising basic signs in public places Obtaining information Guessing the meaning of words Finding out the process of First Aid Writing short and simple formulaic notes or advice Writing a dialogue
UNIT 9 PARTY (p. 168)	9A Organizing Parties and Celebrations (p. 170) 9B Traditional Ceremonies and Festivals (p. 176) 9C Planning for Gathering (p. 182)	Completing a dialogue Predicting content from pictures Discussing what to do for a party Making arrangement to meet someone Making suggestions Describing plans and arrangements Taking part in a role play	Identifying main ideas Understanding short and simple messages in invitation cards Identifying the related vocabulary Writing simple invitation cards Creating words by adding suffixes Writing an informal e-mail
UNIT 10 TELEVISION (p. 188)	10A What's on TV Tonight? (p. 190) 10B Future Inventions (p. 196) 10C Weather Forecast (p. 202)	Identifying the sequence of an event Following the main points of an extended discussion Distinguishing the purpose of the TV programmes Interrupting someone in a conversation politely Agreeing or disagreeing with others Analyzing media messages Talking about weather conditions, TV programmes, plans for the future	Finding out the main topic Identifying easily confused words Using simple connectors in sentences Preparing a TV schedule Listing pros and cons of television
UNIT 11 SCHOOL LIFE (p. 208)	11A At School (p. 210) 11B Educational Rights and Manners (p. 216) 11C Liberty and Independence are My Character (p. 222)	Identifying related vocabulary Talking about what is happening Talking about dos and don'ts Talking about school subjects and facilities Talking about the importance of education rights Taking part in a conversation	Finding out the main topic Reading a short text on effective time management Finding out whether something is sufficient or more than needed Preparing charts about school rules Writing a formal letter
UNIT 12 DETECTIVE STORIES (p. 228)	12A Crime 1 (p. 230) 12B Crime 2 (p. 236) 12C In Court (p. 242)	Putting the events in the correct order Matching related vocabulary Guessing the end of a story Acting out a role play Creating a meaningful story Telling a story Expressing common responses	Reading a short detective story Filling in a timeline with events and dates Talking about past events Making an outline to write a story Writing the end of a detective story Describing an imaginary crime scene
UNIT 13 OLD TIMES (p. 248)	13A Oldies but Goldies (p. 250) 13B Ancient Civilizations (p. 256) 13C Historic Places (p. 262)	Identifying the details of a narration Locating specific information in charts Talking about old habits Giving a short presentation Making an inference Sharing general knowledge Comparing pictures of a city Describing a photo	Finding headings Identifying the differences between lifestyles and customs Completing a dialogue Studying and writing a short descriptive paragraph Writing an interview
UNIT 14 TRAVEL (p. 268)	14A On the Move (p. 270) 14B Once I Have (p. 276) 14C Before You Set Off (p. 282)	Completing a dialogue Receiving simple information Identifying movements of things or people Exchanging ideas Making reservations Talking about holiday plans Acting out a dialogue	Matching vacation types with pictures Filling in flight and train schedules Writing an informal e-mail Preparing a travel guide Filling in a guest registration form

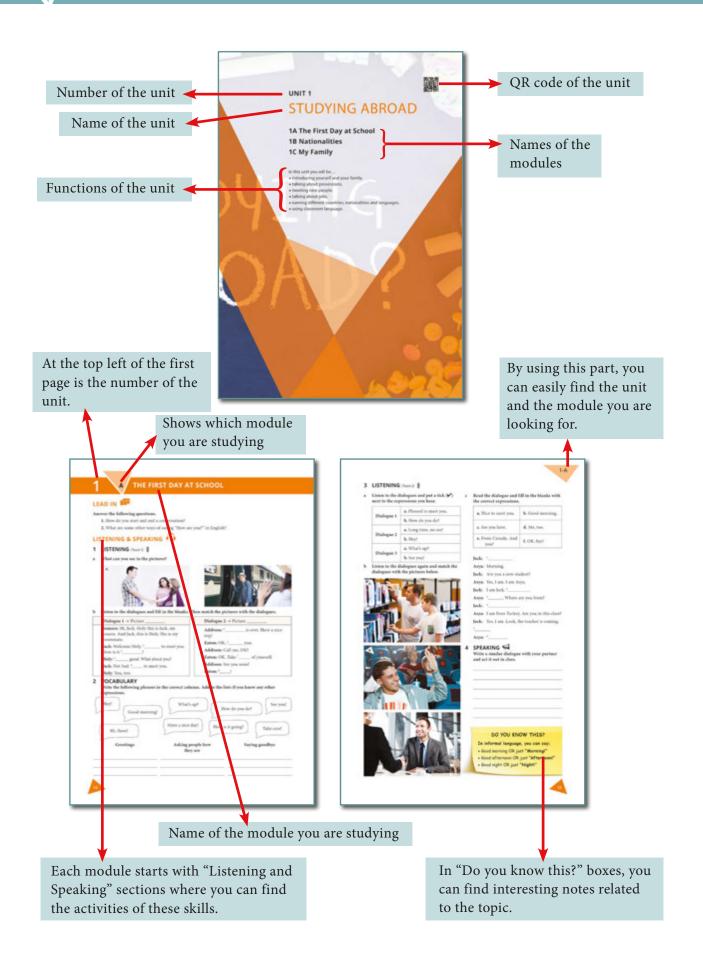
UNIT	MODULES	LISTENING & SPEAKING	READING & WRITING
UNIT 15 SPORTS (p. 288)	15A Are You into Sports? (p. 290) 15B I Believe in Myself! (p. 296) 15C Sports Can Change Life! (p. 302)	Using false starts and fillers Talking about positive effects of sports Talking about indoor/ outdoor sports Matching pictures with sports Completing information about sportsmen Taking notes	Preparing a sports magazine Writing a short paragraph Reading biographies Telling past events and experiences in a text
UNIT 16 HELPFUL TIPS (p. 308)	16A For Social Awareness (p. 310) 16B For Exam Stress (p. 316) 16C For Household Chores (p. 322)	Giving and receiving advice Expressing approvals Producing tips to manage stress Talking about helpful tips to be a successful student Talking about household chores Talking about possible conditions	Identifying given advice Reading for specific information Matching headings with paragraphs Preparing a notice board Writing a letter to an advice column
UNIT 17 FOOD AND DRINKS (p. 328)	17A Common Ground all Around (p. 330) 17B Different Styles Possible (p. 336) 17C Just in Case (p. 342)	Matching pictures with food and drinks Ordering the steps of cooking process Finding out the ingredients of a recipe Comparing different countries' specialties Talking about digital stories Talking about food and drinks, culture, and customs Talking about what is prepared in different celebrations	Matching pictures with vocabulary Scanning a text Finding out cuisines of different countries Identifying particular kinds of food and drinks chosen in particular celebrations Reading about creating a digital story Writing a recipe Writing about celebrating special occasions
UNIT 18 DIGITAL ERA (p. 348)	18A Gadgets of the Era (p. 350) 18B Social Media (p. 356) 18C Media in Digital Era (p. 362)	Listening to podcasts in English Taking notes Analyzing basic points in a news report Preparing a Vlog Commenting on the news Talking about preferences Talking about current events Talking about netiquette and Internet security	Writing formal and informal e-mails Preparing a news report Identifying detailed information Highlighting new generation words which are used to define new terminology in Digital Era Finding out the importance of netiquette and Internet security
UNIT 19 HEROES AND HEROINES (p. 368)	19A Supernatural Powers (p. 370) 19B Patriots of My Land (p. 376) 19C You are My Hero (p. 382)	Talking about hero(ine)s in real life Talking about patriotism Talking about supernatural powers of well- known superhero(ine)s	Identifying related words Guessing the meanings of the phrasal verbs from context Placing the headings of a text Describing a superhero(ine) Making an outline for a composition Writing a composition
UNIT 20 SHOPPING (p. 388)	20A Traditional Clothes (p. 390) 20B More than a Market (p. 396) 20C Online Shopping (p. 402)	Listening for specific information to fill in the blanks in a dialogue on shopping Identifying related vocabulary Comparing things Acting out a role play Telling a story	Finding the main idea Identifying related words Answering comprehension questions Highlighting quantities Writing a short informative paragraph Writing a complaint letter

IRREGULAR VERBS LIST (p. 408)

PHONETIC CHART (p. 410)

REFERENCES (p. 411)

ORGANISATION



In "Everyday English" parts, you can find some common expressions related to everyday life in English.

"Remember This!" boxes are prepared in order to remind you of the structures learned before.

In each module, there is "Reading and Writing" section where you can develop the related skills.



TRADING & WRITING

**Rect Evold's a sent below and asserver the questions.

I. In it is a formed a solid-read or small

E. When it there is no small below and asserver the questions.

I. In it is a formed a solid-read or small

E. When in the or small define and small

E. When in the or small define and small

E. When discontinuous the supering appropriate program of the control of the street of the control

You can find some common idioms and their use in a sentence in "Today's Idiom" boxes.

In writing parts, there are some spaces left in the sections so that you can take your notes here.

"Check This Out" boxes are prepared as a reference point of the structures covered in the unit.

ICONS USED IN THE BOOK



lead in



listening





listening and speaking





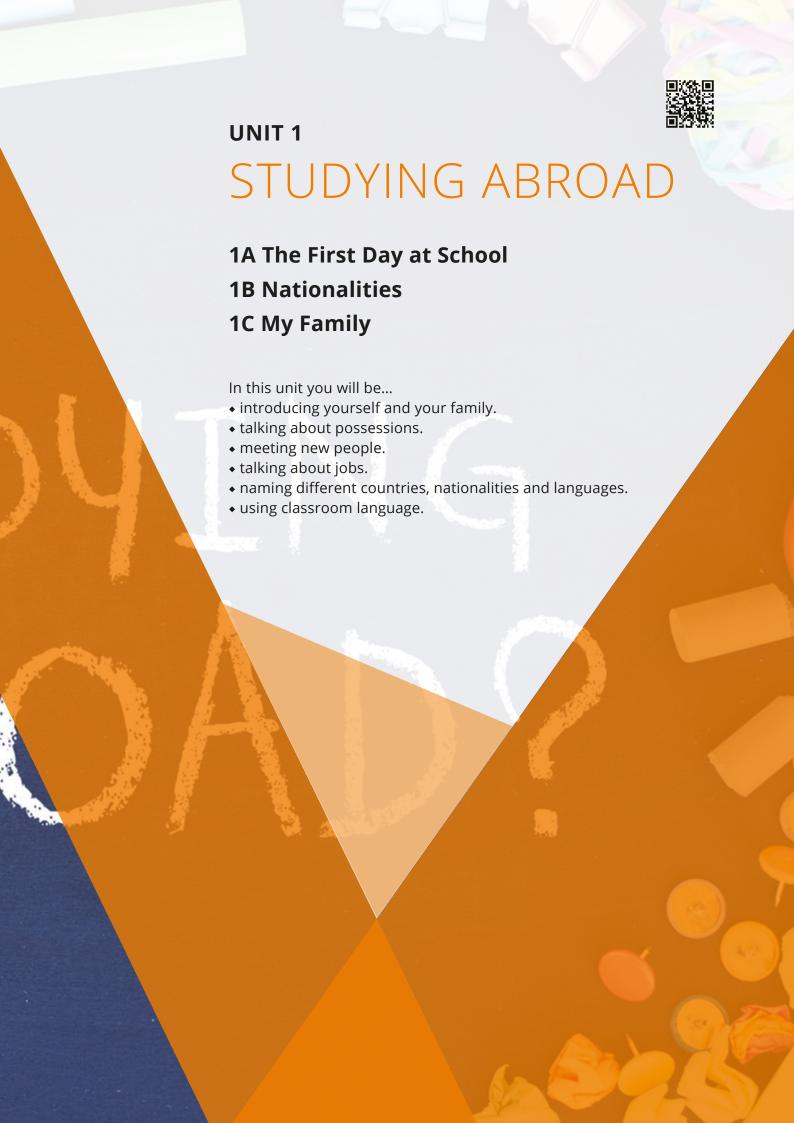


reading and writing



extra resources (http://kitap.eba.gov.tr/karekod)





LEAD IN

Answer the following questions.

- 1. How do you start and end a conversation?
- 2. What are some other ways of saying "How are you?" in English?

LISTENING & SPEAKING 4 🌶



- LISTENING (Track 1)
- What can you see in the pictures?





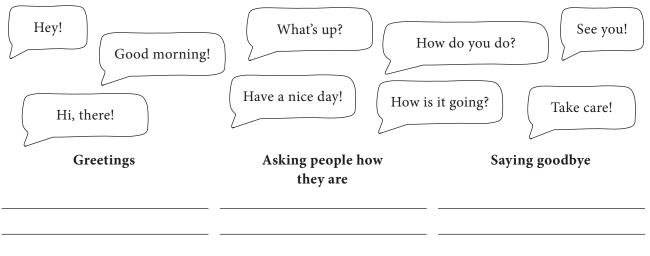
Listen to the dialogues and fill in the blanks. Then match the pictures with the dialogues.

Dialogue 1 → P	Dialogue 1 → Picture		
	Samara: Hi, Jack. Oh, by the way this is my roommate Holy. Holy, this is Jack. He is my cousin.		
Jack: Oh, ¹	How is it ²	?	
Holy: 3 go	ood. What about you?		
Jack: Not bad. 4_	to meet you.		
Holy: Nice to m	eet you, too.		

Dialogue 2 → Picture
Addison: 5 is over. Have a nice trip!
Eaton: OK, ⁶ you.
Addison: Call me, OK?
Eaton: OK. Take ⁷ of yourself.
Addison: See you soon!
Eaton: 8!

2 VOCABULARY

Write the following phrases in the correct column. Add to the lists if you know any other expressions.



3 LISTENING (Track 2)))

a Listen to the dialogues and put a tick (next to the expressions you hear.

Dialogue 1	a. Pleased to meet you.
	b. How do you do?
Dialogue 2	a. Long time, no see!
	b. Hey!
Dialogue 3	a. What's up?
	b. See you!

b Listen to the dialogues again and match the dialogues with the pictures below.







c Read the dialogue and fill in the blanks with the correct expressions.

a. Nice to meet you.	b. Good morning.
c. See you later.	d. Me, too.
e. From Canada. And you?	f. OK, bye!
•	

Jack:	
Asya:	Morning.
Jack:	Are you a new student?
Asya:	Yes, I am. I am Asya.
Jack:	I am Jack. ²
Asya:	³ Where are you from?
Jack:	4
Asya:	I am from Turkey. Are you in this class?
Jack:	Yes, I am. Look, the teacher is coming.
5	
Asya:	6

4 SPEAKING

Write a similar dialogue with your partner and act it out in class.			

DO YOU KNOW THIS?

In informal language, you can say;

- + Good morning OR just "Morning!"
- Good afternoon OR just "Afternoon!"
- Good night OR just "Night!"

READING & WRITING



READING

Read the dialogue and underline the phrases about greetings, introducing, and closing the conversation.

Terry: Good morning!

Ayşe: Good morning! Are you a student in this school?

Terry: Yes. I'm an exchange student here.

Ayşe: That's great. I'm Ayşe.

Terry: My name's Terry. I'm from Ireland.

Ayşe: Ireland? What a wonderful country! Glad to meet

you, Terry.

Terry: Me, too.

Ayşe: I'm sure you like our country and its people.

Terry: Exactly! You have an amazing country.

Ayşe: Yes, it really is. I have to leave now. Catch you later,

OK? Goodbye.

Terry: Bye!



2 LISTENING (Track 3)))

Listen to the dialogue and write true (T) or false (F). Correct the false ones.

_	
1. Marco is Italian.	
2. Marco is a new student at the university.	
3. Taner is in Genetic Engineering department.	
4. Marco can see Taner very often.	

3 PRONUNCIATION (Track 4))

Listen and circle the word you hear in each sentence.

Affirmative	Negative
1. I am/T'm from Turkey.	5. I am not/ I'm not from England.
2. You're/ are an accountant.	6. You aren't/ are not a teacher.
3. He's/ is in the department of English.	7. She isn't / is not in music class.
4. It's/ is snowy today.	8. We aren't/ are not at the café.

GAME

Write an animal, a country, an object, a fruit/vegetable, and a celebrity starting with the same letter.

LETTER	ANIMAL	OBJECT	FRUIT/ VEGETABLE	COUNTRY	CELEBRITY
С	Cat	Cupboard	Cucumber	Canada	Celine Dion
M					
D					
S					

b Choose two of the items on chart 4a and describe them to your friends. They guess your words. Read the sentences in CHECK THIS OUT! box and use "a/ an" correctly.

e.g. Student A

It is a vegetable. It is green. It is healthy. It is cheap.

Student B

Student A

Is it a cucumber?

Yes, it is.

CHECK THIS OUT!

FALSE TRUE

It is a cucumber.I am teacher.I am a teacher.This is a books.

It is water. It is water.

- 5 Look at the pictures below. Match the bubbles with the pictures.
 - **A.** The boy and the girl in white T-shirts are my friends. Their names are Patrick and Susan. Their department is medicine.
- **B.** The blonde woman in the picture is my cousin. She is a teacher. She is a kind person.
- C. The girls in the picture are my best friends. We are in the same class. Our friendship is wonderful.
- **D.** The little girl in the picture is my cousin. She is with her parents in their garden.









1. 2. 3. 4.

6 LISTENING (Track 5)))

Read the text below and circle the correct option. Then listen and check.



This is the photo of my family. Look at this woman. She is ¹my/I mother. ²She/ Her name is Susan. She has got long brown hair. ³My/I father is in front of her. ⁴He/ His name is Tom. Alex is ⁵he/ his brother. ⁶His/ He is married to Susan. ¬They/ Their have got two children. Henry is 6 months old and Rose is 6 years old. The woman and man in the middle of the photo are ⁶our/ my grandparents. I am hugging ⁰my/ her grandfather in the picture as you see.

7 EVERYDAY ENGLISH

a Read the dialogue. Then circle the phrases about greetings.

Molly: Hello! It's me. Molly.

Sally: Hi, Molly.

Molly: Is it your new phone number?

Sally: Yes.

Molly: 1 How is it going?

Sally: Everything is OK. Can I send my project

to you? Can you check it?

Molly: ²Certainly!

Sally: Thank you. ³What's your e-mail

address?

Molly: m-o-l-l-y@g-e-n-mail.com Sally: 4Can you repeat it, please?

Molly: It's m-o-l-l-y@g-e-n-mail.com

Sally: OK, you will get it in a few minutes.

Thank you in advance.

Molly: No problem Sally. Take care.

b Change the underlined sentences with the sentences below.

a. Say it again, please.	b. Can
	you give me your e-mail?
c. Sure!	d. What's up?

8 WRITING

Write a similar dialogue as in Exercise 7 and act it out in class.

You:
Your partner:
You:
Your partner:
You:
Your partner:
You:
Your partner:

9 LISTENING (Track 6)))

Listen to the dialogue and fill in the blanks.

Abel: Hi. I am a new student here. I want to take my ID card.

Secretary: OK. Welcome to our school. Let me

take a look. What is your name?

Abel: 1

Secretary: Can you spell your first name

please?

Abel: Of course. ²_____.

Secretary: OK. Surname, please.

Abel: ³_____.

Secretary: The last letter is D, right?

Abel: No, T as in "Tango".

Secretary: OK. I got it. What is your telephone

number?

Abel: 4

Secretary: ⁵______. Is that right?

Abel: Yes, it is.

Secretary: OK. What is your school number?

Abel: It is ⁶_____.

Secretary: Can you repeat it, please?

Abel: Sure! ⁷_____.

Secretary: Finally, your photo please.

Abel: Here it is.

Secretary: OK, that is good. You can take your

card in the afternoon.

Abel: At what time?

Secretary: You can come at ⁸_____ p.m. **Abel:** OK, thank you sir. Have a nice day.

DO YOU KNOW THIS?

You can use words when you spell.

e.g.

- A as in "Alpha".
- B as in "Bravo".
- + C as in "Charlie".

10 READING

Read the first day speech of a teacher and match the highlighted instructions with the pictures below.

Hi everybody. My name is Özlem Yağmaz and I am your English teacher. For our lesson, we have some rules. First, raise your hand when you want to speak. Second, bring your dictionaries to English classes. And speak English at all times in our courses.

In our lessons, we have a lot of activities. In role playing activities, you work with a partner. In some activities you work with a team and in some of the activities you work individually and take turns in your answers. We also have daily homework in English classes and I check out your homework or collect your homework papers.

That's all for now. Let's start the lesson. Please open your books at page 1 and look at the first exercise. Can you read the dialogue and act it out?







1. _____

2. _____









4

5.

6.







7.

8. _____

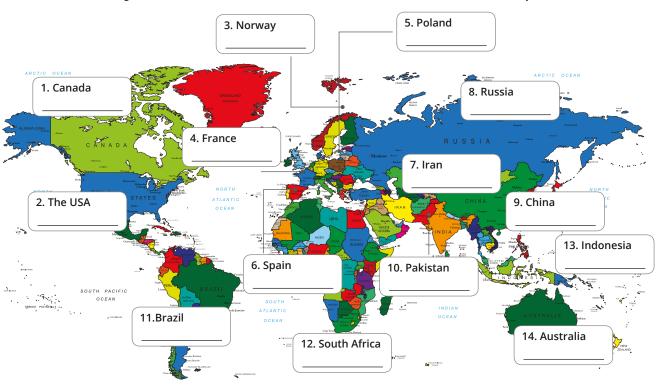
9.

LEAD IN

1 Match the flags with the countries.



2 Look at the map and write the nationalities stated in the box below the country names.



Chinese	Pakistani	Spanish	Norwegian	Australian	Polish	South African
French	Iranian	Indonesian	Canadian	Russian	Brazilian	American

3 Do you know which country is famous for...

1. its sushi?	
2. its pizza?	
3. the Eiffel Tower?	
4. 15 July Martyrs Bridge?	
5. its tradition called "Sieasta"?	

LISTENING & SPEAKING



- LISTENING (Track 7)) 1
- Listen to the recording and write the name of the country below each picture.





	-	
	Est.	
-11		
	RWITHER	Section 1





5.	

6			
4			

b	Listen to the recording again and fill in the
	blanks with the correct information.

1.	Kangaroos	live	in	·	
----	-----------	------	----	---	--

- 2. _____ is a bridge between Asia and Europe.
- 3. Women wear traditional clothes on special days in _____
- **4.** _____ has got unique style of music.
- **5.** Taj Mahal is in ______.
- **6.** Rome is the capital city of _____.

2 SPEAKING

Describe a country and its features to your class without telling its name. Then ask your friends to guess which country it is.

e.g. It is a country in Europe. Learning the language of this country is difficult. It is famous for the Eiffel Tower.

3 LISTENING)

Listen to the ways of saying "I love you" in different languages. Listen and decide which languages they belong to. (Track 8)

1
LOVE
YOU,
MOM!

	I LOVE YOU	LANGUAGE
	1. Te amo	
=	2. Ti amo	
	3. Ich liebe dich	
į	4. Je t'aime	
	5. S'agapo	

b	You are going to listen to the conversation of
	two friends talking about other languages.
	Tick the languages they talk about. (Track 9)

1. Italian	
2. Turkish	
3. Hungarian	
4. English	
5. German	
6. Spanish	

DO YOU KNOW THIS?

The most spoken languages in the world are:

- Chinese
- English
- Spanish
- Hindi
- Arabic

VOCABULARY

Find the odd one out. Number 1 is done for you.

1.	Italian	German	French	Turkey 🗸
2.	Bye!	Hello!	See you!	Take care!
3.	His	Their	She	Our
4.	Spain	Canada	Thailand	Greek
5.	Rome	Ankara	Asia	Bangkok

Explain the odd one as in the example given in the speech bubble below. b

> In question 1, Turkey is the answer because Turkey is a country, but the others are nationalities/ languages.

Circle the correct option.

- 1. Eric is from England/ English.
- 2. The capital city of Italy/ Italian is Rome.
- 3. Turkey/ Turkish is popular with its cuisine.
- 4. I am not good at Spain/ Spanish.
- 5. This is the map of Hungary/ Hungarian.
- 6. Tokyo is a big city in Japanese/ Japan.



SPEAKING 🖼

Look at the photos below and find who they are and where they are from.









__/ ______ 3. ______/ _____ 4. _____

Think of a celebrity and ask your pair where this person is from and what her/ his nationality is as in the example.

e.g.

Student A: Where is Jackie Chan from?

Student A: What is his nationality?

Student B: He is from China.

Student B: He is Chinese.

READING & WRITING



READING 1

- Look at the photo and make guesses about their nationalities and their ages.
- Read the letter and circle the correct option.

Hi Ali!

My name is Bruce. I'm 15 years old. I'm a student in a secondary school. My family and I live in Edinburgh. It's the capital city of Scotland. My father, Louis, is a teacher in a primary school. He's Scottish. He can speak French and German. He's 48 years old. My mother, Eva, is a cabin crew. She's from



Belgium. She can speak French, Flemish, and English. She is 45. This is a photo of me, my cousin, and my brother. My cousin's name is Catrina. She is 25 years old. She's British. She is a nursing student in a university. Her school is in Glasgow. My brother's name is Logan. He is a social butterfly. He's a football player and a good goal keeper. I would like to learn more about you. Write me soon.

Bruce

- 1. Bruce is Logan's cousin/brother.
- 2. Bruce and his family live in Edinburgh/ Glasgow.
- 3. Catrina is a nurse/ university student.
- 4. The sender of the email is Bruce/ Ali.
- Read the letter again and fill in the chart.

Name	Country	Nationality	Language	Job
Bruce	Scotland			
Louis				
Eva				
Catrina				
Logan				

2 PRONUNCIATION (Track 10)))

Listen and circle the correct form you hear.

1. I've/ have got	a lot of friends.
2. You've/ have got	a high tech mobile phone.
3. She's/ has got	a sister.
4. It's/ has got	а рирру.
5. We've/ have got	a good English teacher.
6. They've/ have got	a big house.



TODAY'S IDIOM

A social butterfly

If someone is a social butterfly, she or he is very social and outgoing.

e.g. My daughter is a social butterfly, but my son is very shy.

3 WRITING

a Unscramble the sentences and write a paragraph about the country in each picture.



- 1. a/ kingdom/ is/ it.
- 2. like/ their/ king/ people.
- **3.** is/ city/ Bangkok/ the capital.
- **4.** Thai/ language/ their/ is.

5.	famous/	it's/	Siamese	cats/	for.

2		
	100	Mile.

- 1. is/ it/ country/ a large.
- 2. the capital city/ Cairo/ is/.
- **3.** are/ agriculture and tourism/ this country/important/ for.
- **4.** its/ it's/ for/ famous/ pyramids, civilisation, and temples.
- **5.** longest/ the Nile/ river/ is/ the/ in the world.

7		

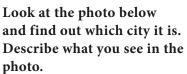
b	Find out which countries	they
	are.	

1			
2			

c Look at the texts in 3a and write a similar paragraph about your country.

about your country.		

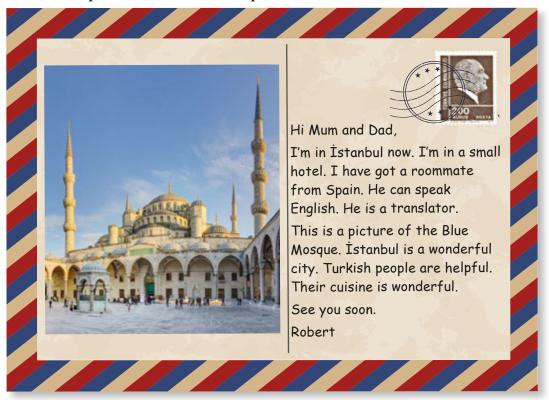
4 SPEAKING 🖼





5 WRITING

a Read the postcard and answer the questions.



- 1. Where is Robert now?
- **2.** What is the name of the mosque in the picture?
- b Look at the postcard above and write a similar postcard to your friend or your family.



- **3.** What is his roommate's occupation?
- **4.** Is Turkish food delicious?
- c There are two spelling mistakes in each sentence below. Find and correct the mistakes.
 - **1.** He is not from Portuguse, he is from Caneda.
 - **2.** Russian is a very cold county.
 - **3.** I don't know his natinality, but I know his birtplace.
 - **4.** The capitl of Scotlend is Edinburgh.

LEAD IN



Place the words in the chart into the correct column.



brother	grandmother	cousin	uncle	sister
aunt	husband	nephew	mother	child
niece	wife	grandchild	daughter	grandfather
parent	son	father	stepmother	mother-in-law

FEMALE	MALE	NEUTRAL
mother	brother	child

DO YOU KNOW THIS?

IN-LAWS

In English, we use "in-laws" to talk about the family of wife or husband.

- Mother-in-law
- Father-in-law
- Sister-in-law
- Son-in-law

b Fill in the blanks with the correct words from the chart abo	hov	al	art	ch	the	from	words	correct	the	with	lanks	the b	in	Fill	h
--	-----	----	-----	----	-----	------	-------	---------	-----	------	-------	-------	----	------	---

1.	I have got three siblings. I have got two brothers
	and a
2.	My mother's sister is my
3.	My sister's daughter is my
4.	My mother's husband is Jack. He is not my biological father.
	He is my
5.	My husband's mother is my



LISTENING & SPEAKING



1 LISTENING (Track 11)

- Listen to Matt talking about his family and match the names with his family members.
 - **1.** Jack ____
- a. Mother
- **2.** Lucy ____
- **b.** Grandmother
- **3.** Jordan ____
- **c.** Father
- **4.** Julia ____
- d. Aunt
- **5.** April ____
- e. Sister
- **6.** Sue ____
- f. Grandfather
- 7. Aida ____
- **g.** Cousin
- Listen to Matt again and complete the sentences.
 - 1. His grandmother, Lucy is a _____ and she is 66 years old.
 - 2. Matt's father is _____years old.
 - 3. His father is a _____ in a company.
 - 4. April and Matt are _____
 - **5.** Sue is April and Matt's _____.
 - **6.** Sue's husband is from .
 - 7. Sue and Adrian have got _____. Their names are Aida and Alma.
 - 8. Aida and Alma are Jordan's ____

CHECK THIS OUT!

In Britain, people use "have got/ has got" for possession.

- I have got three brothers and a sister.
- They haven't got a child, but they have got a cat.
- My father has got two sisters, but he hasn't got any brothers.
- He has got a lot of friends because he is so friendly.

In the USA, people use the verb "have" for possession.

- I have a wonderful school.
- She has a lot of relatives.

2 SPEAKING

Look at the pictures and describe them as in the example.













- **e.g.** In Picture 1, there is a young woman. She has got long, brown, straight hair, and brown eyes. I think she is in her twenties. She seems very happy.
- Describe one of your family members or your best friend to your friends in class.

READING & WRITING



READING

Look at the people in the picture. Guess how they are related to each other.

My Family

My name is Sally. I'm 8 years old. I'm a student at a primary school. I have got long, straight, brown hair. I'm very happy because I have got a nice family. My mother's name is Betty. She is 34 years old. She has got long blonde hair. She is a history teacher at a high school in Sweden. She is of medium height. She has got green eyes. She is a sociable person. Her hobby is dancing. My father's name is David. He is 36 years old. He is thin. He has got short black hair. He is tall. He is a doctor at a hospital. He is sporty. He likes taking selfies. My grandmother is Silvia. She is in her early sixties. She has got short grey hair. She has got blue eyes. She tall. She is retired. Her hobby is painting. My granddad's name is Frank. He is in his late sixties. He is very friendly. He has got glasses. He has got blue eyes. My brother Charlie is 5 years old. He has got a nice smile. He has got short fair hair.

He is very funny. I like my brother very much.

b	Read the text and write true (T) or false (F).
	Correct the false ones.

8. Frank is in his late seventies. ____

10. Charlie is Sally's nephew. ___

9. Charlie is a kid. ___

Correct the talse ones.	adjectives in the text.
1. Sally is a student at a high school	e.g. a <u>friendly</u> person, <u>long</u> hair
2. Sally has got long hair	
3. Sally's mother has got blue eyes	
4. Betty is a student at school	
5. Sally's father works at a hospital	
6. Silvia's hobby is dancing	2 WOLTING
7. Frank is a very friendly person	2 WRITING Draw your family tree and write

a short paragraph between 50-70 words about your family members.

(name, age, physical appearance, job etc.)

Read the text again and underline the

3 READING

a Look at the picture and share your ideas. Who do you think they are? Where are they?



b Read the dialogue. Look at the underlined words. What do these words refer to? Write them into the box below.

May: Is it your family photo, Jane?

Jane: Yes. It's ours.

May: You've got a cute family.

Terry: Whose car is it?
Jane: It's my father's.
Terry: Oh, really!
Jane: Yes, it is his.
Terry: It's nice.

May: This teddy bear is so nice! Is it your little

sister's?

Jane: No. It's mine.

Terry and May: Are you kidding?

Ours → Jane's family photo

 $His \rightarrow$

Mine \rightarrow

CHECK THIS OUT!

- My account → mine
- Her photo → hers
- Their car → theirs
- · Your job yours

4 WRITING

- a Match the words given in the box with the pictures.
 - teddy bear ◆ trainers ◆ guitar ◆ microscope
 - beach ball





1. ______ 2. _____ 3. _____





4.	5.	

- b Use the words in the box and make sentences as in the example below according to the given information.
- **e.g.** She is in the sea now. The beach ball is hers.

1	Danl	ic	2	musician	

2	Cima	:	scientist
,	Simon	18 2	ecientier

3. Betty is a sportswoman.

4.	Kate	is	а	littl	le	child
т.	IXaic	13	а	11111	·	CIIIIu

5 SPEAKING

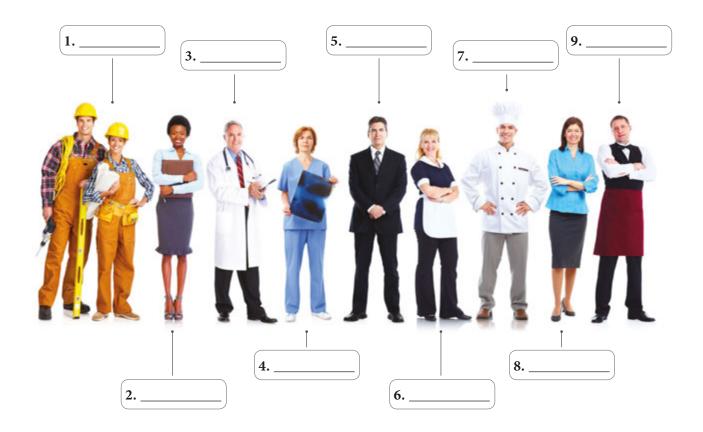
Take the photos of your and your family members' favourite objects and prepare a presentation about them. Then present it in class.

e.g. This is my room. I have got a lot of books in it. They are my favourite belongings. This is my father. His favourite object is his glasses. He is a bookworm and he can't read without glasses. This is my mother. She is fond of listening to music, so her favourite object is her mp3 player. This is my little sister. This teddy bear is hers.

6 VOCABULARY

Look at the pictures below and find the occupations of the people using the list given.

◆ a cook ◆ a businessman ◆ a doctor ◆ a secretary ◆ a nurse ◆ a housekeeper
◆ a teacher ◆ a waiter ◆ construction workers



7 READING

a Read the short paragraph about Betty and her family members and fill the chart with the correct occupations according to their endings.

Betty White is a doctor. Her husband is a biologist. Her elder daughter is a teacher. Her little daughter is a mathematician. They are a happy family.

-er	-ist	-ian	-or



b Add other occupations to the chart with the given endings.

CHECK THIS OUT!

• I am <u>a</u> doctor.

• He is <u>an</u> author.

LISTENING (Track 12)

Listen and tick the words you hear.

1. Tools	
2. Trainer	
3. Equipment	
4. Scissors	
5. Profession	
6. Hose	
7. Thumb	

Listen again. Find out the professions of the speakers.

Speaker 1	
Speaker 2	
Speaker 3	
Speaker 4	

- Listen again and answer the questions.
 - 1. What does Danny do?
 - 2. How old is Danny?
 - **3.** Where can Sally do her experiments?
 - **4.** Is Mehmet a farmer?
 - **5.** Has Tom got tools and special clothes?



9 SPEAKING 🖼

Work in pairs. Choose a job and describe it briefly as in the example. Don't say the name of the job. Your friend will try to guess it.

- e.g. A: I have got a lot of tools like a hammer, nails and a drill. Wood is my material. What is my profession?
 - **B:** Are you a carpenter?
 - **A:** No, I am not.
 - **B:** Are you a construction worker then?
 - A: Yes, I am.

10 READING

Read the greeting card below and answer the questions.



- **1.** Who is the sender of the greeting card?
- 2. Who is the receiver of the greeting card?
- **3.** What is Elton's occupation?

11 PROJECT TIME



With your family's permission, use a computer camera or cell phone camera to video record your speech in English. In your VLOG introduce yourself, your family, and your country. You can use pictures of your family and country. Your VLOG will be about 2 minutes. Then give a copy of your VLOG to your teacher and share the information in your VLOG with your classmates.





UNIT 2

MY NEIGHBOURHOOD

2A East or West, Home's Best 2B My Town 2C Shopping Time

In this unit you will be...

- naming everyday objects.
- asking for and giving directions.
- talking about location of things.
- asking about and describing neighbourhood.
- using phrases and expressions about shopping.
- giving and receiving information about quantities, numbers, and prices.

EAST OR WEST, HOME'S BEST

LEAD IN



Answer the following questions.

- 1. Have you got a house or a flat?
- 2. Have you got a garden and/ or a balcony?

LISTENING & SPEAKING



VOCABULARY

- Match the words in the box with the pictures. Then write them under the pictures.
 - living room ◆ kitchen ◆ dining room
 - ◆ bathroom ◆ basement ◆ bedroom















6.

People have got houses. Birds have got **nests**. Bees have got hives.





Read the items and write which room they mainly belong to.

- a. bed, bedside table, wardrobe, quilt, pillow, chest of drawers
- **b.** bath, sink, water closet, mirror, shower
- c. cupboard, cooker, refrigerator, table, shelf
- d. television, TV unit, armchair, sofa, coffee table
- e. table, chairs
- **f.** household goods, boxes, tools, ladder

2 LISTENING (Track 1)

Listen to the dialogues and write where the people are.

Dialogue 1 Anna is in the _____

Dialogue 2 Sally and the repairman are in the

Dialogue 3 The little boy and his sister are in

Dialogue 4 Leo and his dad are in the

b Listen again and fill in the table.

Names of the people	Parts of the house	Objects you hear	
Anna and her mum		bed,	
Sally and Mr. Johnson			
Little boy and his sister	living room		
Dad and Leo			

c Answer the following questions.

- 1. Where are Anna's socks?
- **2.** Is the beverage tea or coffee?
- 3. What can happen if Leo uses hair gel a lot?

3 Complete the dialogue with *is* or *are*.

Estate agent: Hello! Can I help you?

Sam: Yes, please. Is there a flat for rent near the

park?

Estate agent: Let me have a look. Oh... Yes.

There ¹_____ one.

Sam: How many rooms ²_____ there in the flat?

Estate agent: Two bedrooms and there 3___

a living room, a kitchen and a bathroom.

Sam: 4_____ the rooms big or small?

Estate agent: They ⁵______ big enough. In addition, one of the rooms has got a balcony with a park view. Oh... I almost forgot. It's a flat with furniture.

Sam: Really? What furniture ⁶_____ there?

Estate agent: A washing machine, a

dishwasher and a sofa.

Sam: Let's go and have a look, then.



DO YOU KNOW THIS?

American English British English
closet wardrobe
garbage can dustbin
yard garden
elevator lift
apartment flat

4 Which words describe your house or flat?

e.g. Our flat is small and quiet.

- big ◆ comfortable ◆ noisy ◆ quiet ◆ small
- ◆ modern ◆ old style ◆ convenient

5 Read the dialogue below and underline the adjectives that describe the apartment.

April: What's your new apartment like, Rayan?

Rayan: It's an old style, but it's very convenient

and comfortable.

April: Where is it?

Rayan: It's downtown Chicago. The location is

good.

April: How many rooms are there?

Rayan: It has got only one bedroom, a living

room, a kitchen, and a bathroom.

April: A big or small flat isn't important. For

me, there is no place like home.

Rayan: Definitely, you're right.

There's no place like home.

This is an expression that means our home is the best place to be.

6 SPEAKING

Work in pairs. Describe your dream house or a flat to your partner.

- Is it a house or a flat?
- How many floors are there in your dream house?
- Where is it? Is it downtown or in the countryside?
- What are there around it?

7 Complete the sentences using objects related to the parts of the house.



	of the house.	
	There is (singular)	There are (plural)
	There is a/ an in the kitchen. There isn't a/ an A: Is there a/ an near the bed? B: Yes, there is./ No, there isn't.	There are four over the bed. There aren't any A: Are there two on the shelf? B: Yes, there are./ No, there aren't.
8	Read the descriptions below and guess what I am. 1. I've got two arms and two cushions. You can sit on me. I'm in the living room. s	10 Fill in the blanks with there, they, its or their a. The Jetsons are a middle class family. Judy and Elroy Jetson are siblings. George and Jane are ¹ parents. Astro is the

You can sit on me. I'm in the living room.

s _____

2. I've got two or three parts. You can see clothes inside me. I'm in the bedroom.

w ______

3. I'm in the kitchen. I can cook meal.

c ______

4. I've got taps and a mirror. You can wash your hands. I'm in the bathroom.

S _____

S _____

S mall garden in front of the storm and Entroy Jetson are should and Entroy Jetson are should are should and Entroy Jetson are should a

9 GAME

- Work in groups of 4 or 5.
- Choose a group leader.
- Think of a part of the house such as LIVING ROOM.
- Say an object in the living room in turn. e.g. chandelier

If you're late to say an object or if your answer is incorrect, **e.g. fridge** you are out.

The game goes on until only one person is left.

a.	The Jetsons are a middle class family. Judy
	and Elroy Jetson are siblings. George and
	Jane are ¹ parents. Astro is the
	family's dog. Rosey the Robot is the Jetsons'
	maid. ² are cartoon characters.
	³ is a fictional city called Orbit.
	m1 1 . 1: .1

b.	They have got a semidetached house	e. ¹
	rooms are small, but handy. ²	is a
	small garden in front of the house.	You
	can see a few fruit trees. 3	are very
	beautiful.	

c. ¹ .	are many skyscrapers in the USA.
2	are mostly in the centre of towns.

READING & WRITING

1 READING

- a Look at the pictures and the words below. Which of these things can you see in the pictures? Underline the objects you see.
 - ◆ curtain ◆ hammock ◆ balcony ◆ pool ◆ flower ◆ garage ◆ antenna ◆ fence
- b What is the text about? Discuss this with the class.



c Read the text and find the house it describes.

Our house is heaven for me. It has got two floors. My parents' and my sister's bedrooms are on the second floor. Mine is next to my sister's room.

My parents' room is big. It has got a bathroom. My sister's bedroom is between my parents' room and mine. It is small and it hasn't got a balcony. My room is moderate-sized, but it's enough for me. There is a balcony in front of it. As you can guess, the other one is in front of my parent's room. In my room, my bed is on the left. Over the bed, you can see my family photos. They are my favourite things in my room. Opposite the bed, there is a wardrobe full of my clothes. My study desk is near the window. My books are on the shelf over the desk. There isn't a carpet on the floor, but there is a rug. It's red and dark blue. They are my favourite colours.

On the first floor, there is a living room and a kitchen near the dining room. We have got a wonderful garden with lots of flowers. Our house is on the road. Luckily, it's not a busy road. Briefly, east or west, home's best.



- d Read the text again and choose the correct answers.
 - 1. My bedroom is _____
 - a. on the third floor.
 - **b.** next to my sister's bedroom.
 - **c.** near the bathroom.
 - 2. In my room you can see _____
 - a. a big balcony in front of it.
 - **b.** a study desk near the wardrobe.
 - **c.** my family photo on the wall.
 - **3**. My bed is _____
 - a. opposite the wardrobe.
 - **b.** near the window.
 - **c.** on the right.
 - **4**. There isn't on the first floor.
 - a. a bathroom
 - b. a dining room
 - **c.** a living room
- 2 Which one is your favourite house? Why?

3 Put the sentences into the correct order and write a short paragraph.

- in the/ I/ a/ got/ have/ cottage/ forest.
- small/ is/ It/, but/ it/ nice/ is.
- ◆ There/ a kitchen/ two bedrooms/ are/ and/ a living room/ a bathroom/ in it.
- next to the living room/ is/ The kitchen.
- the two bedrooms/ between/ The bathroom/ is.
 There/ a big/ is/ garden/ the cottage/ in front of.

-		

4 EVERYDAY ENGLISH

Read the dialogue and act it out changing the words in bold.



Useful Expressions

Hey! Not bad. Could be better. Oh my goodness! What's wrong? Good luck! Keep in touch.

Mete: Hey, Susan!

Susan: Hey! How's everything?
Mete: Could be better. And you?

Susan: Not bad.

Mete: What's the time?
Susan: It's half past nine.

Mete: Oh my goodness! Really?

Susan: What's wrong?

Mete: I'm late for school and I've got the final

exam.

Susan: Hurry up, then. Good luck! **Mete:** Thanks. **Keep in touch**.

CHECK THIS OUT!

What is the time?
12:15 It's quarter past twelve.
(or It's twelve fifteen.)
7:35 It's twenty-five to eight.

(or It's seven thirty-five).

5 What's the time? Draw the time on the clocks.







It's quarter to one.

r to lt's

It's half past four. It's seven o'clock.





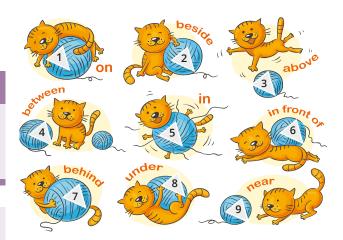


It's five to two.

lt's ten past eleven.

It's twenty to six.

Look at the drawings below and write where the cat is in each drawing.



1	In	picture	1	the	cat's	กท	the	clew
1.	111	Dicture	т,	, thic	cats	v_{II}	unc	CIC W.

2. In picture 2, it's _____ the clew.

3. In picture 3, it's _____the clew .

4. In picture 4, it's _____ the clews.

5. In picture 5, it's _____ the clew.

6. In picture 6, it's _____ the clew.

7. It's _____ the clew in picture 7.

8. It's _____ the clew in picture 8.

9. In the last picture, it's _____ the clew.

7 SPEAKING

Describe your room to the class.

e.g. Is your room big or small? Where is your bed, study desk, etc?

WRITING

Write a paragraph to describe the room in the picture. Use basic capitalization, spelling, and punctuation rules.

e.g. It's a bedroom. The cushions are on the bed. They are white and striped.



TODAY'S IDIOM

Make yourself at home.

It means "to make yourself comfortable."

e.g. Please make yourself at home. If you are tired, you can lie down.

CHECK THIS OUT!

Punctuation and Capitalization Rules

- Start a sentence with a capital letter.
- Use a capital letter with proper nouns and titles.
- Use a capital letter for acronyms.
- Use a full stop at the end of sentences.
- Use a question mark at the end of questions.
- Use an exclamation point at the end of exclamatory sentences.
- Use commas to separate words and word groups.
- Use a comma to separate a city from its state.

PROJECT TIME



Draw a picture or find a photo of your ideal house or flat. Write a description of it.

- Is it a house or a flat?
- Is your house/ flat in the city or country?
- How many rooms are there in your house/ flat? etc.

Stick the picture or the photo here.

LEAD IN

Answer the following questions.

- 1. How do you come to school (on foot or by bus/school service)?
- 2. Is there a bus stop, a market, a bank or a bookstore around your flat?

LISTENING & SPEAKING



VOCABULARY

Which words below are the same or similar in your language? Find and circle them.

- ◆ bank ◆ chemist's ◆ block of flats ◆ town hall ◆ library ◆ stadium ◆ café ◆ market ◆ police station
- park ◆ school ◆ hairdresser's ◆ post office ◆ bookshop ◆ cinema

2 LISTENING (Track 2)))

Look at the map. Listen to the dialogues and find the places. Write the names of each place.

Dialogue 1 _____

Dialogue 2

Dialogue 3

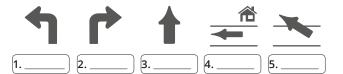
Find some words that are British or American English on the map. Then write the words below.

UK



Match the directions/ words with the drawings.

Go straight ahead Turn left. Turn right. Cross the road. Go past the house.



- a. opposite
- b. next to
- c. at the corner of
- d. between



DO YOU KNOW THIS?

American English

parking lot highway gas station apartment building bookstore

British English

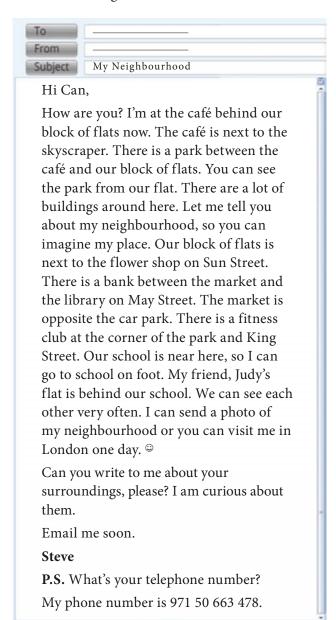
car park motorway petrol station block of flats bookshop

READING & WRITING



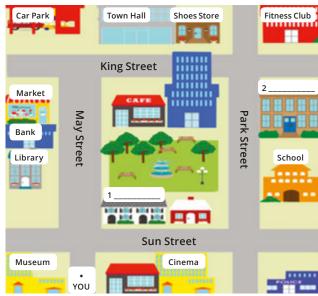
READING 1

- Read the e-mail below. What is it about?
 - ◆ Steve's visit
 - Steve's neighbourhood



- Fill in the To and From sections in the e-mail.
- Read the e-mail again and label the missing places on the map on the right.
- Underline the object pronouns in the e-mail such as him, her, it. Then complete the sentences.

Me refers to	
Them refers to	



2 SPEAKING

Look at the map. Work in pairs.

You are student A: Give direction to your friend without giving the name of the place.

You are student B: Find the place.

Then change the roles.

e.g. Student A: Go ahead. Turn right. Walk down Sun Street. Pass the cinema. It's on the right, opposite the school.

Student B: It's the police station.

- 3 Describe your neighbourhood as in the example.
- **e.g.** Our block of flats is on Gençlik Street in Anıttepe. It is a very crowded street. There is a big supermarket near my house so it is sometimes difficult to find a parking space. There is a big park opposite the street and there are some florists' next to the park. I am very happy with the view of my house.

4 EVERYDAY ENGLISH

a Put the dialogue in the correct order.

	2	
_		,

Useful Expressions

I'm in a hurry. You're right. Good to see you. I'm busy. By the way... What's up?

Stacey: Hi, Judy! Long time no see.
What's up? <u>1</u>
Judy: See you
Stacey: Busy? Why?
Judy : It's on King Street behind the school
Stacey : Good to see you too. I'm very sorry.
I'm in a hurry. See you soon
Judy: Not really, but the park is near our
building. By the way, good to see you,
Stacey
Stacey: Really? Where is your new
apartment?
Judy: Because we're at our new flat at last
Stacey : I know there. Is it opposite the park?
Judy: Hi! You're right. I'm fine, but I'm busy.

- b Underline the prepositions of place in the dialogue.
- c Act out the dialogue.
- 6 Match the numbers with their writings.
 - **◆** 20 **◆** 30 **◆** 36 **◆** 40 **◆** 47 **◆** 50 **◆** 58 **◆** 60 **◆** 69 **◆** 70 **◆** 80 **◆** 90 **◆** 100 **◆**101
 - **◆** 1000 **◆** 1001 **◆** 10,000 **◆** 10,001 **◆** 1,000,000 **◆** 1,500,000

CARDINAL NUMBERS

one hundred (and) one	fifty	sixty	eighty	sixty-nine
thirty	a (one) hundred	thirty-six	seventy	forty
a (one) thousand	one thousand (and) one	one million (and) five hundred thousand	fifty-eight	a (one) million
forty-seven	ten thousand (and) one	ninety	ten thousand	twenty

CHECK THIS OUT!

Object Pronouns

- Give me a pen, please.
- We understand you. You understand us.
- Look at Ayşe! Look at her!
- John has got a lot of homework. Please, help him!
- *This is Tarkan's song. Listen to it!
- I can see Paula and Sally at school. I can see them.

5 WRITING

Write a short paragraph between 50 and 70 words.

- What is the location of your school?
- Is it downtown or far from the city centre?

Look at the picture and write the runners' names and ranks in the race as in the example.



- 1. Jim is in the *fifth* rank in the race.
- 2. Tom is in the fourth rank.
- 3. Efe is the second runner behind Abimbola in the race.
- 4. Amir is in the seventh rank in front of Peter.
- Pablo is in the sixth rank.
- 6. Hatsu is the third runner.
- 7. Simon is the tenth racer behind Hank. He is the last person in the race.

8 Write the ordinal numbers in the blanks.

e.g. 60th the sixtieth

a. 12th _____ b. 23rd _____ c. 31st _____ d. 40th ____ e. 100th _____ g. 1000th ____

9 PRONUNCIATION (Track 3)))

Listen and repeat. Then draw an arrow to show falling and rising intonation.

e.g. A: Can I help you? A: Where's the post-office?

B: Yes, please.

B: It's the end of the street.

- **1. A:** Are you hungry?
 - **B:** Yes. I'm hungry.
- **2. A**: Have you got any change?
 - B: No, I haven't.
- **3. A:** What is this?
 - **B:** It's my visa.
- 4. A: Are you OK?
 - B: I'm fine.

10 Complete the paragraph using the given words.

◆ 205 ◆ language ◆ first ◆ Iranian
 twelfth ◆ metres ◆ 20 Highway

3. / 1	
My ¹	name is Rayan. My
•	, ,

mother is Turkish. My father is ²_____. I'm bilingual. I mean I can speak Turkish and Persian. English is my third ³_____. We live in Dubai. I'm in the ⁴_____ grade in high school. My school number is 5_____. Our school is on 6_____ Avenue. I can

REMEMBER THIS!

go to school on foot. It's only five

• In Yes/ No questions, intonation goes up.

hundred ⁷_____ away.

• In any other questions and answers, intonation goes down.

11 READING

a Read the paragraph and circle the correct option.

This is a photo of my cousin, Lucy. She has got long blond hair. She is tall and thin. She lives in downtown London. There are skyscrapers around their house. It is near her school. She can go to school on foot. Her school is very big. There are 1three/ third basketball courts in it. She is a 2 ten/ tenth grade student at the high school. She is very hardworking. Her ³first/ one aim is to finish high school and then to attend a university. She has got 4second/ two close friends from the school basketball team. They are Zoe and Kate. Zoe is on the left, Kate is on the right of Lucy in the photo. They are all 5sixteen/ sixteenth years old. Lucy is the captain of the team. Their dream is to play in a university team one day. They hope they can reach their dreams in the near future.

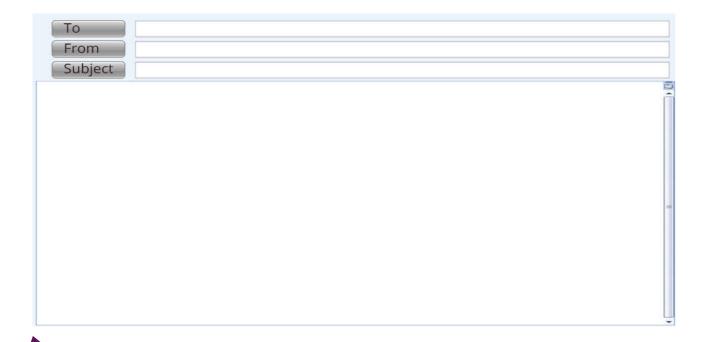


b Write their names on the pictures according to the paragraph.

12 WRITING

Write an email that describes your neighbourhood to a friend from another country.

- Say "Hi".
- Describe your neighbourhood. What is the location of your flat/ house? Is it downtown or far from the town?
- Close your email with an expression such as "I'm looking forward to seeing you soon." Write to me soon."



LEAD IN



Answer the following questions.

- 1. Is shopping an activity?
- 2. Look at the pictures below. Which do you think is a free time activity: window shopping or online shopping?





LISTENING & SPEAKING 4 🌙



VOCABULARY

Match the pictures with the words in the box.

- cash point ◆ shopping bag ◆ fitting room
- trolley



LISTENING (Track 4)))

a Listen and complete the dialogues.

Dialogue 1

Shop assistant: Can I help you, madam? **Customer**: Yes, please. Is there a ¹_____ of 16 gigabytes? I can't see it.

Shop assistant: Yes. It's over there, on the second shelf ²_____ the Mp3 players.

Customer: Oh, yes. How much is it?

Shop assistant: £ 3_____

Customer: Where is the cash point?
Shop assistant : It's on the ⁴ floor.
Customer: Thanks.
Dialogue 2
Sandra: There isn't even an egg for my cake, sweetie.
Kyle: Let me ¹
Sandra: Wait a minute. Do the shopping list first.
Kyle : ² I use your cell phone, Sandra?
Sandra: Of course! But why?
Kyle: Because I can write the ³ on the phone.
Sandra: ⁴ yours.
Kyle: Its battery is dead.
Sandra: OK, then. After shopping, give it to me.
Dialogue 3
Shop assistant: How can I 1 you, sir?
Customer: ² a problem about
my mobile phone. It's from your shop.

Customer: I can't hear the ring of the phone. **Shop assistant:** I see. Let's try again. What's

Shop assistant: What is the problem?

your ⁴_____?

Customer: All right. Oh- six- four- five- double two- one- eight -seven- three- nine

Shop assistant: Oh- six- four- five- double twoone eight- seven- three- nine.

Customer: No 5_____ as you see. Can I 6____ a refund?

Shop assistant: Sure! **Customer:** Thank you.

Shop assistant: You're welcome.

- Read the dialogues and underline the phrases for "asking for/ giving permission, offer, and responses."
- What does "it" refer to in the dialogues?
 - 1. I can't see it. _____. Dialogue 1
 - 2. Give it to me. _____. Dialogue 2

3 SPEAKING 🖼

Work in pairs. Imagine there is a problem with the product you've bought. Make a dialogue and act it out with your partner.

Student A is a shop assistant.

Student B is a customer.

4 Fill in the blanks with object pronouns.

- 1. Help <u>me</u>, please. I have got a lot of homework.
- 2. Phone Sam and Barış. Invite ¹_____ to the party.
- 3. Save money. Put ²_____ in the money box.
- 4. This is my little brother. Look at ³_____. He's so cute.
- 5. I have no money. Can you lend ⁴_____£ 10?

5 Complete the dialogue with the phrases below.

- ◆ How about this one? ◆ It's £ 65.
- ◆ Sure ◆ What can I do for you?

Shop assistant: 1______

Customer: I'm just looking for a dress for my graduation party.

Shop assistant: Let's have a look. 2______

Customer: It's a nice dress. May I try it on?

Shop assistant: 3_____.

Customer: How much is it?

Shop assistant: 4______



CHECK THIS OUT!

When we ask someone's permission, we say;

- A: Can/ May I come in?
- B: Certainly/ Sure/ Of course!
- A: Could I talk to Mr. Estefan?
- B: Sorry, he is engaged now.

When we offer, we say;

- A: Can/ May I help you?
- B: Yes, please.

6 SPEAKING

Work in pairs. Ask and answer the questions in turn.

- 1. Where is your favourite place to shop? Why?
- 2. Is there a shopping mall or a market in your neighbourhood? If yes, where? Give its location (using near, behind or between...).
- 3. What time is it open and closed?
- 4. Are you addicted to shopping?
- 5. What are the advantages and disadvantages of shopping online?

CHECK THIS OUT!

When we ask the price of something, we say;

- A: How much is it?
- B: It's 95p.
- A: How much are the CDs?
- B: They're £ 1 each.

When we ask the number of things, we say;

- A: How many credit cards have you got?
- B: Only one.

READING & WRITING



Answer the following questions.

- 1. Do you get hungry quickly?
- 2. Are vegetables and fruits your favourite food?

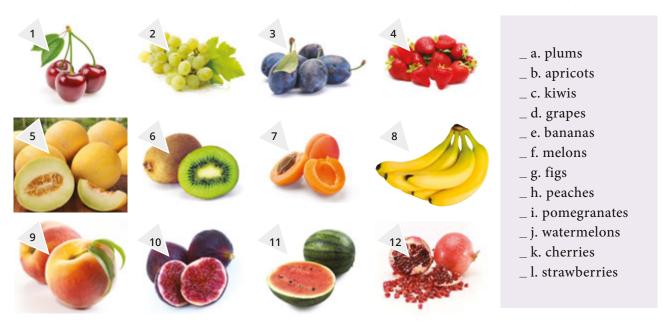
VOCABULARY

Match the words related to vegetables with the pictures. Then listen and check. (Track 5)



- _ a. gingers
- _ b. squashes
- _ c. sweet peppers
- _ d. cucumbers
- _ e. mushrooms
- _ f. cabbages
- _ g. cauliflowers
- _ h. eggplants
- _ i. spring onions
- _ j. tomatoes

Match the words related to fruits with the picture. Then listen and check. (Track 6)



Fill in the blanks with the correct words related to fruit and vegetables.

- 1. An a_p can be green or red. It is round. It has got small seeds in it.
- 2. A head of $l_t c$ has got green leaves. We can use it for salad.
- 3. A l_m_i is a sour and juicy fruit. It's yellow.
- 4. A $_e \ e \ _$ is a long green and white vegetable. It looks like a spring onion.
- 5. A c_r_o is a long orange vegetable. It is good for eyes.

4 READING

a Read the dialogue. "Why are Lizzie and Mary in the market?"

 $\textbf{Lizzie:} \ \text{Hurry up, } \textbf{Mary!} \ \text{We're late for}$

shopping.

Mary: What's the time?

Lizzie: It's **2 p.m.** Our friends can come early in the evening. We have a lot of work to do.

Mary: I'm ready. Let's go.

(In the market)

Lizzie: Have we got enough fruit for dinner?

Mary: We've got a lot of fruit, but we need

other things.

Lizzie: There is a head of lettuce and some tomatoes for salad, but there isn't any olive

oil.

Mary: It's in our shopping list. According to our shopping list, we also need a kilo of meat, two packets of macaroni, a kilo of beans, and some beverages.

Lizzie: By the way, how much are they? Have we got enough money?

Mary: Let me calculate. They are all

£40. No problem.

Lizzie: All right. Be quick. It's 3:30 p.m.

Mary: OK.

b Complete the shopping list according to the dialogue in Exercise a.

Shopping list
a kilo of
of
macaroni
a bottle of
beans
beverages

c Underline the countable and uncountable nouns in the dialogue. Then write them in the correct column.

Countable	Uncountable e.g. <i>fruit</i>



5 Look at the picture above. "What have you got in your shopping basket?" Write them in your shopping list.

Shopping List	
e a a loaf of bread	
5.g. a 10a, 0, 51 caa	
	Shopping List e.g. a loaf of bread

TODAY'S IDIOM

Bread and butter: the main thing
• Explain the bread and butter of the issue. Don't tell me the details.

_	N A			
	1/1	ı	 INI	-
•	w w		 	•

Write a similar dialogue as in Exercise 4a by changing the words in bold.				
_				
_				

b Act out the dialogue you have written.

Countable Nouns	Uncountable Nouns	a lot of	some	any
beans peas leeks onions grapes strawberries peppers	cheese sugar meat salt macaroni milk bread lettuce	There are a lot of vegetables in the fridge. There is a lot of spice in my meal.	There are some cookies on my plate. There is some cheese in my sandwich.	There aren't any olives on the plate. There isn't any sugar in my tea. Is there any milk in the coffee? Yes, there is. Are there any carrots for the salad No, there aren't.

7	Complete the dialogue with some x 2, a lot of
	and any.

Alan: Mum, I'm hungry.

Mother: I can make a rolled sandwich with

chicken and avocado, honey.

Alan: Is there ¹_____ mayonnaise, mummy?

Mother: We haven't got any, but we've got some

mustard. Would you like it?

Alan: Yes. And ²_____ onions, ³____ lettuce,

and ⁴_____ fried potatoes.

Mother: It's ready in a few minutes.

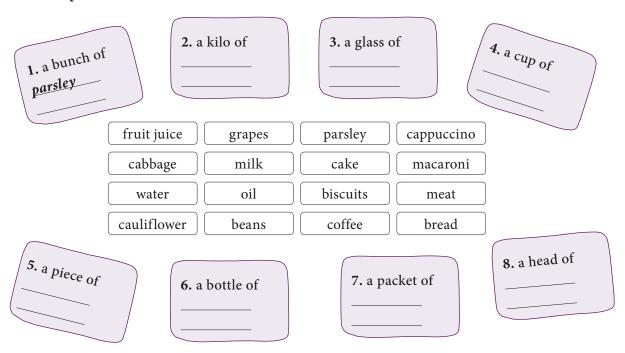
Alan: Thanks, mum.



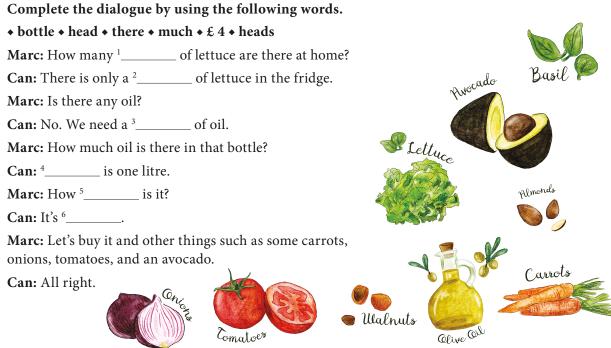
8	Find the compound nouns (two or more
	words used together) in this unit and
	write them below.

•	bedroom, police station, watermelon					

Match the phrases with the words.



10 Complete the dialogue by using the following words.



11 LISTENING (Track 7))

Listen and write the prices.

e.g. £ 6,80

a. _____ b. ____ c. _____ d. ____

CHECK THIS OUT!

How much is it?

- £ 1 > one pound
- £ 15 > fifteen pounds
- £ 20.45 > twenty pounds forty-five
- 20p → twenty pence

12 Complete the questions with "How many/ How much?".

- 1. _____ homework have you got?
- 2. ____ English books have you got?
- **3.** _____ students are there in your class?
- **4.** _____ lessons are there in a day?
- 5. _____ tea do you drink at breakfast?
- **6.** _____ is your cell phone?

13 Work in pairs. Ask the questions in Exercise 12 and answer in turn.

e.g.

How much homework ...?

I've got a lot of...

14 Read and circle the correct word.

I have/ has got some/ any money in my penny bank. I'm free in the afternoon. There is/ are a shopping mall near/ between our house, so I can go and sell/ buy my favourite singer's new album. Anyway, I can also drink something at/ over the café. Let me call my friend, Andy.



15 Let's have some fun.

COLOUR TEST

Say the colour, not the word.

YELLOW PURPLE ORANGE PINK
RED BLACK GREEN BLUE

Left-Right Conflict

Your right brain tries to say the colour, but your left brain insists on reading the word.





UNIT 3

MOVIES

3A Action!

3B The Seventh Art: Cinema

3C Fame

In this unit you will be...

- talking about likes, dislikes, and interests.
- talking about hobbies and free time activities.
- making and responding suggestions.
- making excuses.
- asking and telling the time and date.
- expressing opinions.

LEAD IN



Answer the following questions.

- 1. Do you have any hobbies? If yes, what are they? If no, which hobby would you like to take on?
- 2. Do you think girls and boys spend their free time in the same way? If yes, how?



LISTENING & SPEAKING

VOCABULARY 1

- Write the hobbies and free time activities under the pictures.
 - ◆ parachuting ◆ cooking ◆ gardening ◆ wind surfing ◆ painting ◆ taking photos
 - ◆ knitting ◆ going to the cinema ◆ collecting stamps ◆ riding a horse ◆ skiing ◆ riding a bike



















8.

10. _

6.

11._

12._

- Listen and check your answer. (Track 1) b
- Add any other free time activities or hobbies to the list.

2	LISTENING (Track 2)) Listen and write Anna, Nicolas, and Zoe's hobbies.					
	Anna: _	Nicolas:		Zoe:		
3	Describ	ING Some a free time activity the hobby or a free time activity	•	ut giving the name. The	en ask your friends what the	
e.g.		een on team games. My friends e need a court and a ball to play		e the players of a club. T	here are 5 people in the	
	Class: Is	it an indoor or outdoor game?				
		an play out as well, but normall	y it is an	indoor game.		
		it basketball?				
	A: Yes.					
4	LISTEN	NING (Track 3)))				
a	Listen to	the dialogue between Doğa aı	ıd Sam.	Complete the table wit	h the information you hear.	
		suggestion	like	e / love	don't like	
	Sam	e.g. watching sports programme				
	Doğa					
b	Write fu	ll sentences by using the			1	
	informa	tion in the table.		5 SPEAKING S	sk and answer the	
e.g.	Doğa dis	slikes watching sports programm	nes.	questions in turn		
				1. Have you got a hobby?	hobby? If yes, what is your	
				e.g. Yes, I have. My h from different co	obby is collecting coins ountries.	
с	Listen to	o the dialogue again. Write the		2. Do you like sp parents or you	ending time with your r friends?	
		es to suggestions in the dialogu		3. What do you d	lo together?	
e.g.		hat about watching a sports me tonight?		4. Do you prefer going to the cinema or watching TV? Why?		
		m afraid I can't.		5. What do you lil	ke doing in your free time?	
	Doğa's ro	esponse 1				
	Doğa's re	esponse 2		The state of the s	The second	
	Sam's res	sponse 1		7	3	
	Sam's res	sponse 2				
	Sam's res	sponse 3				

6	Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs below.	8	Put the dialogue in the correct order. Then
	<i>♦ discover •</i> ride <i>♦</i> learn <i>♦</i> take <i>♦</i> send <i>♦</i> use <i>♦</i> stay		
			read it. Olivia: Really! I find them boring. Can you play them well? Tom: Do you like board games, Olivia? Olivia: I see Tom: Not really because I'm a completely beginner of some Olivia: Yes. I really like them. Especially I'm keen on chess. How about you? Tom: They're OK, but I prefer playing video games
7 e.g.	countries is very exciting and interesting, but returning back is also good. Complete the sentences using the words in the parentheses. A: Do you like jogging in your free time?		
	 B: Yes, I do./ No, I don't. 1. A: they like (grow) fruit in their garden? B: Yes, 	9	Put the phrases into the correct column. ◆ I'm not very keen on it/ them. ◆ I hate it/ her/ him. ◆ I love it/ them/ him/ her.
	2. A: Does your mother prefer (drink) coffee or tea? B: She prefers tea.		 ◆ I can't stand him/ her/ it. ◆ I really like it/ her/ him. ◆ I'm really into it/ them.
	3. A: your friend like (play) board games? B: No,		 She/ He/ It's awful. They're not bad. It's OK. She/ He/ It's all right. I think it is/ they are terrible.
	POSITIVE NEU	TRA	

READING & WRITING



1 **READING**

Look at the activities in table b. Are you interested in any free time activities in the pictures? If yes, which one or ones?

Sofia is a university student. She's got free time on Sundays. She likes hiking and fishing, but she isn't fond of roller skating or rowing. She's keen on playing the piano.



Onur is a high school student. He's really into riding a horse. Every weekend he goes rowing with his friends in the river. He doesn't like fishing.



Ceren is a cabin crew. Her favourite activities are hiking, roller skating, and riding a horse, but she hates fishing because she likes animals and she is a vegetarian.



Rayan is a student soldier. He is sporty, so he can do many things in his free time. He loves riding a horse and rowing. He really likes hiking with his girlfriend, too. Fishing or roller skating isn't very him.

Read the paragraphs about people's free time activities. Put a tick () for likes and a cross (X) for dislikes in the table.

Names	hiking	playing the	roller skating	rowing	riding a	fishing
		piano			horse	
				entre sea		10
Sofia	~		×			
Onur						
Ceren						
Rayan						

2 SPEAKING

Work in pairs. Express your opinion about hobbies and interests. Use the words below.

interesting ◆ boring ◆ amusing ◆ exciting ◆ dangerous ◆ relaxing

e.g.

A: I think/ In my opinion, rowing is very exciting.

A: Why do you think it is dangerous?

B: To me, it's dangerous.

B: Because of the cold water and big waves.

3 Complete the dialogue using the phrases in the box.

- with your friends
- It doesn't matter.
- a good horse rider
- discovering new places
- a very famous vlogger

Interviewer: Good morning everybody! Today our guest is ¹_______, Techno Tom. Welcome to our programme, Tom.

Tom: Thank you.

Interviewer: Everybody knows your success, so today I'd like to talk about how you spend your free time.

Tom: I'm an active person as you see in my videos. When I have got time, I love

Interviewer: Do you prefer going to new places alone or ³_____?

Tom: ⁴______. Sometimes with my

friends, sometimes on my own.

Interviewer: Except your profession, do you have a talent that your followers don't know?

Tom: Yes.

Interviewer: Really? What?

Tom: I'm ⁵_____. On Sundays I go to the paddock and spend time there.

Interviewer: Oh my God! That is perfect. Sorry, Tom. My director is warning me. We're going for a commercial break.



4 READING

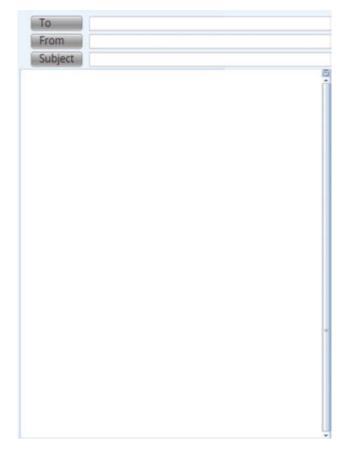
Read the e-mail. Who does Carol need?



5 WRITING

Write a reply to Carol's email.

- Tell what you do in your spare time.
- Tell when and where you do it.
- Tell what you like and dislike.



- 6 Make a survey about free time activities with ten students at school. Then share the result with the class.
- **e.g.** 10 students like watching TV. 5 students dislike...

Do you like	Yes	No
1. watching TV?		
2. reading books?		
3. riding a bike?		
4. collecting something?		
5. attending sports events?		
6 . playing computer games?		
7. listening to music?		
8. surfing the Net?		
9. playing basketball?		
10. playing board games?		

TODAY'S QUOTE

Happy is the man who can make a living by his hobby.

George Bernard Shaw



- **1.** What does Bernard Shaw mean with this quote?
- 2. Do you agree with him? Why, why not?



7 Read the announcement about the hobby on the notice board and complete the sentences.

Are you retired or do you want to do something different in your free time?



You can have a hobby garden in the country. People from all ages can join us. You can learn how to practise organic farming there.

- Grow organic food.
- ◆ Eat healthy food.
- Take fresh air.
- Do exercise.

Visit our website www.gardeninghob.com

1.	The	hobby	is	
		1		

3 . I	want/	don't	want	to joi	n thei	n
b	ecause	2				

8	PRO.	JECT	TIME	Line I

Choose a hobby or a game such as backgammon or chess. Prepare an announcement as in Exercise 7 for students in your school. Then display it in the class.

- Which hobby is it?
- What can students do there?
- Where and when do students develop this hobby?

THE SEVENTH ART CINEMA

LEAD IN



Answer the following questions.

- 1. Do you go to the cinema very often?
- 2. Do you prefer watching a film at home or at the cinema?

LISTENING & SPEAKING



VOCABULARY

- Match the posters with the types of the films in the box. Then write them under the posters.
 - ◆ science fiction ◆ action ◆ horror ◆ romantic
 - western ◆ animated adventure comedy







3.







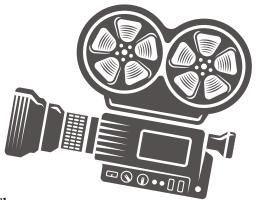
REMEMBER THIS!

Types of films

- action
- comedies
- adventure
- dramas
- romantic
- thriller
- musicals
- documentary
- war
- horror
- science fiction (Sci-Fi)
- period or historical dramas

Listen and check. (Track 4) b

- What is your favourite film type? Give the name of your favourite film.
- e.g. I really like adventure films, but horror films aren't very me. My favourite film is Fugitive. The film stars are Harrison Ford and Tommy Lee Jones.



3 LISTENING (Track 5)))

Listen to the movie lines and guess the types of the films.

The first one is	
The second one is	
The third one is	

British American

DO YOU KNOW THIS?

movie film the movies the cinema

- b Listen to the movie lines again and circle the correct option.
 - 1. Richard and Fiona are friends./ Richard and Fiona love each other.
 - 2. The sheriff doesn't want any trouble in his town./ The sheriff wants to arrest the thief.
 - 3. There is a noise in the living room/ in the kitchen.

4 SPEAKING 🖼

Work in pairs. Choose a film you like. Ask and answer the questions in turn.

e.g.

- What is the name of the film?
- Who are the actor and actress?
- What kind of film is it?
- Do you recommend it? Why? etc.
- 5 Look at the poster. Choose the correct option.

The type of the film in the poster is

a. science fiction b. fantasy adventure



Do you know the main character in the poster? Complete the blank in the table.

The name of the film: ___

Writer: I. R. R. Tolkien **Director:** Peter Jackson

Elijah Wood, Orlando Bloom, Liv Tyler, Stars:

Cate Blanchett

Produce: 2002

Genres: Movies-Adventure

7 VOCABULARY

Match the vocabulary with their definitions.

1. cast	a. a kind or style of music, movie, TV show, painting
2. director	b. the things that happen in a story
3. genre	c. the person in charge of making a movie
4. plot	d. all the actors and actresses in a movie or TV show

Fill in the information about a Turkish or foreign film you know.

The name of the film:	
Writer:	
Director:	
Cast/Starring:	
Produce:	
Genres:	

WRITING

Prepare your own film poster and display it in class. Add the photo(s)

READING & WRITING

Answer the following questions.

- 1. Do you read film reviews before going to the cinema?
- 2. Who do you like going to the cinema with?

1 VOCABULARY

- a Study the words below. Use a dictionary to help you.
 - ◆ costume designer ◆ cameraman ◆ film critic ◆ script writer ◆ stuntman ◆ make- up artist
- b Choose the correct options and underline them.

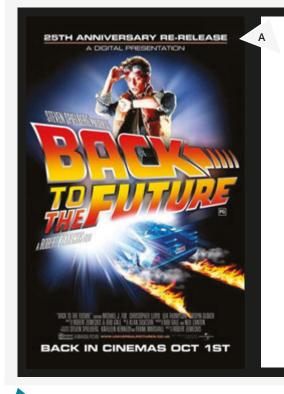
My little sister doesn't watch 'romantic/ scary films because she has bad dreams. She is 'keen on/ not keen on action films. She admires Jackie Chan. He is her favourite actor. She always follows the news about him. She tells me that Jackie Chan has 'no stuntman/ script writer in his action films. He 'shows/ performs dangerous scenes himself. It sounds great. He is also a cameraman, singer, and director. I wonder if he is also a costume designer or not. After the things I've heard about him, his films and his life also 'bore/ interest me.



2 READING

a Read the paragraph. Do you agree with the writer's opinion? Why, why not?

Cinema is the seventh art. Watching movies is an amazing activity. You can relax when you watch a movie. Most people like seeing movies. I have got movie DVDs in my bookcase. I watch these films with my friends some days. Some people like watching films at the cinemas because screen is very big and sound is better, but it doesn't matter for me. I prefer watching horror films. How about you? Do you like watching films at home or at the cinema? Here are some films I like and their reviews.



BACK TO THE FUTURE

It's an American science fiction film.

Release date is 1985.

The director is Robert Zemeckis.

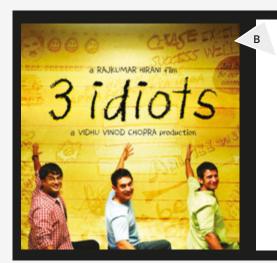
The screen writers are Zemeckis and Bob Gale.

The producer is Steven Spielberg.

The stars are Michael J Fox, Christopher Lloyd, and Crispin Glover.

The film tells the story of Marty McFly. He's a teenager. He accidentally travels in time from 1985 to 1955 in a plutonium-powered "time machine". Dr. Emmett "Doc" Brown invents this machine. He's a mad scientist. Marty McFly meets his future parents in high school.

I can recommend this film because the plot is very interesting.



THE THREE IDIOTS

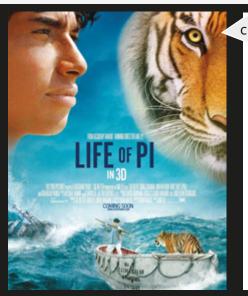
It is an Indian drama film.

Release date is 2009.

The director is Rajkumar Hirani.

The cast are Aamir Khan, Sharman Joshi and R.Madha.

The film is about three university students. They are good friends. In the film, we see the story and the lives of these three students. I believe it's a wonderful film for all ages. I think it is a masterpiece.



THE LIFE OF PI

It's an American survival drama.

Release date is 2012.

The director is *Ang Lee*.

The screen writers are *Yann Martel* (novel) and *David Magee* (screenplay).

The cast are Suraj Sharma, and Irrfan Khan Tabu.

The story is about a teenage hero. He spends 227 days drifting across the Pacific in a life boat with a Bengal tiger.

The movie is extraordinary. The effects, the plot, and acting are perfect. I recommend this movie to everybody.

b Read the reviews again and answer the questions. According to the reviews,

- 1. Which film has got an interesting story?
- 2. Which one has a survival story?
- **3.** Which one is about education?
- 4. Do you want to watch any of the films in the reviews? Why?/ Why not?

c Guess the meaning of the words in the reviews.

- 1. In review A travel means
 - a. move.
 - **b.** make a journey.
- 2. In review A invent means
 - a. to create or design something.
 - **b.** to think of a story.
- 3. In review B masterpiece means
 - **a.** an excellent quality painting or book.
 - **b.** an excellent quality film.
- 4. In review C drift means
 - **a.** to be moved slowly somewhere by wind or water
 - **b.** to move somewhere quickly.

3 EVERYDAY ENGLISH

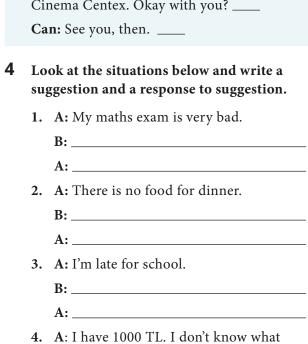
- a Put the dialogue into the correct order.
- b Change the place, the time, and the day in the dialogue. Then act it out with your partner.

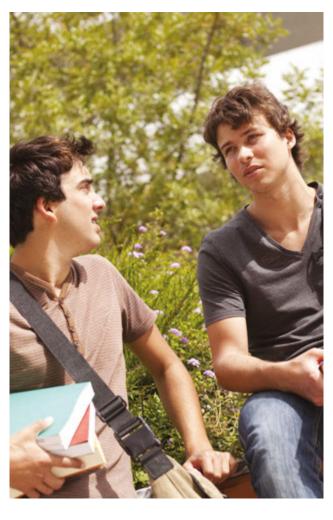
1	
	₽
	7

Useful Expressions

Good to see you. Okay with you? How is it going? Long time no see. It's a deal. I'm OK.

Can: Hi! I'm OK. And you?
Philip: Fine. Good to see you here
Philip: Hey, Can! How is it going?
Philip: Because I've got final exams these days,
but we can do something on Saturday
Can: Long time no see
Philip: Bye
Can: Why not? How about going to the
cinema?
Philip: That's a good idea! What time and
where?
Philip: All right. It's a deal
Can: On Saturday, at 5 p.m. in front of
Cinema Centex. Okay with you?
Can: See you, then





CHECK THIS OUT!

Making suggestions and giving responses.

- A: I'm bored.
- B: What about playing chess?
- A: That's a great idea.
- A: I'm hungry. Let's go out and eat something.
- B: I'm sorry I can't. I've got a lot of work to do.
- A: Shall we have a break for a while?
- B: Why not?
- A: I haven't got any money.
- B: Why don't you borrow it from me?
- A: I'm not sure about that.

to do.

5 SPEAKING 🖼

a Read the dialogue.

Angela: There is a horror film on TV tonight.

Why don't we watch it?

Arran: Horror films are not very me.

Angela: What about Benjamin Button? It's a

fantastic film.

Arran: That's a great idea.

b Work in pairs.

Student A: Invite your friend to an organisation.

Student B: Make an excuse as in the example.

We need a break a little bit.

Why don't we go to the cinema after school?

There is a premiere of Captain Fantastic.

It's a comedy.

I'm afraid,
I can't. I'm crazy about
comedy films, but I have an
appointment with my
dentist.

It's a pity. Maybe next time.

6 Fill in the blanks by using correct prepositions.

- 1. My sister goes to the tennis course ____ summers.
- 2. I prefer going to the cinema ____ weekends.
- 3. Every year my parents celebrate their wedding anniversary ____ August.
- 4. My school service takes me ____ half past seven.
- 5. We go to a café for brunch ____ Sundays once a month.

CHECK THIS OUT!

We use prepositions of time;

- I get up late on Sundays/ Mondays...
- My mother's birthday is on 3rd March.
- The first train is at 6 o'clock.
- We go to the cinema at weekends.
- We eat out at noon/ night once a month.
- They go to their summer house in May spring.
- My family and I watch TV in the evenings.

7 PROJECT TIME

Write a review about a film you watched.

- What kind of a movie is it?
- Who is the director?
- Who is the cast?
- What do you think about the movie?

TIPS

- 1. Start with the film's title.
- 2. Write the type of film and the year.
- 3. Explain the story of the film briefly.
- 4. Don't tell the ending.
- 5. Say your opinion about the film.

- Prepare a movie poster.
- Write a review of the movie.

LEAD IN



Answer the following question.

Do you want to be famous? Why, why not?

LISTENING & SPEAKING



1 SPEAKING 🖼

- a Look at the following pictures and answer the questions.
 - 1. Do you know the people in the pictures?
 - 2. What do you know about them?





1. 2.





3. ______ 4. _____

Write the correct name under each picture.

Türkan Şoray George Clooney Julia Roberts Aamir Khan

2 LISTENING (Track 6)))

Listen to the dialogue between Tom and Mert. Take notes.

Γhe name of the film	
The director	
The plot	
Award in Cannes	
When they meet	
Where they meet	

3 SPEAKING

Work in pairs. Ask and answer the following questions.

- **1.** Can you give a name of an actor or actress with an award?
- **2.** Do you know any other award winning Turkish directors? Who is he or she?



TODAY'S IDIOM

No pain no gain

It means "You have to work hard to make progress."

A: I have higher position at work than John's, but I have to work very hard late in the evening and he leaves at 5:30 p.m.

B: No pain no gain.

READING & WRITING



1 **READING**

- Read the paragraphs quickly. What are they about?
- Read the paragraphs again and write the names of the film stars in the pictures in Exercise 1a.

She was born on 28th October, 1967 in Georgia, USA. She is popular with her bright smile and gentle voice. She is tall and thin. She has got long blonde hair. She has three children. She has got a lot of films. She is a very successful actress with a lot of awards.

He was born on 6th May, 1961. He is an American actor and film-maker. He is good looking. He has got brown eyes and grey hair. He has got three Golden Globe Awards as an actor and two Academy Awards for acting and producing. One of his famous films is Ocean's Eleven.

He is an Indian actor. He has got brown hair and hazel eyes. He was born on 14th March, 1965 in Mumbai, India. He is not only a successful actor, but also a promising director. He won the Filmware Award for best director with his film Taare Zameen Par in 2007. He is married and has three children.

She was born on 28th June, 1945. She's a Turkish actress, director and a screenwriter. She has got black hair and brown eyes. She has a daughter called Yağmur Ünal. In 1964 she received The Golden Orange Film Award with Acı Hayat. Her another famous film is Selvi Boylum Al Yazmalım. She is very well-known in Turkey. Turkish people like her films very much.

- Read the paragraphs. Write true (T) or false (F). If it is false, correct it.
 - 1. Julia Roberts has only a few awards. _____
 - **2.** George Clooney is only a filmmaker. __
 - 3. Aamir Khan is both an actor and a director. _
 - 4. Türkan Şoray is a famous film star, director, and screenwriter. ___

2 SPEAKING



Work in pairs. Ask your partner the following questions.

- e.g. Who's your favourite film star?
 - What does he or she look like?
 - What do you think about his or her films?
 - Do famous people's lives interest you? Why, why not?

DISCUSSION TIME



Are success and fame the same things? What do you think about that?

PRONUNCIATION

(Track 7)

Listen and repeat the questions.

- 1. How do you feel?
- 2. When do you get up?
- 3. Why does he do that?
- 4. What does she drink?
- **5.** Where do you live?
- **6.** When does he have English class?

REMEMBER THIS!

We reduce do and does in questions words.

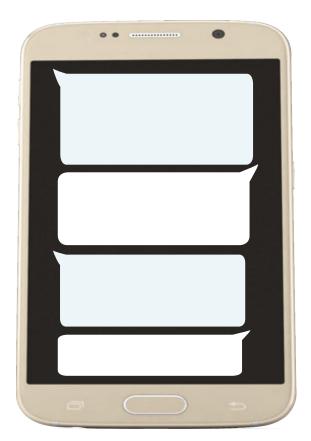
What do you think? It's pronounced [da] When does she come here? It's pronounced "dəz"

5 WRITING

Read the text message. Then write a similar message to your friend. Invite him or her to the movie.

e.g.





6 Read the dialogue and circle the date and the months. Then act it out.

Jeremy: The latest film of Sandra Bullock is in June, Alicia.

Alicia: Are you sure? I think it can be May.

Jeremy: Let me read the news about the movie

again. What date is today?

Alicia: 25th October. Why are you asking?

Jeremy: The news about the movie is in

today's newspaper.

Alicia: Oh I see. It's over there, on the coffee

table.

Jeremy: You're right. The movie is showing on

2nd May.

CL	IE	CV	T	HIS	Ω	ITI
UГ		しヽ		173		, , ,

A: When is your birthday?

B: It's on 3rd March.

We write 3rd March,

We read the third of March.

7 Listen and repeat. Then, write the dates as we read. (Track 8)))

- 1. 4th August _____
- **2.** 11th September ______
- **3.** 1st January _____
- **4.** 22nd July _____
- **5.** 23rd December _____
- **6.** 8th May _____
- **7.** 15th April ______
- **8.** 24th October _____

DO YOU KNOW THIS?

Every four year, February has 29 days instead of 28. This year is called a "leap" year and 29th day of February is a "leap day".

8 Write the months under the pictures by categorising.

- ◆ November
- April
- August
- December

• July

- AugusJune
- January
- OctoberFebruary
- ◆ March ◆ September
- May

WINTER







SUMMER

AUTUMN/ FALL



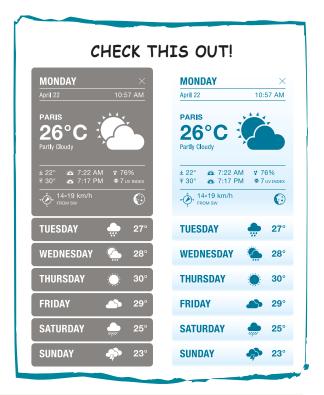


9 Answer the following questions.

What kind of activities can we do in winter?

e.g. We can make a snowman.

What kind of activities can we do in summer?



10 WRITING

a Read the diary. Which season is it?

b Write your own diary.

Dear My Dairy,
Today is Saturday. It's 1st
November. Everywhere is full
of yellow leaves. I like autumn,
so my family and I can go to
Yedigöller on Sunday. It has got a
spectacular view in these days. I'm
excited because my friend, fabio is
coming with us. We can take a lot
of photos.





UNIT 4

ANIMALS AND NATURE

4A People Taking Care Of Animals
4B Animals' Lives
4C Natural Events

In this unit you will be...

- describing daily routines.
- talking about frequencies.
- talking about abilities and inabilities.
- modifying actions.
- expressing formations of some natural events.
- making preferences.

PEOPLE TAKING CARE OF ANIMALS

LEAD IN



Answer the following questions.

- 1. Is taking care of animals difficult or easy?
- 2. Which animals do you think people keep as pets?

LISTENING & SPEAKING 4 🌙



VOCABULARY

Write the verbs in the correct blank.

a	g
football	English
the piano	Medicine
tennis	Chemistry
b	h
breakfast	picture
dinner	a bus
a rest	a shower
c	i
the ironing	dressed
homework	a newspaper
dishes	a shock
d	j
in İstanbul	running
at the airport	out with a friend
home	shopping
e	
lunch	7
a report	
food	100

Fill in the blanks with the correct form of the verbs below.

 wash ◆ think ◆ eat ◆ vaccinate ◆ take ◆ go play ◆ give ◆ has ◆ like

Mert is a high school student. He is eighteen years old. He has got a dog. She is a present from his mother. His dog's name is Lilly. She is one year old. Every day Mert 1____her milk in the mornings. Lilly eats dry food, but sometimes she ²_____ homemade food, too. He usually gives her vitamins. She 3_____ chocolate very much, but it is harmful for her health. They like spending time together. When Mert 4_____ to school, Lilly waits for him impatiently. He ⁵____ her for a walk when he comes back from school. Lilly 6____ with other dogs when she sees them in the park. In the evening they watch TV together. Mert ⁷_____ her once a month. He takes her to the vet for checkup. The vet sometimes 8____ her to keep immune system stronger. In summers he gets her hair cut. He 9_____ a fun with his dog and he 10_____ his dog is his best friend.



a cake dinner a bed

3 LISTENING (Track 1)

 Listen to Joe's daily routines and fill in the blanks.



My name is Joe Black. I'm a receptionist at a vet. I work in an office. I ¹______ at 7 in the morning. Then, I ²_____ my face and I ³_____ my teeth every day. After that, I take a shower. I don't have time for a big breakfast.

I have a snack. I usually drink fruit juice and ⁴_____ a sandwich. Then I ⁵____ dressed. I leave home at 6_____ I 7___ to work. My work starts at 9 o'clock. I usually help the vet when he examines the animals. I leave work at 5 o'clock. I arrive home at 6 o'clock. I 8_____ dinner at 7 o'clock. I 9____ television at night. I ¹0_____ to bed at ¹¹

CHECK THIS OUT!

Time expressions

I get up early in the mornings.

She does her homework every day.

He plays football on Sundays.

We hang out with our friends at weekends.

b Underline the time expressions in Exercise 3a.

4 SPEAKING 🖼

Describe your daily routine to your friends.

5 VOCABULARY

Fill in the blanks with the verbs in the box. Use the correct form. One is extra.

- study ◆ do ◆ make ◆ like ◆ take ◆ get
- ◆ play ◆ live ◆ have
- 1. He is not good at Maths. He ______low marks in Maths exams.
- 2. My kitten _____ drinking milk.
- 3. He doesn't _____shopping very often.
- 4. Giraffes _____ very big hearts and long black tongues.
- 5. She _____ Medicine at a university.
- 6. My brother _____ the guitar in his spare time.
- 7. My mom _____ a chocolate cake on Sundays.
- 8. Giraffes ______ in Africa.

6 Look at the chart and write questions and answers about Liz.

e.g. Does Liz work in England? Yes, she does.

1.	 ?
	_
2.	?
	_

work in	/
England	
live in a	X
flat	
study at a	/
university	
like coffee	Х

7 PRONUNCIATION (Track 2)))

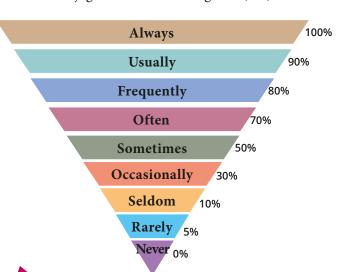
a Listen and repeat the verbs.

/s/ /z/ /1Z/make feel wash jump bring fix eat miss go visit earns pass talk choose turn

- b Listen to the words below and write the words in the correct column, and repeat.
 - ◆ ask ◆ hug ◆ does ◆ watch ◆ hate ◆ get
 - judge ◆ look ◆ study ◆ relax ◆ see ◆ buy

/s/	/ z /	/1 z /
writes	earns	charges

- **8** Fill in the blanks with the adverbs of frequency by looking at the pyramid below.
 - 1. Camels _____ clean up their ears with their tongues. (100%)
 - **2.** My cat ______ sleeps on my bed. (80%)
 - **3.** She _____ feeds the street animals.(70%)
 - **4.** His dog _____ eats dry food. (50%)
 - **5.** They _____ watch documentaries on television. (30%)
 - **6.** We _____ do online shopping. (10 %)
 - 7. A jaguar ______ eats grass. (0%)



9 LISTENING (Track 3)))

- a Look at the picture and answer the following questions.
 - 1. What is the woman's job?
 - 2. Whose dog is it?



- b Listen and write true (T) or false (F) for the statements.
 - **1.** She arrives at the clinic at seven o'clock. ____
 - **2.** She works at nights in emergencies. ____
 - **3.** She only treats dogs and cats. ____
 - **4.** She examines the animals to see if they are sick. ____
 - **5.** It is a very easy job. ____
- c Listen to the text again and fill in the blanks with the adverbs of frequency.
 - 1. I _____ give them some antibiotics.
 - 2. I ______ explain to the owners how to take care of their pets.
 - **3.** I ______ operate animals when they need it.
 - **4.** I ______ arrive home late. It is not an easy job, but I like my job.

CHECK THIS OUT!

She often gets up early.

He is always a tidy student.

He usually has lunch at school.

We are rarely late for school.

- 10 Underline the correct option.
 - **1.** An adverb of frequency goes **before**/ **after** the verb to be.
 - **2.** An adverb of frequency goes **before**/ **after** the main verb.

11 SPEAKING 🖼

a Look at the activities listed below. Tick (✔) the most suitable adverbs of frequency for you to complete the sentences. Then tell the class.

	always	usually	often	sometimes	never
1. read books on animals					
2. be interested in pets					
3. watch documentary					
4. buy things on the Net					
5. chat online with friends					
6. feed street animals					
7. do homework at school					
8. eat lunch at school canteen					

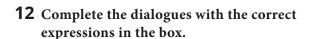
b Talk about your daily activities with your classmates.

13	Look at the pictures and answer the
	following questions according to you.

	v ·	ᆫ	IIS	\bigcirc	ITI
СП	N		ITO		<i>,</i> , ,

How often _____?

- once, twice, three times a day/ week/ month
- + always, usually, often, sometimes, never
- every day
- on Sundays
- A: How often do you go out with your friends?
- B: I go out with my friends once a week/ once.



- every six months
- every 12 months
- every summer

Dialogue 1

A: How often do zebras give a birth to a foal?

B: _____

A: That is interesting.

Dialogue 2

A: How often do you take your dog to the vet?

B: My dog is five months old. I take her to the vet _____

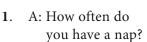
Dialogue 3

A: How often do you go on a vacation?

B: _____ What about you?

A: Every winter because I like skiing.





B:	



A: How often do you visit animal shelters?

B:		
D:		



3. **A:** How often do you visit the zoo?

B: _____



4. A: How often do you send your friends a text message?

р.

TODAY'S IDIOM

Have a nap: Sleeping for a short time e.g. My puppy usually has a nap every afternoon.

READING & WRITING



READING 1

- Answer the following questions.
 - 1. Do you have a pet at home?
 - 2. Which one do you like most; cats or dogs?



Read the dialogue and underline the statements about preferences.

> Tom: Hello! Alice: Hi, Tom.

Tom: How is everything going? Alice: Great. What about you?

Tom: Tomorrow is Saturday, so I feel great.

What do you do on Saturdays? Alice: I spend time with my dog.

Tom: That is nice. I like dogs too, but I prefer

cats to dogs and I have a cat at home.

Alice: Really! Why do you prefer cats?

Tom: Because I like them as pets. They are clean. They adapt to family life easily.

Alice: Dogs are loyal to their owners.

Tom: But cats prefer spending time at home

- Read the dialogue again and answer the following questions.
 - 1. What does Alice do on Saturdays?
 - **2.** Why does Tom prefer cats?
 - 3. Why does Alice prefer dogs as pets?
 - **4.** What does her dog prefer eating?

CHECK THIS OUT!

- I prefer tea to coffee.
- He prefers going to school on foot.
- He prefers cycling to running.



than going outside and dogs need more care and attention. It is easy to keep a cat at home.

Alice: When I go out with my dog, I always meet new people. I chat with them.

Tom: But dogs sometimes bark loudly. It is annoying. It is hard to keep them at home.

Alice: Dogs want to protect their owners.

Tom: Yes, you are right Alice. How do you

feed your dog?

Alice: I give him dog food, but he also prefers eating sausages, meat, chicken, and chewing bones.

Tom: Oh! I have an English class now. We can

talk about our pets later. See you soon.

Alice: OK. Take care of yourself! See you.



TODAY'S QUOTE

Happiness is a warm puppy.

Charles M. Schulz



- 1. What does Charles M. Schulz mean with this quote?
- 2. Do you agree with him? Why, Why not?



2 DISCUSSION TIME

Look at the pictures. Which one do you prefer? Talk to your partner on your preferences as in the example below. Use expressions such as *I don't agree with you*, *I agree but*, *I believe that*, *I don't think so*, etc.









- e.g. A: I prefer tennis to ice hockey because it is enjoyable and it helps you burn calories and fat.
 - **B:** I don't agree with you. I prefer playing ice hockey to tennis because it improves body coordination and balance.
 - A: I agree, but it is dangerous. Tennis is a lifelong sport. You can't play ice hockey when you are old.

3 READING

- a Look at the picture and answer the following questions.
 - **1.** What is the name of the animal in the picture?
 - 2. What is her job?



Mary always gets up early. She goes to the zoo every day because she is a zookeeper at the national zoo in France. She is responsible for taking daily care of animals and feeding them. She usually checks the animals. Then, she feeds them in the mornings. The animals don't generally eat food at the same time, so she feeds them at different times. She cleans the cages and tanks in the afternoon. She reports health problems of the animals to the vet when they look sick. She often trains the animals. Her job is not easy because some animals can be dangerous, but she likes her job.

- b Read the text and answer the following questions.
 - 1. Where does she work?
 - **2.** What does she do in the mornings?
 - 3. Do the animals eat food at the same time?
 - **4.** What does she do when an animal is sick?
 - **5.** Do you think her job is enjoyable? Why? Why not?
- c Underline the time expressions and adverbs of frequency in the text.

4 WRITING

Write a paragraph about your daily routine.

1 get up at	
In the afternoon.	
In the evening	

LEAD IN

Answer the following questions.

- 1. What is your favourite animal?
- 2. Do you have a pet at home?

LISTENING & SPEAKING



1 VOCABULARY

Look at the pictures and fill in the blanks with the names of these animals.

- pandas ◆ dolphins ◆ parrots ◆ fish ◆ eagle
- ◆ crocodile ◆ cheetah ◆ frog



- **1.** _____ have very large eyes and they can jump very high.
- 2. _____ like eating bamboos.
- **3.** _____ live in water and they are in different colours and types.
- **4.** _____ jump over the waves.
- 5. _____ can talk and imitate people's voices.
- **6.** _____ live near lakes and rivers. They are very big and dangerous animals.
- 7. _____ are very large birds. They have very big wings and sharp eyes.
- **8.** _____ run very fast to catch their preys.



2 LISTENING (Track 4)))

- a Answer the questions below.
 - 1. Are you afraid of bees?
 - 2. Why are bees important for our planet?
- b Listen to the conversation and fill in the blanks.

Simon: Hey, Linda! Look at the bee on the board.

Linda: Where is it? It's not there.

Simon: It is on the table.

Teacher: Calm down, please. 1_____ aren't

dangerous for people.

Robert: Sir, how do they make honey?

Teacher: They collect the nectar from different types of flowers. Then they take it to their hives.

Linda: It helps people recover from the cold,

Teacher:	Yes, because it	contains all	3?

Jack: It gives us energy, 4_____?

Teacher: Yes, it does.

Tom: Honey bees are important for flowers, fruits and vegetables ⁵______?

Teacher: Certainly! They help ⁶______ grow.

Kate: So, what can we do to protect them, sir?

Teacher: Chemicals and pesticides are dangerous for them. Honey bees love flowers. You can plant

⁷_____ in your garden, ⁸_____?

Kate: Yes, it is a great idea.

CHECK THIS OUT!

We use tag questions to ask for confirmation.

You can swim, can't you?
He works in an office, doesn't he?
Bees are important insects, aren't they?
I'm on the wrong bus, aren't I?

3 SPEAKING

Look at the CHECK THIS OUT! box. Then work in pairs and ask questions to your partner using tag questions as in the example.

- 1. A: A bat can't see well, can it?
 - B: No, it can't.
- 2. A: Honey bees are useful insects, aren't they?
 - **B:** Yes, they are.

4 Fill in the blanks with tag questions.

- 1. Bats don't sleep at nights, ____?
- 2. Polar bears are carnivorous, _____?
- **3.** Jack likes honey bees, _____?
- **4.** A cat doesn't like grass, _____?
- **5.** A cheetah can run fast, _____?

5 LISTENING (Track 5)))

Listen and underline the stressed "Can"

Kate: This is our new household Robot,

Emma. Her name is Cindy.

Emma: Really! She looks very cute, mom.

Kate: She can clean the house.

Emma: That is nice. Can she buy me

chocolate?

Kate: No, she can't, but she can wash the

dishes.

Emma: Can she turn on the TV for me?

Kate: Yes, she can.

Emma: Can she play games with

me?

Kate: No, she can't.

Emma: Can't she do my

homework?

Kate: No, she can't,

sweetie.

Emma: Oh mom, so she is not a big help for

me.

6 Underline the correct option.

- 1. We stress /don't stress "can" in short answers.
- **2.** We **stress/ don't stress** "can" in negative sentences.
- 3. We stress /don't stress "can" in positive sentences.
- **4.** We **stress**/ **don't stress** "can" in negative questions.

Which one is true? Circle the correct answer.

- 1. _____ can sleep when they fly.
 - **a.** Roosters **b.** Immigrant birds
- 2. _____ are the only mammals that can fly.
 - **a.** Bats **b.** Gulls
- **3.** _____ can live up to 100 years.
 - **a.** Alligators **b.** Camels
- 4. _____ can swim, but cannot fly.
 - **a.** Gulls **b.** Penguins
- 5. _____ live without drinking water for a long time.
 - **a.** Camels **b.** Sharks

CHECK THIS OUT!

We use ${f can}$ to talk about general ability.

She can speak French.

He can't play the piano.

Can you cook an omelette?

Yes, I can./ No, I can't.

8 Answer the following questions. If your answer is yes, show how you do it.

- 1. Can you snap your finger?
- 2. Can you wink?
- 3. Can you wriggle your ear?
- 4. Can you sing a song well?

9 READING

a Look at the pictures below. What animals are Robert and Ryan talking about? Read the dialogue and check your answers.



Ryan: Which animals do you like Robert?

Robert: I like tigers.

Ryan: Why do you like tigers?

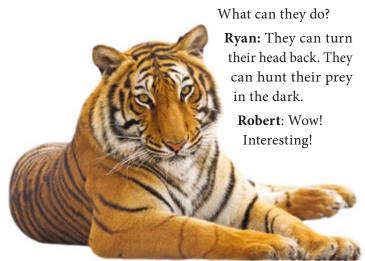
Robert: They are very powerful and big cats. They run very fast and catch their prey quickly. What animals do you like?

Ryan: I like bats. They have very amazing abilities. Their sense of hearing, smelling, and tasting are well developed. They aren't blind, but they have poor eyesight. They can't move their eyes. They live everywhere in the world. Bats usually live in caves, trees, and under the tunnels especially in dark places. Where do tigers live?

Robert: They are wild animals. They live in North Siberia, India, and Asia. Their habitat is forests, rainforests, grassland, and the Rocky Mountains. They eat meat, especially big animals. What do bats eat?

Ryan: They eat small mammals such as mice and insects. What are the features of tigers?

Robert: They are the largest cats in the world. A tiger can kill animals twice its size easily and they can swim very well. How about bats?



b	Fill in the blanks with these words from t	the
	text.	

◆ prey ◆ insects ◆ sharp
 Oh, this knife is very You should be careful when you cut something with it. My mother is afraid of She screams when she sees them.
3. Can a cat catch its easily?
Read the text and answer the questions.
1. What animal does Ryan like?
2. How does a tiger run?
3. What can bats do?
4. Are tigers wild or domestic animals?
5. What can tigers do?

CHECK THIS OUT!

Adverbs of manners describes how something happens..

My teacher speaks slowly.

He drives the car carefully.

She works very hard.

They run fast.

- d Underline the words in the reading text that show adverbs of manner as in the examples.
- **e.g.** She sings *badly*.

 She does her homework *carefully*.

10 SPEAKING 🖼

Work in pairs. Tick the activities you and your friend can do. Then tell the class.

<u>Activity</u>	You	Your friend
speak English fluently		
cook well		
solve problems easily		
drive car carefully		
get up early		
run fast		
take notes quickly		

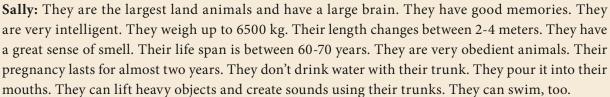
11 READING

- a Answer the following questions.
 - 1. Do you like elephants? Why, Why not?
 - **2.** Do you think they are intelligent? Why, Why not?
- b Read the dialogue. Write if the sentences are true (T) or false (F).
 - **1.** They like living in groups. ____
 - **2.** They use their trunks only to create sounds. ___

Defne: What is your favourite animal?

Sally: Elephants.

Defne: Why do you like elephants?



Defne: Where do they live?

Sally: They live in Africa and Asia. Their habitat is forests, grasslands, and desert.

Defne: What do they eat?

Sally: They eat grass roots, various fruits, leaves of trees, and drink a lot of water.

Defne: What are the amazing facts about them?

Sally: They can use their trunk to say 'hello' because they are very emotional animals. They pay respect to their dead. When one of their friends dies, they get sorry for it and may even visit the remains of it. They live in herds. If one of the members gets sick, they might help it survive and bring food for it.

Defne: Wow! That is amazing!

c Answer the questions about the text.

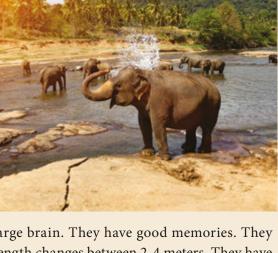
- 1. How much do elephants weigh?
- **2.** What is the body length of elephants?
- **3.** How long do the elephants live?
- **4.** Do you think they are emotional animals?

12 SPEAKING

Describe your favourite animal (its habitat, diet, physical traits, unusual abilities, and amazing facts about it). Use the questions written in the dialogue. Then present it to the class.

13 What are the names of the offsprings of the following animals (offspring: baby animal)? Match the words given in the box with each animal below.

- ◆ puppy ◆ cub ◆ chick ◆ calf ◆ lamp ◆ kitten
- duckling kid foal
- 1. Cat _____
- **10.** Giraffe_____
- **2.** Horse _____
- **11.** Cow _____
- **3.** Dog _____
- **12.** Leopard _____
- **4.** Elephant ______ **5.** Parrot _____
- **13.** Lion _____
- 3. 1 di 10t _____
- **14.** Bull _____
- **6.** Penguin _____
- **15.** Bear _____
- 7. Sheep _____
- **16.** Duck _____
- 8. Hen _____
- **17.** Panda _____
- **9.** Goat _____
- **18.** Camel ____



READING & WRITING



READING 1

Answer the following questions.

- 1. Do you think Polar Bears eat fish?
- 2. Do Caretta Carettas live in Turkey?

Polar Bears

Polar bears live on Arctic Region and the North Pole. They weigh up to 550 kg. Their length changes between 2.4-3 meters when standing on their hind legs. They are very big and strong animals. They have black noses and have white coats, but their coat becomes yellow with age.

Polar bears generally eat fish, birds, and other sea animals. Their favourite food is seal. They can hunt

in the sea, on ice, and on land easily. Polar bears spend their time searching for food and hunting. They are very good swimmers. They run fast and have a good sense of smell.

Polar bears are endangered animals. Their numbers get fewer because our Earth's temperature increases. The ice melts, so they lose their home. When the ocean doesn't freeze, they can't find food. The other danger is hunters. Some people hunt them for food and for their fur.



Caretta Carettas

Caretta Carettas are very big turtles. They are marine reptiles. They have a different physical appearance with a big head, strong jaws, and reddish-brown shells. Their weight is around 135-180 kg. Their length is nearly one meter. They can swim at a speed of 24 km per hour. They eat sea animals. Their favourite food is blue crabs.

Caretta Carettas live in the Atlantic, Pacific, Indian Oceans, and the Mediterranean Sea. The major nesting areas of the caretta caretta sea turtles are Dalyan, Köyceğiz, Yumurtalık, Belek, and Anamur in Turkey. They bury 80-100 eggs in the sand. After two months, the eggs hatch. Adult turtles always go back to the same beach they were born to lay eggs.

They are endangered animals. When they come to life, they need to reach the sea in a very short time; otherwise, they die. Also, the risk does not end when they reach the sea; the other big sea creatures might eat baby turtles in the sea. It is possible that some animals such as dogs, foxes, and birds can eat their eggs. Only a few turtles can survive. The other danger is pollution of the seas. Some universities, civil organisations, and the government try to protect these animals to keep them alive in Turkey.

b	Read the texts and complete the fact file
	about polar bears and carette carettas.

Fact File About Polar Bears

Habitat:	
Physical Traits (length, height, colour):	
,	
P 1	
Food:	
Amazing fact:	
The reason for being endangered:	
The remon for example or minigered.	

Fact File About Caretta Carettas

Habitat: Physical Traits (length, height, colour):	
Food: Amazing fact:	
The reason for being endangered:	

c Match the words with their definitions.

•		· //
	1. protect	a. the egg cracks open and baby bird, snake, and fish come out
	2. pollution	b. to turn into ice
	3. alive	c. to keep someone or something safe from danger
	4. hatch	d. the process of making air, water, soil etc dangerously dirty
	5. freeze	e. the risk of becoming extinct
	6. melt	f. to become liquid in heat

7. endangered g. not dead

d	Read the text again and decide if the
	statements are true (T) or false (F). If it is
	false, correct it.

1. Polar bears have brown noses and white
coats
2. Polar bears only hunt on land
3. Polar bears are endangered animals because
the Earth's temperature increases
4. When ocean freezes, Polar bears find food
5. Caretta Carettas' habitat is oceans and the Mediterranean Sea
6. Caretta Carettas like blue crabs
7. Carettas never return to the beach they were born
8. If Carettas don't reach the shore in a short time when they come to life, they die

2 WRITING

Do the Internet search on an animal you like. Then write a short paragraph between 70 -80 words about the animal. (Characteristics, habitat, amazing facts about it, etc).

•	
1 °	

LEAD IN



Answer the following questions.

- 1. What are some natural disasters you know?
- 2. Do natural disasters often happen in your country?

LISTENING & SPEAKING



VOCABULARY

Write the names of natural disasters under the pictures.

- flood ◆ volcanic eruption ◆ avalanche ◆ tornado
- hurricane ◆ earthquake ◆ tsunami ◆ landslide











3.











7. _

2 Match the words with their meanings.

- 1. Flood
- **2.** Volcanic eruption
- 3. Hurricane
- 4. Landslide
- 5. Earthquake
- **6.** Tornado
- 7. Tsunami
- 8. Avalanche

- ___ a. a storm that has very strong, fast winds and that moves over water
- ___ b. lava, hot material and various gases are expelled from a volcanic mountain as a result of this event
- ___ c. a violent storm that spins in a big circle and destroys everything along
- ____ d. usually a dry area is covered with extreme amount of water as a result of heavy rain
- ____ e. a sudden shaking of ground and it causes a lot of damage
- ___ f. a very large wave triggered by violent movement of earth under the sea and causes lot of damage along the coastline
- ___ g. a mass of snow that slides down the mountain
- ___ h. rocks, earth, debris move down a slope

3 LISTENING (Track 6)))



- a What is the main idea of the dialogue? Listen to the dialogue and circle the correct options.(more than one correct option)
 - 1. Our actions before an earthquake
 - 2. Our actions during an earthquake
 - 3. Our actions after an earthquake

4 READING

a Read the interview between Mert and a disaster expert, Hiroshi.

Mert: Natural disasters can cause a lot of damage. Many people might lose their lives. Some of them get injured. Lots of people lose their homes because of natural disasters.

Hiroshi: Yes, unfortunately, that's true, but we need to take precautions, so we can reduce our losses.

Mert: Earthquakes, landslides, and extreme climatic events such as floods, avalanches, and heavy rains happen all around the world. For example, earthquakes are common in Japan. As an expert, what do you recommend us to do to reduce negative effects of natural disasters?

Hiroshi: For earthquakes, the government should ban unsafe buildings and control the construction process. We should educate people on how to act during and after earthquakes.

For landslides, people should plant more trees and they shouldn't settle in risky areas. The government should build roads away from the locations prone to landslides, too.

For floods, people shouldn't settle near the bank of a river and the government should build dams.

For avalanches, the government shouldn't build roads or railways in risky areas. People should plant trees in risky areas and they shouldn't do winter sports in risky locations prone to avalanche.

b	Listen to the dialogue again and write true
	(T) or false (F).

- 1. You can cut electricity and gases of houses. _
- **2.** You can use the elevator.
- **3.** Get under a piece of strong furniture. ____
- **4.** Don't cover your head with your hands. ____
- **5.** Stay away from bridges, tunnels, trees, overpasses, and light posts. ____
- **6.** If you are in the car, find a secure place. _
- 7. After the earthquake, get back in your house immediately. ____
- **8.** Don't stay away from damaged buildings. ___

b.	Answer	the	followi	ng	questions
----	--------	-----	---------	----	-----------

1. What does Hiroshi offer to reduce the
negative effects of natural disasters?

(earthquakes)
•
(flood)
(landslides)
(avalanches)
,

2. Which precautions should the government take to reduce the negative effects of the floods and avalanches?

5 SPEAKING

Offer solutions about how to reduce the negative effects of natural disasters with your classmates.

e.g. We should pl trees to prevent la)	

READING & WRITING



READING

- Answer the following questions.
 - 1. What are the names of the natural disasters shown in the newspaper article?
 - 2. Which natural disasters are common in your country?
- Read the newspaper article and match the number of the paragraphs with the disasters given in the box.
 - ◆ avalanche ◆ landslide ◆ hurricane ◆ flood ◆ volcanic eruption ◆ earthquake ◆ tornado ◆ tsunami

Friday

NEWSPAPER

It generally occurs as a result of a great amount of heavy rain, but it doesn't always occur from heavy rain. In coastal areas, storms can cause it. Strong winds, hurricanes, melting ice, or snow can cause it, too. Sometimes overflowing rivers cause it. It destroys many roads, farms, and houses. Many people lose their lives or homes. It has an economic impact, too. It causes a lot of damage to the environment. Animals and plants die or lose their habitat.

It is a large storm. It begins in the ocean. It occurs over warm ocean water. Warm weather and warm water are the main reasons for it. It results in floods or fires, and leads to a lot of damage. It blows away many things on its way. It causes a lot of financial troubles, too. Many people die and lose their homes each year as a result of it.

3

It occurs because of huge pressure under the Earth. Lava flows can destroy cities and nature. Explosion happens as a result of it. Everywhere gets covered with ash. People living close to the area evacuate their homes. But, it also has beneficial effects on agriculture. The soil in that area becomes very fertile after many years of eruption.



It is a very violent atmospheric storm. It is a whirling wind. It can reach up to 300 miles per hour. It forms over warm water. It mostly appears along the coastline and causes damage to coastal areas.

5

It is shaking of the ground. It can occur everywhere in the sea or on the land. It can be violent. After the main shocks, people can feel small shocks (after shocks). Many buildings, roads, or bridges can collapse. It can cause deaths of many people. It destroys cities. After all these shocks, fires, diseases, and landslides can occur. Turkey is at the risk of it all the time because it is located on many fault zones.

c Match the words from the text with their meanings	c	Match	the	words	from	the	text	with	their	meaning	s.
---	---	-------	-----	-------	------	-----	------	------	-------	---------	----

1. occur	a. to move around very quickly
2. collapse	b. effect
3. whirl	c. to fall down
4. trigger	d. grey powder and it remains after something has burnt
5. fertile	e. to make something start to happen
6. impact	f. capable of producing
☐ 7. ash	g. to happen

F	r	i	d	a	y

When an earthquake occurs at sea, it creates huge waves. At first, it is just one wave. Then the number of waves increases. They become violent. When they hit the beach, they cause serious damage. It kills many people, animals, and damages the area.

It occurs in eastern and northern regions of Turkey. Rains in spring, winds, melting snows, even thunderstorms can trigger it. Huge mass of snow rolls down the mountains. It destroys the trees, the farmlands, and the buildings on its way.

It mostly occurs in the Black Sea region of Turkey. Heavy rain, melting snow, steep slopes, and earthquakes trigger it. Almost every year it occurs in Turkey because of steep hills and mountains, deforestation, and rain patterns. It destroys trees, houses, and roads. It causes death and injuries, too.



Fill in the blanks with these words.

◆ fertile ◆ ash ◆ whirling	• impact • trigger

1. Floods	as a result of heavy	rain
------------------	----------------------	------

2. The land is ______. Farmers can grow good crops.

3. After the volcanic eruption, the town gets covered with _____.

4. The buildings _____ as a result of earthquake.

5. Tornadoes are _____ winds.

6. Thunderstorm can ______ avalanche because of the sound it creates.

7. Earthquake has an _____ on people and environment.

Answer the following questions about the text.

1. What causes floods?

2. What happens after a hurricane?

3. Why does a volcanic eruption have a positive effect on agriculture?

4. What are the results of an earthquake?

5. What are the main reasons behind avalanches in Turkey?

6. Why do landslides occur often in Turkey?

2 Look at the set of drawings below. It's about what to do in case of an earthquake. Match the instructions with the drawings.

1. Get under desk and hold on. ____

2. Use the stairs. ____

3. Cover your head and neck. ____

4. Do not use the elevator. ____

5. Drive to a clear area and avoid bridges. ____

6. Stay away from utility wires. ____

7. Stay away from potentially danger objects. ____

8. Do not stand at the door. ____



3 Write the names of the disasters under each speech bubble.

We see ash and lava everywhere. People should evacuate their homes.

1

This area is risky. You shouldn't build your house near the bank of a river.

2.

It is a very huge whirling storm. We should leave here.

3. _____

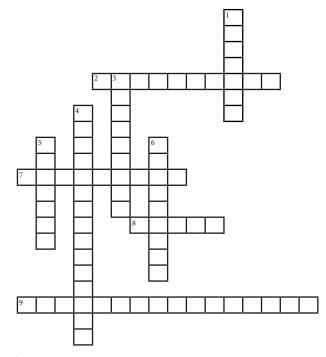
"

TODAY'S IDIOM

A storm in a teacup: A lot of unnecessary worry about something that is not important. e.g. I don't want to listen to him. He always makes a storm in a teacup.

4 VOCABULARY

Do the crossword puzzle. Write the names of the natural disasters and the idiom.



Across

- 2. A sudden shaking of ground and it causes a lot of damage
- 7. A storm that has very strong, fast winds and that moves over water
- 8. Usually a dry area is covered with extreme amount of water
- 9. Lava and hot material are expelled from a volcanic mountain as a result of this event

Down

- 1. A violent storm that spins in a big circle and destroys everything along its way
- 3. Mass of snow that slides down the mountain
- 4. A lot of unnecessary worry that is not important
- 5. A very large wave triggered by the violent movement of earth under the sea and causes a lot of damage along the coastline
- 6. Rocks, earth, debris move down a slope

5 PROJECT TIME

Prepare your own poster about how to protect our nature and write your slogan on it as in the examples below. Then present your poster to your friends.













UNIT 5

CELEBRITIES

5A Famous People 5B Stars 5C Runway

In this unit you will be...

- asking about and describing people's appearances and characters.
- identifying people.
- describing clothes.
- comparing characteristics and appearances.
- describing people's emotions.

FAMOUS PEOPLE

LEAD IN

Answer the following questions.

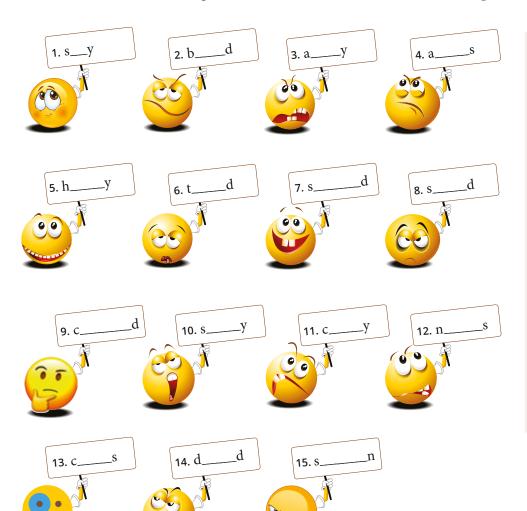
- 1. Do you sometimes read the news about famous people?
- 2. When you meet a famous person, how do you feel (excited, happy, surprised etc.)?

LISTENING & SPEAKING 4



1 LISTENING (Track 1)))

Place the words on the right into the boxes. Then listen, check and repeat.



- a. stubborn
- **b.** disappointed
- **c.** shy
- **d.** curious
- e. bored
- f. angry
- g. anxious
- **h.** confused
- i. sleepy
- j. crazy
- k. nervous
- 1. sad
- **m.** happy
- n. tired
- o. surprised

SPEAKING 🖼

Work in pairs. Ask and answer these questions by taking turns.

- 1. Are you too emotional?
- 2. What makes you upset/ happy?

- 3. What makes you feel depressed?
- **4.** What do you do to get rid of your stress?

CHECK THIS OUT!

- An adjective ending in -ing describes what something is like, what effect it has on us. Chess is an exciting game.
- An adjective ending in -ed describes how we feel.

I feel excited when I read the stories of successful people.

Stephen Hawking was **interested** in stars because space was very interesting for him. James Watson feels **relaxed** when he watches birds

3 Fill in the blanks with the correct form of the adjectives.

A: Titanic is an *exciting* film, isn't it? (excite)

B: Oh my gosh! Really? You don't generally love watching a film, so I'm ¹______(surprise).

A: At the weekend, I want to watch an enjoyable film. So, what about 'Titanic'?

B: 'Titanic'? It's a good movie with a very

² (disappoint) ending. It's one of the saddest movies of all time.

A: What kind of movies do you like?

B: I love watching science fiction movies.

A: I advise you to watch 'Project Almanac'. It's about a time machine.

B: OK. Is it ³_____ (bore)? I don't want to get ⁴____ (bore), but I love Jonny Weston's films. I think it's worth watching.



4 GAME

- Work in groups or teams. Each group or team is given a set of -ing cards and -ed cards.
- ◆ Take the −ing cards and put the -ed cards face down.
- ◆ The first student takes an –ed card from the pile and puts it on the table face up.
- The player, who has the matching -ing card, makes a sentence about themselves using one of the words,
- **e.g.** I think celebrities' life is very interesting. Then they ask the group a question using the other word,
- e.g. Are you interested in celebrities' life?
 - Each correct sentence is worth one point.
 - They can then throw away both cards and it is the next player's turn.
 - If they cannot, any player in the group/ groups can steal the point by making a correct sentence and question using the two adjective forms.
 - The team with the most points win.

CHECK THIS OUT!

happy X unhappy like X dislike

possible X impossible legal X illegal

living X non-living regular X irregular

Fraction Read the short text below and add "un-, non-, dis- etc. or X. (where necessary)

Dr. Michio Kaku is a well-known scientist. His aim is to make physics more practical for the ¹______-scientist. His comments on physics and nature are ²______ interesting. He studies Albert Einstein's ³_____ finished theory: 'Theory of Everything'.



6 Find and circle the given words on the right in the puzzle.

Z	P	Е	G	D	W	K	В	D	U	D	I	S	Y	U
D	R	M	О	Z	Н	Е	О	I	D	Т	S	U	U	Q
N	Е	R	V	О	U	S	R	S	С	U	W	О	D	P
S	D	S	Е	В	P	О	Е	A	R	P	Q	Ι	Е	Е
S	L	Т	U	S	Н	Y	D	P	С	N	S	R	R	D
Н	A	Е	D	F	P	Н	R	P	L	Y	В	U	I	A
Н	V	D	Е	X	N	I	U	О	R	N	P	С	Т	В
U	О	L	О	P	S	О	О	I	J	S	Y	P	Н	A
О	F	I	Q	Е	Y	S	С	N	Z	I	Q	S	A	Y
W	J	Е	D	X	P	I	S	Т	F	Н	U	N	U	Н
N	R	О	В	В	U	Т	S	Е	Z	О	G	S	С	U
С	Е	О	Е	X	A	F	Y	D	I	R	U	L	Н	Y
F	S	S	Н	W	J	Y	W	X	Y	Z	A	R	С	I
Т	В	Н	С	L	W	G	N	F	L	D	Z	В	G	V
N	K	L	Y	О	K	A	J	W	Е	W	F	L	Z	A

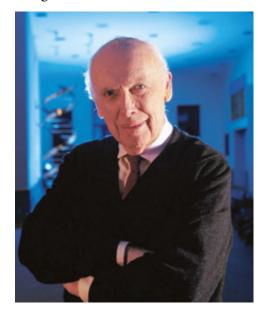
ANGRY
ANXIOUS
BORED
CONFUSED
CRAZY
CURIOUS
DISAPPOINTED
HAPPY
HATE
NERVOUS
SAD
SHY
SLEEPY
STUBBORN
SURPRISED

TIRED

7 READING

a Read the passage below and match the words with their meanings.

James Watson is an American molecular biologist. He's one of the discoverers of the DNA double-helix with Francis Crick. This has been a very big revolution in medicine. James Watson and Francis Crick are the founders of modern biology, too. Discovery of DNA is one of the most important discoveries of the 20th century. Watson's main interest is education and he often states that his teachers inspired him at school. He loves playing tennis, but he dislikes being competitive. He always tries to do his best and still tries to play tennis every day. James Watson loves art, especially painting. He's a member of the American Academy of Arts and Sciences and the Danish Academy of Arts and Sciences.



competitive _____ a. friendly, sociable, communicative
 inspire _____ b. not friendly and uncommunicative
 outgoing _____ c. wanting very much to win or be more successful than other people, ambitious
 reserved ____ d. to make someone have a particular strong feeling

- b They in the text refers to______
 c Answer the following questions based on the information given in the text.
 1. Who is James Watson?
 - 2. Who did James Watson discover DNA with?
 - **3.** What does James Watson do in his spare time?
 - **4.** What kind of personality does James Watson have?
- d Think of a person who has contributions to humanity. Make notes under the following headings. Use your notes to talk about him/her in class.
 - Name of the celebrity:
 - His/ Her contributions:
 - His/ Her general appearance and personality:
- 8 LISTENING (Track 2)))

Listen and circle the correct answer.

- 1. ___ was one of the greatest scientists and cosmologists of the 21st century.
 - a. Stephen Hawking
 - **b.** Francis Crick
- **2** Hawking was interested in ____.
 - a. stars
 - **b.** DNA
- 3. Michio Kaku is a ____.
 - a. physicist
 - **b.** biologist
- 5. Dr Michio Kaku studies on ____.
 - **a.** Einstein's theory of relativity
 - **b.** String Field theory
- **6.** Dr Michio Kaku always appears on TV and writes ____.
 - a. books on DNA
 - **b.** online blogs



TODAY'S QUOTE

People who boast about their IQ are losers.

Stephen Hawking





Use at least five of the words given below to write sentences about scientists Stephen Hawking and Michio Kaku. Compare their characteristics (appearance, character, etc.). Tell the class your comparison.

Words: well-known, famous, love, science, have a disease, not walk and talk, healthy, unhealthy, important, great, tired/tiring, fascinated/fascinating, interesting/interested

b Describe your favourite celebrity's appearance and character.

READING & WRITING



READING

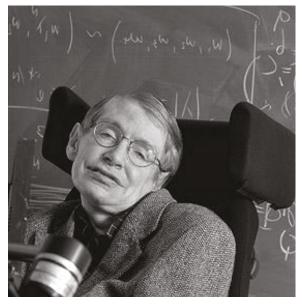
- Answer the following questions.
 - 1. Do you know Stephen Hawking?
 - 2. What do you know about him?
- Fill in the blanks with the given words below.
 - well ◆ January ◆ walk ◆ health ◆ science
 - ◆ fifty ◆ study ◆ in

Stephen Hawking

"My goal is simple. It's a complete understanding of the universe. Why it is as it is and why it exists at all."

Stephen Hawking

Stephen Hawking was born in Oxford, in England on ¹______ 8, 1942 and died in 2018. He was an English scientist, an astrophysicist, a cosmologist, and an author. Everybody considers Stephen Hawking as one of the most magnificent theoretical physicists in the world. He suffered from ALS for more than² years. His ³_____ problem was very serious. However, he was never in panic and he never allowed any difficulties to stop him because he was a determined and brave person. Hawking was 4____ a wheelchair for years and couldn't talk. He could communicate with a touchpad computer. He always tried to overcome the restriction of his condition. Naturally suffering from ALS was very difficult for Hawking, but his disability also always forced him to concentrate on 5_____. Hawking wanted to 6_ mathematics at Oxford University, but there wasn't a maths degree at that university. So, he focused on studying physics and chemistry for more than 40 years. He was a member of the USA National Academy of Sciences. He was



interested in stars. They were fascinating and he was always fascinated with the Universe. His one of the most important discoveries is black hole radiation and relativity. His discovery is called "Hawking Radiation". Before his unfortunate disease, Hawking was very active and he was also interested in dancing and rowing. He had a very independent and strong character. He wasn't able to speak, 7_____, and even move his fingers but he spent all his time on studying black holes and space-time theories. He was a very ambitious person. With a witty sense of humour, he constantly made his complex physical concepts accessible to the public. 'A Brief History of Time' was Stephen Hawking's mega best seller book and millions of people around the world read this book. Hawking always said that disability was a physical limitation in his life, but his disability never prevented him from doing 8_____ and he warned people not to feel disabled mentally in addition to physical disability. Also, he continually reminded us to look up at the stars to make sense of what makes the universe exist, not down at our feet.

C	Read the passage above again and match the meanings with highlighted words. There are 3 extra
	words.

1	. awesome,	extreme	lv	impressive:	
	,		1	1	

2.	free	from	outside	control:	

3.	decided,	constant,	fixed:
----	----------	-----------	--------

4.	amusingly	clever in	expression:	
	W111 W 0 111 7 7		411 p 1 4 0 0 1 0 1 1 1 .	

2. He used a smart phone to communicate 3. First he wanted to study maths 4. He was a member of the USA National	orn • history • brown • hard ong • younger The Shahidi is an American actuated to the state of
3. First he wanted to study maths Yan 4. He was a member of the USA National and Academy of Sciences Mi 5. He was from Italy an 6. The only thing that drew his attention was nature And Yan 7. He was also interested in drawing and rowing Yan 8. Hawking was proud of himself on making his complex physical concepts accessible Yan 9. His book 'A Brief History of Time' was a bestseller Yan 10. Hawking warned people not to feel disabled in spirit 6 e Underline the emotions and causes of them in the text. Then, write the emotion words and causes of them are in the avantable.	nodel. She was 1 in nnesota. Her mother's name is Afro-American actress and a her's name is Afshin. He's an nerican photographer. She ha brother. His name is Sayed a is of medium height and slin, curly, 4 l
the text. Then, write the emotion words and	es. She's a kind and 5 ca has a black belt in Korean 1 ng Soo Do. She loves acting, s Yara wants to be a
e.g. He was proud of himself because he always made his complex physical concepts accessible to the public with witty sense of humour. 1	mplete the sentences by look ragraph about Yara Shahidi. First paragraph tells us Second paragraph tells us Third paragraph tells us RITING ink of a celebrity. Describe yng the plan in REMEMBER the left and the sample descragraph above. Write a paragraph above. Write a paragraph above. Write a paragraph above.
REMEMBER THIS!	Dietolog Ho.

Outline of a Descriptive Biography Paragraph

Introduction: name, nationality Main Body: family, appearance and

character

Conclusion: hobbies, interests

2 SPEAKING 🖼

- Look at the picture on the right. Talk about Yara Shahidi's general appearance.
 - 1. What is she wearing?
 - **2.** Do you like her dress? Why, why not?

- ds given in the
 - working

Yara Shahidi is an American actress and
a model. She was ¹ in 2000 in
Minnesota. Her mother's name is Keri. She's
an Afro-American actress and a model. Her
father's name is Afshin. He's an Iranian-
American photographer. She has a ²
brother. His name is Sayeed.
Yara is of medium height and slim. She has got
, curly, ⁴ hair and brown
eyes. She's a kind and 5 person.
Yara has a black belt in Korean martial arts,
Tang Soo Do. She loves acting, singing and
⁶ Yara wants to be a Historian.
Complete the sentences by looking at the

king at the

1.	First	paragraph	tells us	
- •		P 442 44 74 44 74 44 44 44 44 44 44 44 44 44	****	

your celebrity THIS! box riptive graph as in



LEAD IN



Answer the following questions.

- 1. What are some of the winter sports you know?
- 2. What is the difference between snowboarding and skiing?

LISTENING & SPEAKING



1 VOCABULARY (Track 3)

Match the words with the correct drawings. Then listen, check and repeat.

- ◆ backpack ◆ jacket ◆ boots ◆ pants ◆ map
- head wear ◆ skiboards ◆ goggles ◆ ice skate









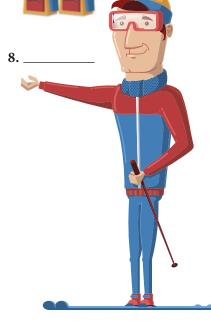












2 LISTENING (Track 4)))

- Fill in the blanks with the given words. Then listen and check.
 - award ◆ elite ◆ fashionable ◆ skating ◆ head
 - ◆ entertain ◆ national ◆ creative ◆ budget

Figure Skating

'Stars on ice' is the greatest theatrical ice show on				
earth. It started off in Canada with 1				
skaters in ² clothes and impressive				
choreography. In 1986, Olympic champion				
Scott Hamilton and his manager Robert Kain				
created 'Stars on ice' on a shoestring 3				
The world's unique ice show constantly tries to				
4 people with a 5 team and				
brings an amazing visual 6 show to				
every audience every season. All performers are				
⁷ champions, world champions and				
Olympic medalists. Jef Billings is the 8				
of the team. He has got four Emmy Awards for				
'Stars on ice' in costume design and choreography.				
The world's first figure skating production has				
also got an ACE Cable ⁹ for the Best				
Sports Special. Figure skating production 'Stars				
on ice' is going on to prove itself with the lighting				
designers, sound engineers and choreographers.				



b	Match the highlighted words in the text with
	their meanings below.

- 1. to make something new or invent something _____
- **2.** with a very small amount of money
- **3.** a group of viewers or listeners, especially those present at a performance (as a play, concert) _____
- **4.** unusual, special in some way ___
- **5.** to demonstrate, show the reality of something _____

3 SPEAKING 🖼

Work in pairs. Ask these questions to your partner.

- **a.** Do you like ice skating? Why, why not?
- **b.** What kind of equipment do you need to skate?

CHECK THIS OUT!

• Some and its compounds are used in positive sentences. (someone/somebody, something, somewhere).

There is always something new to learn. There is somebody near the ice skaters on the ice rink.

He always goes **somewhere** to skate with famous skaters.

 Any and its compounds are used in questions (anyone/ anybody, anything, anywhere).

Is there **anybody** to skate on the ice rink?

• (not) any and its compounds are used in negative sentences. He isn't anywhere.

We never go anywhere alone at night.

 No and its compounds are used instead of (not) any in negative sentences.

We know **nothing** about the private lives of scientists.

Nobody believes her although she claims that she has won the ice-skate competition.

4 READING

a Read the dialogue and answer the questions given below.

(Chrystal is in a store for shopping.)

Chrystal: I need something black and white for my friend's wedding ceremony.

Jim: Why is it black and white?

Chrystal: I want to look thinner.

Jim: Do you need anything else?

Chrystal: Yes, black high heeled shoes...

Jim: Anything else?

Chrystal: Nothing, that's all. Thanks.

- **1.** What does Chrystal need? Why does she need them?
- **2.** Why does she want to take white and black clothes?
- **3.** Does she need anything else? If yes, what does she need?
- b Read the dialogue again and find indefinite pronouns and circle them.
- 5 Fill in the gaps with "something, anybody, nothing", and "everything".

(Actress Nikita and Adam are giving a party to celebrate their son's first birthday.)

Nikita: OK, let's get started. ¹*Everything* should be ready in time. Today is very important for me. It is little John's first birthday.

Adam: Y	ou're right dear. Please help me! Can
2	clean the dining room? And who
can carry	the chairs there?
Nikita: (Dh dear. I did all of them. You've taken
3	havan't way? If there is 4

missing, you should drive far away to the shopping mall. Shops are closed on Sundays.

Adam: There is ⁵_____ missing. I'm sure I've taken all of them.

Nikita: Good. It means ⁶_____ is OK. Happy birthday little John.

6	Below is a conversation between a reporter and Anastasia, a celebrity, about her daily routine. Read the conversation and put the dialogue into the correct order. Then, act it out with your friend.										
	Rep	Reporter: Have you got anything to study									
	now	now? (a)									
	_	orte rvie			•	u so	mu	ch f	or th	nis	
	_					ry bi view.	•			a lot	t for
	Reporter: Would you please tell us about typical day in your life? (d)						ıt a				
	earl show	y, at wer	6 in and	the	moi	y, I g rnin eakfa (e) _	g. T ast. I	hen,	I ha	ave a	a
		Anastasia: I always study. Learning the role is an important part of my job. (f)									
	Ana	Anastasia: Yes, there is something new to									
	stuc	study A new film. (g)									
	Reporter: A new film? What is the name of										
	the movie? (h)										
	Ana	Anastasia: I can just say that I play the role of									
	a clu	a clumsy lawyer. I've got a leading role. (i)									
	Ana	Anastasia: My pleasure.(j)									
	_				•	ou l			-	_	s?
		you nori	•			writ	e rej	peat	edly	to	
	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11

b

7 Choose the correct alternatives for the blanks.

Canan Dağdeviren

Canan Dağdeviren was ¹ in 1985							
in Istanbul, Turkey. After her primary and							
secondary educ	secondary education in Kocaeli, she graduated						
² Ha	cettepe University	, Department of					
Physics Enginee	ring in Ankara in	2007. Then, she					
³ M	aterials Science ar	nd Engineering					
at Sabanci Univ	ersity in Istanbul	in 2009. In the					
same year, she	started her doct	oral studies in					
-	nt of Materials ⁴ _						
e e	t UIUC (Univers	•					
	paign). She has						
	ıl ⁵ si						
· ·	is won a Fulbrig	-					
	6for l						
has developed a wearable cardiac chip without							
batteries and a ⁷ for diagnosing skin							
cancer. She mainly wants to work on the study							
of two areas: 8 and the human body.							
1. a. born	b. burn	c. bear					
2. a. in	b. X	c. from					
3. a. studied	b. wrote	c. read					
4. a. Science	b. Maths	c. English					
5. a. earth	b. technology	c. word					
6. a. awards	b. study	c. field					
7. a. device	b. study	c. prestigious					
8. a. art	b. shape	c. electronics					

c

READING & WRITING



READING 1

- Look at the pictures and answer the following questions.
 - 1. Who are the people in the pictures?
 - 2. In which areas are they successful?
- Read the text and do the following exercises.

Ioannie Rochette

French-Canadian Joannie Rochette is a bronze medallist at the Vancouver 2010 Olympic Games. She is a world vice-champion in 2009 and the first Canadian female figure skater in all categories. Joannie Rochette faced a very tragic event. Her mother died of a sudden heart attack after she arrived with her husband to watch her daughter in the Winter Olympics. Everybody admired Joannie's psychological strength because she was a bronze medallist in the women's free skate four days later. She is Canada's first medallist in women's figure skating since 1988. Joannie Rochette is, without a doubt, the most successful Canadian figure skater of all time and she is still competing in honor of her mother. Joannie is a part of the Stars On Ice for twelve years. She is on the World stage in Europe and Asia as a figure skater and as a Sports Analyst by competitions and the Olympic Games. On the other hand, Joannie Rochette is also a student. She is now studying Medicine at McGill University.

Mehmet Okur

Mehmet Okur is a Turkish professional basketball player. He went to America in 2001. He's the first Turkish player to win an NBA championship. He couldn't play basketball for a long time because of his injuries. He retired in 2012. He's capable of playing center and power forward in the games. Okur loves performing interesting shows on the courts. His fans give him the nickname of 'Memo'. Mehmet Okur is also the first Turkish -born coach of NBA.





- Read the sentences below and write true (T) or false (F).
 - 1. Joannie Rochette is an Afro-American skater. ___
 - 2. Her mother's death was a painful time for Joannie. ___
 - 3. Joannie is Canada's first medallist in women's figure skating since 1988. ___
 - 4. Joannie skates for Stars On Ice for twenty years. ___
 - 5. Joannie Rochette is a figure skater, Sports Analyst and student at McGill University. ___
 - **6.** Mehmet Okur is the first Turkish-born coach of NBA. ___
 - 7. Mehmet Okur is capable of playing small forward in the games. ___

2 Choose the correct words on the right to fill in the blanks in the text below.



Milan Fashion Week

Milan Fashion Week is¹ clothing
trade show and ² part ³
the global large four fashion weeks. The
others are Paris Fashion Week, London
Fashion Week and New York Fashion
Week. The National Chamber for Italian
Fashion organizes Milan Fashion Week
twice every year. The autumn/ winter
event ⁴ 5February/ March
of each year and spring/ summer event
⁶ ⁷ September/ October
of each year. The schedule ⁸
with New York, followed by London and
then Milan and ending with Paris. It's a
⁹ profit association. Its aim is to
support Italian fashion. Milan Fashion
Week changes the city completely into
a touristic place. During the event, the
city's street and historical place, turn
into 10 The most elegant palaces
become the stage for the famous models.
VIPs and 11 from all over the
world are on the streets of Milan.

1.	a. the	b. a	c. an
2.	a.it's	b. a	c. X
3.	a. of	b. off	c. in
4.	a. are	b. be	c. is
5.	a. of	b. on	c. in
6.	a is	b. are	c. can be
7.	a. of	b. on	c. in
8.	a. start	b. begins	c. finishes
9.	a.un	b. in	c. non
10.	a. catwalk	b. theatrical stage	c. studio
11.	a. fashion show	b. fashionable	c. fashion lovers

3 Complete the dialogue with the given phrases.

- ◆ How about Stars of Ice? ◆ you're joking
- ◆ there is nothing ◆ I'm bored ◆ What's on TV
- ◆ Search for TV channels ◆ I love that show



Berk: 1
Dan: Let's watch TV.
Berk: That's a good idea. ² ?
Dan: Richest celebrities in the world.
Berk: It means ³
Dan: There can be something better on
TV.4
Berk: OK. ⁵ ?
Dan: Stars of Ice? It's fantastic. 6
Berk: Tell me ⁷ Don't you always
say that you're irritated by their show?

REMEMBER THIS!

Outline of a Descriptive Biography Paragraph

Introduction: name, nationality

Main body: family, appearance and character

Conclusion: hobbies, interests

WRITING

Read and put the paragraphs into the correct order.

Corey Fogelmanis

A Corey Fogelmanis is a very friendly person. He has a sense of humour, so everybody loves him.

> He's calm and practical. He's determined. He never lets anyone stop him.

> > B Corey Fogelmanis is an American child actor. He's from Thousand Oak, California.

C His mother's name is Shannon and he has a sister. Her name is Baylee. Corey lives with his family and with his pet dogs. Corey Shain is good looking and always well-dressed. He's seventeen years old. He's tall and slim with short light brown hair and blue eyes. He prefers comfortable clothes in his daily routine.

His friends call him 'Corey'. Corey works on his photography skills. He has got two pet dogs. When he's on holiday, he loves playing with them. His hobbies are swimming, dancing and gymnastics.

1	2	3	1

	Change "British English" words to "American English" equivalents.
	humor:
	holiday:
According to paragraph 4a:	
	1. Introduction part tells us
	2.36 1.1 1.1 1.1
	2. Main body part tells us
	3. Conclusion part tells us
	-

According to paragraph 4a: 1. Introduction part tells us		
 2. N	Main body part tells us	
3. (Conclusion part tells us	
you con	ite a descriptive composition about ir favourite celebrity as in the samplosition by using the given plan (70 cds).	

LEAD IN



Answer the following questions.

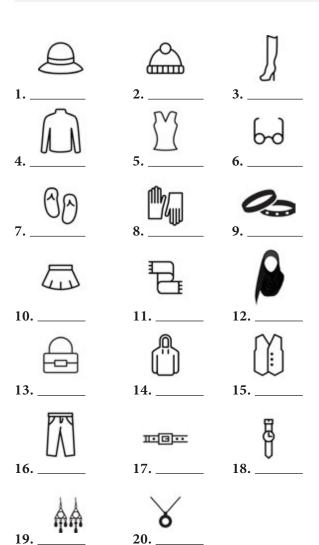
- 1. Do you often buy new clothes? If yes, what kind of clothes do you usually buy?
- **2.** What is your favourite piece of clothing?
- 3. What clothes do you wear on a rainy/ cold/ snowy day to keep you warm?

LISTENING & SPEAKING



1 VOCABULARY (Track 5)

- a Write the correct words in the blanks. Then listen, check and repeat.
 - ◆ boots ◆ slippers ◆ blouse ◆ wristband ◆ scarf ◆ hoody ◆ pants ◆ watch ◆ necklace ◆ hat ◆ jumper
 ◆ glasses ◆ winter hat ◆ gloves ◆ skirt ◆ headscarf ◆ waistcoat ◆ bag ◆ belt ◆ earrings



b Listen and repeat.Parts of a shirt (Track 6)



2 SPEAKING

- 1. What is your favourite clothing?
- 2. Do you like to wear skirts, shorts, or trousers?
- 3. Do you have a pair of jeans?
- 4. Do you like to wear a belt with them?
- 5. When it rains, do you use an umbrella or wear a raincoat?
- 6. When it's cold what do you wear, a coat or a jacket?

3 EVERYDAY ENGLISH



Useful Expressions

- There you go → in a smaller size
- Here you are What's your size?
- just a minute
- a Read the sentences in the dialogue below. Who says each: a sales person (SP) or a customer (C)? Find and write.
- b Put the dialogue in the correct order.
- c Then listen, check and repeat. (Track 7)

<u>SP</u> : May I help you? <u>1</u> (a)
: Thank you. Where is the fitting room? (b)
: Certainly. Just a minute please (c)
: This way please, on the right (d)
: What's your size? (e)
: There you go. They're in a large size (f)
: Yes, I'm looking for these leggings in
shiny yellow and that short shirt in

silver. ___ (g)
___: I think it's large. ___ (h)
___: Thanks a lot. (*She puts them on*) They
are a little big. Do you have them in a



CHECK THIS OUT!

We use a/an

- with singular countable nouns after the verb **to be** when we want to say what something is and what somebody is. She's **a** nurse./ It's **an** umbrella.
- with certain phrases to show how often somebody does something.
- He flies to Hawai once a year.

4 PRONUNCIATION (Track 8))) /ðə/, /ði:/

The/ ðə/ - words starting with a consonant sound, **the** *cup*.

The/ **ði:**/ - words starting with a vowel sound, **the** *armchair*.

5 Listen and tick (✔) the correct boxes. Listen again and repeat.

Words	(A) /ðə/	(B) /ði:/
1. The piano		
2. The moon		
3. The electricity		
4. The ox		
5. The sofa		
6. The Taylors		
7. The iron		
8. The sun		
9. The police		
10. The rich		
11. The United Kingdom		

CHECK THIS OUT!

We use the

- with nouns when we are talking about something specific.
- When we mention the noun second time. I have a midi skirt. The skirt is green.
- with nouns which are unique, (the earth, the sky).
- before the names of the rivers; the Nile, seas; the Aegean Sea, oceans; the Pacific Oceans, mountain ranges; the Alps, deserts; the Gobi, groups of islands; the Canary Islands, musical instruments; the piano and countries when they include words state/kingdom; the United States.

6 Fill in the gaps with a, an, the or X.

- **1.** They usually spend their holiday in ___ mountains.
- **2.** ___ South of Turkey has ___ ideal climate.
- 3. ___ Dicle flows from ___ Toros mountains of ___ eastern Turkey to ___ Persian Gulf.
- **4.** Çağla Büyükakçay is ___ well known tennis player.
- 5. Hachiko was _ famous Akita dog. __ dog waited for his owner at __ station for 15 years.
- **6.** Can Berk and Defne play ___ piano or guitar?
- 7. Do you know that ___ dolphin isn't ___ fish. It's ___ mammal.

7 LISTENING (Track 9)))

a Listen to the recording and fill in the blanks below.

Rey's Characteristics

This is ¹___ photo of Daisy Ridley. She's ²____ British actress. She is ³__ main ⁴___ of Star Wars-The Force Awakens. Star Wars-The Force Awakens is a 2015 American space film. Her

beige 6____ and a 7___ with pouch. There
are beige 8____ on her feet, too.

In the movie, Daisy Ridley plays Rey Skywalker. She's a headstrong, friendly, and 9_____ character. She's also 10____ brave and gorgeous survivor. She is able to keep her humanity although she is in difficult and dangerous situations. Rey has always stayed loyal to her old friends. The message of the 11____ is 'The greatest reward of life is friendship' and 'Power of friendship'.

DO YOU KNOW THIS?

BRITISH ENGLISH AMERICAN ENGLISH

- 1 pants/ underwear 1 underwear
- 2 underpants 2 short/ jockey short
- 3 trousers 3 pants
- 4 jumper/pullover/sweater 4 sweater
- 5 trainers5 sneaker6 zip6 zipper
- 7 purse(woman) 7 wallet(woman)
- 8 handbag 8 purse
- 9 waistcoat 9 vest

b Read the text again in 7a and match the words with their meanings.

- 1. pouch __ a. faithful
- 2. gorgeous __ b. a small bag made of leather or cloth
- **3.** survivor __ **c.** stubborn
- **4.** reward __ **d.** very beautiful or pleasant
- **e.** a person who continues to live despite nearly dying
- **6.** headstrong __ **f.** gift
- 7. loyal ___ g. the quality or state of being human

c Read the sentences and write true (T), false (F) or doesn't say (DS).

- Daisy Ridley is the main character of Star Wars-The Force Awakens.
- **2.** She has a mask. ___
- **3.** She has a sleeveless and collarless beige shirt. ___
- **4.** There is a black belt around her waist with yellow pouch. ___
- **5.** Loyalty is very important for Rey. ___
- **6.** Rey Skywalker is a humanist character. ___

d Answer the following questions.

- 1. What do you think about Rey's character?
- **2.** Why is Rey a brave survivor?
- **3.** What is the message of the movie?

READING & WRITING



Look at the pictures on the right. Answer the following questions.

- 1. What do you think about models' clothes in the pictures?
- 2. Which one is your favourite? Why?

1 READING

- Now listen to the presenter, Julia's comments and match the models' names with the letters. (Track 10)
 - **1.** Veronica ____ **2.** Annabell ____ **3.** Justin ____ **4.** Helena ____ **5.** Irina ____
- Read the text quickly and answer.
 - **1.** What is the text about?
 - 2. Who is in a casual cloth?
 - 3. Who is in a formal cloth?
 - 4. Who has got loafers, boots, short-heeled shoes and trainers on the feet?
- Read the text again. Look at the highlighted words and guess their meanings.

A FASHION SHOW

This is the presenter's commentary from a Street Style Fashion Show on the streets of Milano.

"___ Ladies and gentlemen, we are pleased to present this year's autumn winter the Best Street Style.









This is Milano's longest Street Catwalk. On the open air catwalk, first models are Veronica and Justin on the streets of Milano. Veronica introduces women's casual wear collection. She is in a smart loose black cardigan. There are two grey pockets on the left and right side of the chests. She has flat, black and leather ankle boots on her feet. Justin is in a narrow dark blue jacket and a waistcoat. Under this, there is a white shirt with a cherry colour tie and slim-fit black trousers. There are black leather shoes on his feet. Veronica is taller than Justin but Justin is one of the most handsome models in Europe. Thanks, Veronica. Thanks, Justin.

Helena, Colour is everything this season. Helena is in a comfortable polo-neck, short dress with long sleeves. There are black and orange stripes on the skirt and top sleeves. She has got a small, cross-body, yellow handbag and a pair of white trainers. Helena is the most colourful one on the catwalk. Thank you, Helena.

Annabell is wearing a large black striped light-blue cotton shirt and a pair of patched blue jeans with a brown belt round her waist. She has got a black handbag and beige-brown leather trainers on her feet. She looks more comfortable and more stylish than the others. Annabell you can go even dancing in them with a pair of cowboy boots. Thank you, Annabell.

Classic style is timeless. Irina is the most talented of all models. She is wearing two-piece beige brown and yellow leopard pattern suit. She is also wearing a tight dark-blue turtleneck and a skirt with a slit at the front and the skirt is long. She has got low-heeled black leather shoes on her feet. Thank you, Irina."

- Refer to the text on 'A Fashion Show' again. Find the sentences which include trousers, trainers, handbag, and waistcoat in the reading passage. Change these words with synonyms in American English. e.g: She's got a long black handbag. She has got a long black purse.
- e

Fill in the blanks with the given words. • waist • slit • comment • turtleneck • casual • slim-fit • loafers	First, for day-wear collection they are on the streets. Veronica is in a ¹ (black/long/loose) cardigan fastened with silver zip. There are two grey pockets on the left and	
 are a type of leather shoes without a fastening. A side or a back in a skirt can definitely change the look of a dress. All rock climbers always tie the rope around their before climbing up or down. This year the favourite garment on the catwalk is colourful jumpers. His blue shirt is It means that it fits a little tighter than a normal shirt. clothes aren't formal clothes. Jeans and t-shirts are examples for this type of clothes. My English teacher's on my term homework is encouraging. 	right sides of the chests. She has ² (flat/ black/ leather) ankle boots on her feet. Under this, there is a ³ (black/ long) dress. She looks very pretty with blond hair. Justin is in a ⁴ (sport/ blue/ one-button) jacket. Under this, there is a whishirt with cherry colour tie and tight-fitting black trousers. There are ⁵ (leather/ black) shoes on his feet. Think of a famous person and write a paragraph to describe his/ her appearance/ what he or she wears according to "size, colour, age" in the correct order as in Exercise a. (50-60 words)	
Refer to the text on "A Fashion Show" again. Read the sentences below and write true (T) or false (F) next to each. If it's false, write the true answer. 1. This is a Street Style Fashion Show in London 2. Fashion Show takes place on the open air catwalk		

WRITING

Complete the sentences by putting the

From runway to the Street of Milano

Veronica and Justin are on the streets to

present this year's autumn-winter collection.

adjectives in the correct order.

2

a

CHECK THIS OUT!

3. Veronica and Justin are in casual clothes. __

4. Veronica is in a blue cardigan. _

Order of adjectives We don't usually have a long list of adjectives before a singular noun. Fact adjectives Opinion adjectives + size + age + shape + colour + origin + material + noun Some **beautiful** small antique round blue Venetian china plates.

f

CHECK THIS OUT!

 We use the comparative form + than to compare two people or things.

Mariya Sharapova is **taller than** Serena Williams.
Serena Williams is **shorter than** Mariya Sharapova.

 We use as adjective as to show that two things are the same.

Serena Williams isn't **as tall as** Mariya Sharapova.

We use the+superlative form

 of/ in to compare one
 person or thing with more
 than one person or thing in
 the same group.

Serena Williams is one of the best tennis players in the world.

3 Read the sentences and choose the correct option.

- 1. Oh, look at that wedding dress. It is as 'elegant / more elegant as a swan. No matter how much it costs, I really want to buy it.
- **2.** I couldn't decide which blouse to buy. I like the pink one but the red one is much ²**cheap/ cheaper**.
- **3.** I generally prefer casual clothes in my office. Casual clothes are ³**more comfortable**/ **the most comfortable** when compared to formal clothes.
- **4.** I am sure that this long dress will fit you ⁴better/ the best than me.
- **5.** Here is your change. It is **5more/ the most** than you calculated.

4 Fill in the blanks with the correct form of the adjectives given.

Jolie-Pitt's kid, Shiloh is	10 years old. Maddox Pitt is 2 years
¹ (old) Pax Pit	t. Zahara Pitt is 12 years old. Knox
Pitt is 4 years ²	(young) than Zahara and 5 years
3(young) tha	n Pax.

5 Answer the following questions according to the text above.

-	TT	1.1		3.6	1.1	2
Ι.	How	old	18	Ma	ddo	X ?

2. Is Pox younger or older than Shiloh?

3. Who is the youngest and oldest of all?







UNIT 6

INTERCULTURAL TOPICS

6A Different Weather Events and Cultures 6B Travel and Tourism 6C National, Moral, and Cultural Values

In this unit you will be...

- identifying cultural differences.
- asking about and describing cities.
- talking about travel and tourism.
- expressing events happening now.
- expressing movements.
- talking about basic national, moral, and cultural values.



Answer the following questions.

- 1. Which cultures are you interested in? Why?
- 2. What do you want to know about different cultures?(e.g. their cuisines, traditions or lifestyles)
- 3. Do people need to know weather condition before they travel to a country? Why, why not?

LISTENING & SPEAKING

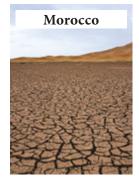


1 VOCABULARY

What is the weather like in the following countries? Write the weather conditions in the box under the pictures.

- **a.** It's thundery.
- **b.** It's windy.
- **c.** It's sunny.
- **d.** It's cold.
- e. It's snowy.

- **f.** It's rainy.
- **g.** It's cloudy.
- **h.** It's foggy.
- i. It's hot.
- j. It's dry.





















- 9. _____ 10. _

2 Which words can you add - ing to?

- 1. rain/______4. warm/_____
- 2. snow/ _____ 5. wind/ ____
- **3.** windy/ ______ **6.** blow/ _____



3 LISTENING (Track 1)))

a Listen to four people talking about the weather. Find out which country they are in and what the weather is like.

1. In	, it is	

2. In	, 1t 1s	

3. In, it is	_
---------------------	---

4 T	•. •	
4. In	, 1t 1s	

- b Listen to the people again and write true (T) or false (F) next to the sentences below. Correct the false ones.
 - 1. She lives in a village. ____
 - **2.** They are shopping in a bazaar. ____
 - **3.** He is driving on a highway. ____
 - **4.** They are walking on a footpath. ____
 - 5. One of the speakers has a daughter. ____
 - **6.** They have umbrellas. ____

4 SPEAKING 🖼

Work in pairs and ask questions to your partner.

- **1.** What's the weather like today in the city or town you live in?
- **2.** What's the temperature today?

- 5 What are the common body language signs and indications of emotions/ feelings around the world? Match and discuss with your partner.
 - 1. pointing and shaking a finger at others ____
 - 2. shaking hands ____
 - **3.** shrugging shoulders ____
 - 4. pointing down ____
 - **5.** smiling ____
 - **6.** waving hand with the palm out ____
 - 7. clapping hands ____
 - **8.** nodding your head ____
 - **9.** bowing down __

- a. saying good-bye
- **b.** congratulations
- c. salutation of respect
- d. disapproving
- e. aggressive signal
- **f.** a friendly greeting
- g. agreeing
- **h.** friendship and acceptance
- i. stating you don't know

















DO YOU KNOW THIS?

Use of facial, paralinguistic, and other clues to work out meanings.

Body language, gestures, facial expressions, tone and pitch of voice are all examples of paralinguistic features. Facial expressions reflect emotions, feelings, and thoughts all over the world. People generally use their hands for communication and greetings. Holding the nose means 'something smells bad', and it's a universal gesture. Japanese people don't like handshaking and kissing. They consider these kinds of body contact as impolite. They bow people at the first meeting. Handshaking is a universal form of greeting and leave taking in Western culture. The head nod is a universal sign for yes, but Bulgarians use this gesture to say no. French, Turkish, and Italians love to touch while they are talking. However, British, German, and Australian people dislike this. Touching a person's head in the USA is considered as a very rude behaviour. Eye contact is very important in showing interest and attention almost all over the world.

How do people reflect their emotions, feelings, and attitudes using body language?



7

A WORLD CUL	TURE QUIZ
Where does past a. Turkey c. Italy	a come from? b. Spain d. France
a. blue, red, and b. red, white, an c. green, red, and d. yellow, blue, a	d brown d white
 What languages Canadian and French and D Spanish and E English and F 	eutch British
nationality?	e country. What is the b. Swiss
c. Switzerland 5. Before entering a first a. drink green to b. take off your second on your d. give flowers	a home in Japan, you must ea shoes
6. Among Arabs, the called aa. Kaffiyeh	
7. The world's m	nost populated country is
a. India c. Canada	b. China d. Poland

8. You want to break the ice in a small-talk. Which topic would you choose?

b. weather a. family c. politics d. school

8 Match the pictures with their descriptions.

- 1. showing anger ___
- **2.** asking someone to call ____
- 3. asking someone to leave ___
- **4.** showing boredom ___
- **5.** showing surprise ___
- **6.** asking someone to be quiet ___













READING & WRITING



What are some important customs and traditions in Turkish culture? Share with your partner.

1 READING

a Read the text below quickly and circle the countries mentioned in the text.

NATIONAL CUSTOMS AND TRADITIONS FROM AROUND THE WORLD

The world is full of different customs and traditions. They symbolize the way of life. Here are some interesting ones. The Polish applaud when the plane lands. The Queen of England was born in April, but Australians celebrate the Queen's birthday with a public holiday in June and September. In Greece, a child's tooth is thrown onto the roof for good luck. Brazilian people celebrate New Year's Day with a bowl of lentil soup because they think the lentil is a symbol of wealth. Turkish people always offer preparing a meal for guests. When they go into a house, they take off their shoes. In Turkmenistan, it is impolite to sit on a chair or sofa if the elderly person is sitting on the floor or carpet. In India, inviting a person to a social event (going out for dinner) means, the person who invites will pay for everything. When paying a cashier in Austria, always place the money in their hand. Placing the money on the table/bench is rude.

b Read the text again and answer the following questions.

- **1.** What is the function of customs and traditions?
- 2. When do the Polish applaud on a plane?
- **3.** Do Australians celebrate the Queen's birthday on the correct date?
- **4.** Why do the Greek throw a child's tooth onto the roof?
- **5.** What do Turkish people do when they go in a house?
- **6.** Where do you place the money when you pay a cashier in Austria?

2	Match	the two	halves	of the	sentences.
_	VIAICH	THE LWO	HAIVES	OI LIIC	veille lices

- 1. In China social structure is formal, ____
- **2.** In many countries giving a tip is considered as a polite manner. —
- **3.** While people in some countries drink tea in breakfast, ____
- **4.** It is essential to take off shoes while entering a house in Asian countries,____
- **5.** Although chewing a gum might be good for dental health, ____

- **a.** However, in Korea and Japan, it is considered rude.
- **b.** but in most of the European countries, it is not necessary.
- **c.** but in the USA, it is informal.
- **d.** it is considered illegal in Singapore.
- **e.** they drink coffee in some of them.

3 Read the sentences in Exercise 2 again and underline the contrast linkers.

4 READING

a Read the texts below and write which countries and cities are mentioned in each text.

A. _____

I'm in a country in North Africa. Most of it is desert. Also, the weather is generally dry. The Pyramids in Cairo are my favourite buildings in the world. They are one of the wonders of the world. Their shapes and mystery are fascinating. The longest river in the world is in this country.

В. _____

It's located on the southern Europe. The climate is typically warm and dry in summers and mild in winters. Its capital city, Athens, is the home of the first Olympic Games, and it's famous for its mythology. The popular traditional dance of this country is syrtos.

C. _____

It has both Atlantic and Mediterranean coastlines. The climate is generally dry and hot in summers, mild in winters. You can travel around this country by bus. I'm on the bus now! I'm going to the historic city of Toledo to see a Flamenco Show. If we have enough time, we'll go to a bullfighting attraction there.

D. _____

It is a country that has the equator line. There is no real dry season. You can see lots of coffee trees everywhere. Today I'm going to the Amazon Rainforest. Rio de Janeiro is the biggest city. There are many different "samba schools".

b Answer the following questions.

- 1. What is Cairo famous for?
- **2.** Which city is the home city of the first Olympic Games?
- **3.** What is the weather like in Toledo in general?
- **4.** Which country is famous for coffee trees?

5	Fill in	the blan	ike with	the word	c in	the box
_	тш ш	the biai	IKS WILLI	me word	9 III	tile box.

 ◆ bagpipes ◆ delicious ◆ chopsticks ◆ knife ◆ kilt ◆ nodding ◆ plates ◆ shoes ◆ contact
 Chinese people generally use to eat their meals. Scottish people wear, and play in their traditional ceremonies. In Greece, people break in some dances.
4. In Estonia, cutting a slice of bread with a is considered disrespectful.
5. In some cultures, not finishing your food implies that the food is not
6. In Turkey, people take off their when they get into a house.
7. In many cultures, eye between the same genders is often a symbol of trust.
8 the head means "yes" in many cultures.
WRITING What are the customs and the traditions in Turkey you know? Write a short paragraph between 100 and 150 words and share it with the class.

LEAD IN



Answer the following questions.

- 1. How often do you travel?
- 2. What types of transportation do you use?

LISTENING & SPEAKING



- LISTENING (Track 2)))
- Write the names of the cities in the blanks.
 - ◆ London ◆ Berlin ◆ Sydney ◆ Barcelona ◆ Ankara







Picture B is





Picture A is Picture C is Picture E is

Picture D is ____

- Listen to five different airport announcements. Fill in the blanks with cities mentioned above.
 - **1.** Speaker A: The plane is going to ____
 - **2.** Speaker B: The plane is going to _____.
 - **3.** Speaker C: The plane is going to _____.
 - **4.** Speaker D: The plane is going to _____.
 - **5.** Speaker E: The plane is going to _____.
- Listen again and fill in the blanks.
 - 1. The 16:20 flight to Barcelona is delayed by _____ hour.
 - 2. The passengers going to London should go to the boarding gate _____.
 - **3.** The passengers going to Sydney should go . to the boarding gate _____.
 - 4. The flight number of the plane going to Berlin is ______.
 - **5.** The time in _____ is 18:30.
 - **6.** The temperature in Ankara is _____°C.

2	LISTENING (Track 3)))	
	Liston to the conversation and f	:1

Listen to the conversation and fill in the blanks.

Buying a Plane Ticket on the Phone	Buying a	Plane	Ticket	on	the	Phone
------------------------------------	----------	-------	--------	----	-----	-------

- **A:** I would like to ¹______a flight.
- B: I can help you make your reservation. Where are you traveling to?
- **A:** My final destination is ²____
- **B:** What is your travel date?
- **A:** I would like a reservation for ³_____
- **B:** Which do you prefer? Vienna International Airport or Bratislava Airport?
- A: I would like to fly out of 4_____.
- B: What time of day will you fly? Do you prefer a morning or an afternoon flight?
- **A:** I need a 7 am flight in the ⁵_____.
- **B:** Would you like a window seat or an aisle seat?
- **A:** A ⁶______ seat, please.
- **B:** Well, you are flying in the morning. We are sending you your tickets in the ⁷_____.

3 Write the words from the box next to their definitions. • means of transport • driver's licence hitchhike • check-in desk • take off • get off • passenger • luggage ____: to leave by airplane 2. _____: baggage, suitcases 3. _____: ways of travelling 4. _____: to leave bus, train, plane etc. 5. ______: a place where you show your ticket at the airport **6.** ______: a person taking a trip by airplane, boat, train etc. 7. _____: official permission to drive a car 8. _____: to travel by someone else's vehicle for free Put these sentences in the correct order (from 1 to 6). Share your ideas with your partner. (___) The plane takes off. (____) Go to the check-in desk. (____) Board the plane. (___) Wait at the boarding gate. (_1_) Arrive at the airport. (___) Go through immigration. 5 Match the directions with the pictures by writing the letters in the boxes. a. take the second left **b.** take the second right c. turn right **d.** turn left e. traffic lights f. go straight on g. roundabout **h.** go past

6 Add more transport words to the word diagrams.

Water Land Car plane

7 LISTENING (Track 4)))

Listen to the airport announcement. Then tick (\checkmark) the correct flight on the following timetable.

Departure	Destination	Local Departure Time	Local Arrival Time	Flight Number	Gate	Flight Duration
İstanbul	Addis Ababa	21:00	02:16	AC7300	12	8 hours 16 min.
İstanbul	Hyderabad	13:35	04:35	AC8755	29	9 hours 30 min.
İstanbul	Lima	18:50	23:00	PD412	8	17 hours 20 min.
İstanbul	Hanoi	07:20	21:40	UA3928	35	14 hours 20 min.
İstanbul	Riyadh	07:30	11:30	TS664	17	4 hours

- **8** Look at the timetable above for different flight schedules and answer the following questions.
 - **1.** How much time does it take between İstanbul and Riyadh?
 - **2.** What is the flight number of Hyderabad?
 - 3. What time does the plane arrive at Lima?
 - 4. Which flights arrive before 23:00?
- **5.** What time does the Addis Ababa plane leave the airport?
- **6.** Which flight leaves from gate 35?
- 7. Is there a flight to Thailand?
- **8.** Where is the flight to at 13:35?
- **9** Look at the timetable below in different schedules and answer the following questions.

DEPARTURES							
TIME	DESTINATION	FLIGHT	GATE	STATUS			
12: 39	SYDNEY	QF5723	27	CANCELLED			
12: 57	TORONTO	AC5984	22	CANCELLED			
13: 08	TOKYO	JL608	43	DELAYED			
13: 21	PARIS	AF5870	28	ON TIME			
13: 48	ROME	AZ5324	15	BOARDING			
14: 19	ANKARA	TR0620	11	ON TIME			
14: 54	BERLIN	LH5021	30	DELAYED			

- 1. Is the plane taking off for Toronto at 12:57?
- 2. What is the flight number to Berlin?
- 3. Which flight is after 14:19?
- 4. What time does the Ankara plane leave the airport?
- **5.** Which flight is leaving from the airport at the moment?
- **6.** Is the plane to Sydney leaving at 12:38?

READING	8	WRITING	

Match	the	phrases	with	the	pictures
	Match	Match the	Match the phrases	Match the phrases with	Match the phrases with the

- 1. boarding pass (__)
- **2.** identification (__)
- 3. pass through security (__)
- **4.** get on (__)
- **5.** departures lounge (__)
- **6.** board (__)

- 7. a passenger & an agent (__)
- 8. arrival/ departure (__)
- **9.** gate (__)



















SPEAKING 🖼

Work in pairs. Make a dialogue on buying a ticket. Then act it out.

Student A is a travel agent.

Student B is a customer.

3 VOCABULARY

Put the words below in two groups. Write the words in the correct column.

- church
- festival
- museum
- camping
- ruin

- conference
- castle
- opera
- mosque
- concert

PLACES TO VISIT

	TEHOLO TO TIOTI	
		- 1
		- 1
		_
l ——		
		- 1

4 Read the dialogue below and complete the hotel registration form given.

Receptionist: Good afternoon, may I help you? **Customer:** Yes, I'd like to book a room, please.

Receptionist: Certainly, when for, sir?

Customer: April the eleventh.

Receptionist: How long are you staying?

Customer: Four nights, from March 10th to March 14th. **Receptionist:** What kind of room would you like?

Customer: Double with bath. Can you give a room with

a view over the sea?

Receptionist: Of course, sir. We have a double room on

the fifth floor with a great view.

Customer: Thanks.

Receptionist: Who is booking, sir?

Customer: Jonathan Taylor.

Receptionist: OK. Your room number is 425. How would

you like to pay?

Customer: By credit card, please.

Receptionist: That's all. Oh! Your phone number and

e-mail, please.

Customer: My phone number is 0505 234 7286.

Receptionist: And your e-mail address?

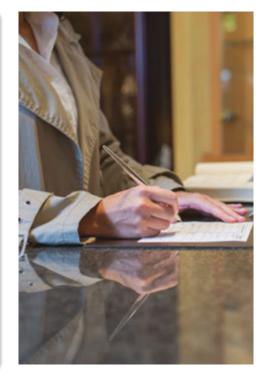
Customer: It's Jooathm@upmail.com, J-O-O-A-T-H-M.

Receptionist: Thanks, goodbye.

Customer: Goodbye.







HOTEL REGISTRATION FORM

Full Name

Phone Number

E- mail

Room Type

Number of Guests

Number of Nights

Arrival Date

Departure Date

Payment

	5	Complete the table b	v using the	phrases in th	ne box with t	the help of the	pictures
--	---	----------------------	-------------	---------------	---------------	-----------------	----------

- ◆ the annual film festival ◆ canals and houseboats ◆ 15th July Martyrs Bridge
- ◆ electronics stores and robot toys ◆ classical music and baroque buildings

COUNTRY	FAMOUS FOR
	COUNTRY

6 WRITING

Write a short paragraph between 150 and 200 words about a city that you would like to visit. Don't forget to give your reasons for choosing that city.

	4
	-
l ————	
11	
(1	

NATIONAL, MORAL, AND CULTURAL VALUES

LEAD IN

Answer the following questions.

- 1. What do you think national and cultural values are?
- 2. Do you know much about your own culture?
- 3. What can you do to learn about and understand other cultures?
- 4. Where do you think people get their national and cultural values?

LISTENING & SPEAKING



1 LISTENING (Track 5))

Listen to speakers giving directions. Look at the picture as you listen. Then, write the place that the speaker gives directions to.



2 SPEAKING 🖼

- a Work in pairs. Look at the map in Exercise 1. Choose a starting point. Make a dialogue with your partner to ask and answer about directions.
- b Who says the following famous verse? Talk about the other people in the options, as well.

"In tolerance be like a sea." and "Come! Come whoever you are."

a. Ertuğrul Gazi **b.** Mevlânâ

c. Yunus Emre **d.** Mehmet Akif Ersoy

c Write the correct number. "A cup of coffee means _____ years of friendship." Share your opinions about its meaning.

a. 18 **b.** 72,5 **c.** 40 **d.** 41

3 VOCABULARY

Match the words or phrases with the pictures, and talk about them.

- tolerance
- cooperation
- hospitality
- patriotism
- family



1

3.









4. _____ 5. ____



4 SPEAKING 🖼

Fill in the blanks with the words in the box. Then talk about why each concept is important.

hospitality

• language

• moral

• patriotism

history

- 1. A nation that does not know its ______cannot improve itself.
- 2. _____ values begin in the family and continue during the life.
- 3. ______ is a tool for education and communication. In Turkish history, the first examples of Turkish inscriptions are "Kutadgu Bilig" and "Dedekorkut".
- 4. _____ means devoted love, support, and defence of one's country.
- 5. Turkish people like to entertain their guests. So they give great importance to ______.



READING & WRITING



1 **GAME**

Miming game Watch me and guess what I'm doing!

2 READING

Talk and share your ideas with the class about a typical Turkish family.

FAMILY RELATIONS

Turkish people consider family as a cornerstone of society. Family relations are very important to Turkish people. They respect their elders and love their youngers. Parents support their children financially until they get married. Children take care of the elders when they get sick or need help. Sometimes three generations can live together. It is important for Turkish people to support family members in all aspects. In contrast to many countries, Turkish parents support their children financially whenever they need help. To sum up, family relations are very tight and mutual respect is also essential in Turkish families.



Read the text above and answer the following questions.

- 1. What is the importance of family in Turkish society?
- 2. How do the old and the young behave towards each other?
- 3. Do fathers and mothers help their children financially?
- **4**. Are the old people in the family helpless? Why/ Why not?
- 5. Who contributes to the family income?

b Write true (T) or false (F).

- 1. Family is very important for Turkish people. ____
- **2.** In the family, everybody takes care of each other. ____
- 3. Parents do not support their children financially after they graduate from university in Turkey. ____
- **4.** Parents cover teenagers' expenses. ____
- 5. Only young people respect elderly people in traditional Turkish families. ____



3 PRONUNCIATON))

a Listen and repeat the sound and the words. (Track 6)



The consonant sound /ŋ/

singer

king

th**ing**

wing

driv**ing**

working

br**inging**

pink

sink

think

b Listen and repeat the sentence. (Track 7)I think the king is bringing a pink wing.

What is Jane doing?

She is practising.

Student A

Student B

- c Listen to the sounds and write what the people are doing. (Track 8)
 - 1. _____
 - 2.
 - 3.
 - 4. _____
 - 5.

CHECK THIS OUT!

He is scanning the text.

Jane is studying now.

They are cleaning their room.

We aren't playing chess.

Are you doing your homework?

4 SPEAKING

What are they doing now? Work in pairs, talk about the pictures and write sentences under the pictures.





_____ 2





3. _____ 4. ____





5. _____ 6. ____

5 READING

HYDE PARK

She is Daisy Wilson from London. She is having a very good time in London. It's Saturday and it's clear and warm. Now it's 3 in the afternoon and she is in Hyde Park. She is sitting on a wooden bridge with her uncle David. They are talking about her gap year. Her German friend, Carla, is there with them. She is reading a magazine. She's a very beautiful girl. She's tall and slim and she has short blonde hair. Her parents live in Berlin. Daisy's father is listening to the news on his old radio. Her mother is playing with her little daughter, Betty, on the grass and they are eating some cake. There are many people wandering in the park. Some men and women are doing sports, a group of teenagers are walking their dogs, and a busker is playing his harmonica beautifully. Daisy loves this wonderful city because she thinks that it is relaxing her. When she has free time, she visits shops, museums, art galleries, and interesting places.

Answer the questions about the text above.

- 1. What is Daisy's surname?
- 2. Where is Daisy?
- 3. What is she doing?
- 4. What is her father doing?
- 5. Is her little daughter eating a sandwich?
- **6**. Who are walking their dogs in the park?

6 WRITING

What are they doing now? Write the sentences under the pictures.

- ◆ They/ ride/ bicycles
- The baby/ have a bath
- ◆ They sing/ a song/in choir
- They/ do /karate
- ◆ The girl/ sleep
- ◆ He/ swim
- ◆ It/ snow
- They/ play/ computer games

















A.	
D.	
C.	
D.	
E .	
F.	
_	
G.	

7 Fill in the blanks as in the example.

USUALLY



e.g. I usually watch documentaries on TV. I'*m watching* a football match now.



NOW

1. He does his homework. He gymnastics.



2. They play basketball. They table tennis.



3. It eats cat food. It _____fish.





4. She travels by train. She _____ by plane.





5. We go to Mexico on our holidays. We _____to Australia this year.







UNIT 7

WONDERS OF THE WORLD

7A Wonderfully Talented People7B Seven Wonders of the World7C Natural Wonders of the World

In this unit you will be...

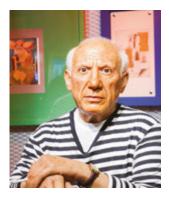
- talking about past events.
- making inquiries.
- asking and answering questions in an interview.
- talking about non-specific beings, objects, or places.
- showing someone how to do something alone or without any help.

WONDERFULLY TALENTED PEOPLE

LEAD IN



Look at the pictures and answer the following questions.





- 1. What are the names of the people above?
- 2. Why do you think these people are important? Choose one of them and talk about him.
- 3. Write the names of famous people with the same job around the world or from your own country.

LISTENING & SPEAKING



- 1 LISTENING (Track 1)))
- Listen to the dialogue between two friends talking about famous people. How many famous people are they talking about? Guess who they are.
- Write true (T), false (F) or doesn't say (DS) according to the recording. Correct the false ones.
 - 1. The famous boxer was born in the United States.
 - 2. His father was an artist. ____
 - 3. He discovered his boxing talent at his early ages. ____
 - 4. He won two golden medals in his life. ____
 - 5. He changed his name and religion. ____
 - 6. He liked helping people. ____
 - 7. He had Parkinson's disease.
 - 8. She was an American mathematician.
 - 9. She was the first woman who won a Nobel Prize. ____

- Listen again and order the information according to the recording.
 - **a.** He had a disease.
 - **b.** He started boxing.
 - c. He was successful in the Golden Gloves tournament.
 - **d.** He won the World Championship.
 - e. The famous boxer was born.
 - f. He won a gold medal.
 - **g.** He travelled to Italy.

1	2	3	4
5.	6.	7.	

His trainer described the famous boxer as: 'He floats like a butterfly, stings like a bee'. Why do you think his trainer said this about him?

CHECK THIS OUT!

Was and were are the past form of the verb be. Was is the past form of "am and is". Were is the past form of "are".

A: What do you know about Orhan Veli Kanık's life?

B: He was an author and a poet. His father was a musician. Ahmet Hamdi Tanpınar was his literature teacher in high school. Melih Cevdet Anday and Orhan Veli were friends. His first book was 'Garip'. He was 36 when he died.

A: Was he married?

B: No, he wasn't.

SPEAKING 🖼

Look at the CHECK THIS OUT! box. Then talk about the life of a famous person you know well.

Early years: Date and place of birth, family, former jobs, first success...

Later years: Present job (if she/ he is alive), career, wife/ husband and children, hobbies...

e.g. Tarkan was born in 1972. His first album was...

- b Look at the pictures below. Complete their names. Then write;
 - Their nationalities,
 - When they were born,
 - How old they were when they died.







(1940 - 1980)

(1867 - 1934)

(1889 - 1977)

- e.g. John Lennon
- ◆ He was British.
- He was born in 1940.
- He was 40 when he died.
- 1. Madam
- **+** _____
- **•** _____

- 2. Charlie
- _____
- **+** ______.
- **+** ______.
- c Do you know about John Lennon and his wife, Yoko Ono? Read the information about them given in the table and complete the dialogue with correct past form of "be".

JOHN LENNON	1		YOKO ONO
born in London	October 1940	February 1933	born in Japan
at his concert tours	November 1957		at her concert tours
March 1960 in church			
December 1980 in New York			

- d Work in pairs. Cover the dialogue. Ask and answer questions about John Lennon and Yoko Ono by looking at the information above. Act out the dialogue with your partner in the class.
- e.g. A: Was Lennon born in New York?
 - **B:** No, he wasn't. He was born in London.
 - A: Was he born in 1933?
 - **B:** Yes, he was.

- A: This is a picture of John Lennon and Yoko Ono. Do you know them?B: Yes, they 1 _____ a very famous couple.
- **B**: Yes, they ¹_____ a very famous couple. John ²____ 40 when he died in 1980.
- **A**: I know very little about Yoko. John ³_____ English as I know. ⁴____ his wife English, too?
- **B:** No, she isn't. Yoko is Japanese. She is still alive.
- **A:** Oh, OK. When she was young, ⁵_____she a musician, too?
- **B:** Yes, they ⁶_____ both musicians and songwriters.
- **A:** ⁷_____ they married when John died?
- **B:** Yes, they ⁸_____.
- A: 9_____ they in London when he died?
- **B:** No, they ¹⁰______ in front of a hotel in New York.

READING & WRITING



READING 1

- Look at the picture and answer the following questions.
 - 1. Who is the well-known person in the photo? What do you know about him?
 - 2. Where do you think the people are in the photo?
 - 3. What are they doing?



BEYOND THE WALLS

When Aziz Sancar started his education, he had nothing but his passion and belief. Today, everyone in the world is in agreement with the opinion that Aziz Sancar is a remarkable and successful scientist. He tried very hard to achieve this success. He is married to Gwen Boles Sancar. They live in America. He founded Aziz & Gwen Sancar Foundation with his wife. He loves and believes in his country and wants to help young scientists. Prof. Sancar and his wife support and host Turkish researchers and scholars in the United States.

Aziz Sancar was born in Mardin, Turkey in 1946. He was the seventh of eight children. His parents were illiterate, but the education of their children was very important to them. Aziz completed his primary and secondary education in Mardin. He played football during his school life. However, he decided to go to university, so he stopped playing it after a while.

He studied medicine at the Faculty of Medicine in Istanbul University. After his graduation with a first class degree, he returned to Mardin and worked as a doctor. One and a half year later, TUBITAK awarded him a scholarship and he completed his doctorate in molecular biology at the University of Texas. During his education, he had some difficulties in communicating and adapting to the social life in the United States. Because of that, he didn't stay there for a long time and returned to Mardin one more time. Sancar didn't give up his dreams though. He went back to the States, and worked at Yale University for five years. Then, the University of North Carolina accepted him as a lecturer.

After a series of great academic successes, including being a member of National Academy of Sciences as the first Turkish-American, he received the 2015 Nobel Prize in chemistry for his studies on DNA repair. Prof. Sancar thinks that he owes his success to

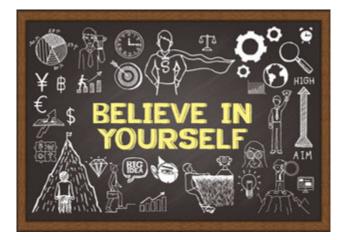
the founder of Turkish Republic, so he donated the prize to the mausoleum of Atatürk, Anıtkabir. Looking at his former living conditions, nobody expected such a great success from him. However, he showed that everything is possible when you believe and work hard.

b Read the text and share your ideas about the answer to the following question:

Why do you think Aziz Sancar donated his Nobel Prize to the mausoleum of Atatürk?

2 VOCABULARY

- a In the text, find and underline the words in the box below. Try to guess their meaning from the text.
 - passion ◆ remarkable ◆ illiterate
 - ◆ achieved ◆ scholar(s) ◆ awarded ◆ founded
- b Choose the correct meaning of the word.
 - 1. passion
 - a. strong emotion
 - **b.** supporting someone
 - 2. remarkable
 - **a.** very healthy
 - **b.** worthy of attention
 - 3. illiterate
 - **a.** a part of a building
 - **b.** unable to read and write
 - 4. achieve
 - **a.** to reach by effort
 - **b.** to try hard
 - 5. scholar
 - **a.** a student who deserves money because of his/ her success
 - **b.** a person who helps people to go to university
 - 6. award
 - a. to show or give a good reason
 - **b.** to give money or a prize to someone officially
 - 7. found
 - **a.** to establish an organization
 - **b.** to construct a building



CHECK THIS OUT!

We use simple past tense to talk about the past. We add -ed to most verbs only in positive sentences.

- A: Did it rain last night?
- B: No, it didn't.
- A: Did you go out?
- B: Yes, we did. We visited our grandparents.
- A: Did you visit your parents, too?
- B: No, I didn't visit them.

There are some exceptions while adding -ed.

He died in 1993.

It stopped 5 minutes ago.

We studied a lot.

- 3 Look at the CHECK THIS OUT! box. Ask and answer the questions about the text. Use the prompts to make questions.
- **e.g. A:** Was Aziz Sancar born in the United States?
 - **B:** No, he wasn't. He was born in Mardin, Turkey.
 - **A:** Did he complete his early education in Turkey?
 - **B:** Yes, he did.
 - 1. A: he/ found a school with his wife?

R.			
ĸ.			

2. A: they/ want to help young scientists?

B:			
D:			

- **3. A:** he/ stop his football career because of his health?
 - B:____
- **4. A:** he/ successful at the faculty of medicine?
 - B: _____
- **5. A:** he/ face any communication problems in the United States?
 - B:_____
- **6. A:** What/ his achievements?
 - B: _____

CHECK THIS OUT!

What is a topic?

The topic is the theme of your writing.

e.g. winter

What is a topic sentence?

The topic sentence tells the main idea of a text or what the writing is mostly about. It is usually the first or second sentence of a paragraph. Each paragraph in a text can include a topic sentence.

e.g. Winter is the hardest season of the year. Winter brings many changes to the world. It gets cold, some animals migrate, and some others hibernate. Some animals and trees change their appearance. People try to adapt to the changes, too.

Why do we need a topic sentence?

It gives an idea to the reader about the rest of the writing. It prevents confusion.

4 Read the CHECK THIS OUT! box above. Then, look at the first paragraph of the text about Aziz Sancar. Write the topic and the topic sentence of the paragraph.

The topic:	
The topic sentence:	

- 5 Read the paragraphs below and write the topics and topic sentences.
 - 1 There are some keys to success that you should never forget. First of all, get ready for the opportunities. If you are ready, the next step is working. Dreaming is not enough; you should make an effort to achieve your dreams. Self-confidence is another essential key on the way of success. If you know what to do, it is easy to make people believe in you.

The topic:	
The topic sentence:	
Which is more important; talent or hard	
Which is more important; talent or hard	

Which is more important; talent or hard work? There are a lot of talented people in the world, but few are successful. It is obvious that talent is not enough for success. Moreover, talent sometimes makes people feel that they are better than the others and they give up working hard.

The topic:	
The topic sentence:	

6 PRONUNCIATION (Track 2)))

- a Look at the verbs in the box. Listen and put them in the right columns.
 - started ◆ lived ◆ travelled ◆ completed
 - watched ◆ stopped ◆ played ◆ awarded
 - ◆ worked ◆tried ◆ studied ◆ hoped ◆ needed

/d/	/t/	/1d/

b Listen again and check your answers. Then add one more verb for each column.

REMEMBER THIS!

- A: What's important to you?
- B: Everything about you is important to me.
- A: I couldn't find anywhere to change our costumes.
- **B**: Look! There's **somewhere** across the street.
- A: Is something wrong?
- B: Someone called me, but I don't know who.
- A: Listen! I've heard something weird.
- B: Is there anybody out there?
- A: I'm hungry, mum.
- B: Sorry honey, I didn't bring anything to eat.

7 SPEAKING

- a Read the REMEMBER THIS! box. Then, complete the dialogue with the indefinite pronouns below.
 - ◆ something ◆ somewhere ◆ everywhere
 - everything everybody somebody (x2)
 - ◆ anywhere (x2) ◆ nothing

Carol: It's our first night in Istanbul. Look, what a beautiful sky it is.

Maggie: Yes, Carol but it's not the right time for wandering around. I'm very tired.

Let's find 1_____ to stay.

Carol: Won't we stay at Ceyda's house?

Maggie: Yes, but tomorrow. It's very late to

call her tonight.

Carol: Do you know ²_____ cheap here? You know we don't have much money.

Maggie: I'm not sure. Let's ask ³_____.

Carol: Look! There's 4_____ in front of the shop. Excuse me! Is there 5_____

cheap to stay?

A man: Of course. Actually, except 5 star hotels, ⁶______ in Beyoğlu is cheap. I can suggest one of them on this street. It's next to the bank over there.

Carol: Thank you. Good night.

A man: Good night!

Maggie: Are you hungry?

Carol: You said it, sis! I'm starving.

Maggie: There must be ⁷______ to eat in my bag. Oh, God. I forgot that you ate ⁸_____ in my bag before the flight.

There's 9_____left.

Carol: We can ask someone else to find a café around. ¹⁰_____ wants to help tourists here.

b Work in groups and act out the dialogue.

8 Fill in the blanks with the indefinite pronouns below.

- ◆ something (x2) ◆ everything ◆ somebody
- nobody ◆ everybody ◆ someone ◆ nothing



Last night I heard some noise and looked out of the window. There was ¹_____ on the corner of the street. We looked at each other. She didn't move and said ²_____. I was afraid, then closed the window. A few minutes later, ³___ knocked the door. I opened the door, but ⁴____ was there. Then I noticed that there was ⁵___ in front of the door on the floor. What was that? There was a basket with an envelope. 6____ was strange. At that time 7____ moved in the basket. Oh, my God! It was the cutest thing ever. 8____ in the family loved and welcomed him. We called him "Boncuk".

9 WRITING

Who is your favourite celebrity who faced with obstacles and overcome them? Write a short biography about him or her. Write,

- Date and place of birth
- Early education
- Personal life/ family
- Later education
- Difficulties he/ she faced
- Important events/ achievements
- Date and place of death (if he/ she is not alive)
- Present life (if he/ she is alive)

LEAD IN

Answer the following questions.

- 1. Would you like to go abroad? Why? Why not?
- 2. Do you like visiting historic places? Why? Why not?
- **3.** What is the meaning of "wonder"?
- **4.** Are there any wonders of the world in your country?
- 5. Which wonder would you like to visit? Why?

LISTENING & SPEAKING



VOCABULARY

- Look at the Wonders of the World and match the pictures below with their names given in the box.
 - **a.** Mausoleum at Halicarnassus
- **b.** Great Pyramid of Giza
- c. Temple of Artemis

- d. Great Wall of China
- e. Petra

f. Machu Picchu

g. Coliseum















- Which wonders above are on the 'Modern Wonders of the World' list?

2 LISTENING (Track 3)))

a Listen to the interview and tick (\checkmark) the places Peter visited.

Mexico	Brazil	Egypt	Italy
China	Peru	Jordan	India _

b Read the descriptions below and write the names of the New Wonders of the World.

1.	It's a	tall	white	statue.	

- 2. It's an oval amphitheatre.
- **3.** It's a member of the ancient and also the New Seven Wonders of the World.
- 4. They're ancient cities. _____
- 5. It's a high stone wall.
- **6.** An Indian emperor built it for his wife.

c Listen to the interview again and answer the questions below.

- **1.** What does a travel blogger do?
- **2.** Where is Peter's favourite wonder and why is it his favourite?
- **3.** Why did Chinese people build the Great Wall?
- **4.** Which wonders is he planning to visit?
- **5.** What did Peter advise for the travellers?

3 SPEAKING 🖼

- a Answer the following questions.
 - **1.** How do wonders affect tourism in your country?
 - **2.** What wonders would you like to visit in the world? Why?
 - **3.** What are the names of some ancient structures in your country?

b Read the dialogue and complete the paragraph with the verbs in the box in the past simple form.

Sue: The summer holiday is coming. Buse and I want to have a travel, what about you? Join us, OK?

Terry: Oh, good idea. I'm in a bad mood, a holiday will be good for me. Do you have a good travel plan?

Sue: Yes, what about India? Then China and Nepal.

Terry: It doesn't sound like the holiday in my dreams. What do you expect to see there?

Sue: There are wonderful places like Taj Mahal and the Great Wall. These are the Wonders of the World you know.

Terry: So, you like cultural holidays.

Sue: Yes, but that's not all. We also like adventure. Climbing to the Mount Everest is one of my dreams.

Terry: That sounds nice, but there is something else in my mind. We can have a beach and cultural holiday at the same time. Listen...

• like • be(x2) • plan • invite • want • need

Sue and Buse ¹ <u>planned</u> a holiday. Sue ²
Terry to join them. Terry felt good because he
³ a holiday. Sue and Buse ⁴ to
go to the Far East. Terry didn't ⁵ the
plan. Sue ⁶ excited about the idea of
visiting the wonders, but Terry wasn't. Actually,
something else ⁷ in Terry's mind

c Work in pairs. Write a dialogue by using the clues below and act it out.

Student A

- Offer a new holiday route.
- ◆ Talk about the cities/ countries of the wonders you plan to go.
- ◆ Talk about the activities you plan to do (e.g. go swimming, visit historic places).

Student B

- Ask about the places to see.
- Ask about the activities to do.
- Accept/ don't accept the offer and tell your reasons.

READING & WRITING



READING 1

- Read the text and match the headings with the paragraphs.
 - 1. The competence was challenging
 - 2. The pyramid which is still standing
 - 3. What makes a wonder of the world wonderful?
 - **4.** The need for a new list
 - 5. The New Seven Wonders of the World

THE AMAZING MONUMENTS

What are the wonderful places in the world? People were fascinated by dimensions, colours, beauty or stories of some structures throughout history and recorded them in different ways. These qualities of the structures make them different from the other structures of the world.

People of ancient Greece made a list of amazing places in the world in the fifth century and called them the Seven Wonders of the Ancient World. However, the list was limited because they were in the lands only along the coasts of the east Mediterranean Sea. So, a Swiss company decided to form a new list of wonders in 2007.

People voted for the 21 finalist monuments. The candidates were extraordinary and amazing man-made structures; temples, monuments, towers, pyramids, statues, ancient cities, and museums. Hagia Sophia was one of them.

D _____

The Great Pyramid of Giza is the oldest and largest of the three pyramids in Giza in Egypt. It was also on the ancient list. It is the only standing Wonder of the Ancient World. Ancient Egyptians built the Great pyramid in around 2560 BC. They buried their pharaohs and put pharaohs' belongings such as gold, food, and clothes inside

the pyramids. The Great Pyramid wasn't among the winners of the new seven wonders. However, it has the honorary status.

Chichen Itza was one of the largest Maya cities located in Yucatan, Mexico. Maya people built it between the 800s and 900s AD. They used it as a religious centre. They held celebrations there.

Great Wall of China is the only monument visible from space. The Chinese Emperor Qin Shi Huangdi started the construction of the wall in around 220 BC. It defended the empire for many years. Chinese people continued the wall until around the 1600s. The length of the wall is 21196 km. Today, it is a popular tourist attraction.

Petra is the stone-carved ancient city in Jordan. Nabataeans built it in around 2000 BC. Another name for Petra is the Rose City because of the colour of its stones. It's one of the famous tourist attractions of Jordan. Petra includes a mausoleum, a temple, a shrine, a palace, general dwelling, and a royal treasury.

Colosseum is the largest amphitheatre in the world. It was the site of gladiator fights and dramas in ancient Rome. Romans built it between 70 to 80 AD. Today, you can see half of the original theatre.

Machu Picchu is situated in Andes Mountains in Peru. The Inca Empire constructed this ancient

city in 1430 AD, but people abandoned the city after the Spain attack in the 16th century. An American explorer discovered the city in 1911. You can go to Peru and see the ruins on foot or by bus.

Christ the Redeemer is a statue of Jesus Christ. Rio de Janerio, Brazil hosts this beautiful statue. A local engineer built it in 1931. It is a symbol of Christianity, so many people visit the monument every year.

The Taj Mahal is a white marble mausoleum in India. Emperor Shah Jahan built it for his beloved wife, Mumtaz Mahal in 1653 AD. She died at the age of 39.



	are many kinds of l underwater world.	ists such as n	atural wonders	, wonder cities, a	nd wonders of the	THE REAL PROPERTY.	
b	Match the words w	vith the defir	nitions.				
	1. temple	a. life at	fter death		_	5	
	2. monument	_ b. an ar	ncient Egyptian	king			
	3. pharaoh	c. an impressive building housing a tomb					
	4. afterlife		y place because person	e of a connection	with a		
	5. shrine	e. a buil	lding used for t	the worship	<i>GEHARI</i> S	/	
	6. mausoleum	f. a buil	ding or a struc	ture as a memori	al al		
	7. ruin	g. a des	troyed or decay	ved building, tow	n, etc.	7	
c	What do the follow	wing number	s in the text re	efer to?		_	
	1. 2007 (paragraph	2)		3. 1911 (pa	aragraph 9)		
	2. 220 (paragraph 6			_	graph 11)		
d	Complete the table	e according t	o the text.	Purpose/	Description	Date Started/	
	The Wonder	Location	Builder	Significance	Description	Completed	
	Giza						
	Chichen Itza						
	Great Wall of China						
	Petra						
	Colosseum						
	Machu Picchu						
	Christ the Redeemer						
	The Taj Mahal						
e e.g.	Work in pairs. Ask A: Who constructe		_	ut the new wond	lers in the table.		
	B: The Emperor Sh	ah Jahan con	structed it.				
f A	nswer the following		C				
	1. Who decided the						
	2. Why did people						
	3. What kind of str						
	4. Why did the Inc		•				
	5. How can you tra	vel to Machu	Picchu?				

2 SPEAKING

- a Close your books. What can you remember from the text about the Seven Wonders of The World?
- b Discuss the following questions in the class.
 - 1. What criteria make a wonder the wonder of the world?
 - 2. Which one is better: Seven Wonders of the Ancient World, or New Wonders of the World? Why?
 - 3. What are the wonders of Turkey?
- c Search the Internet and gather information about one of the seven wonders. Prepare a presentation and present it to the class.

3 WRITING

a Complete the paragraph about Paul's the Great Wall visit. Use the past form of the verbs in brackets.

I $^{\mbox{\tiny 1}}$ (visit) the Great Wall last year when
I went to Beijing for a medical conference.
I 2 (not/ like) its climate. When we
got there, it 3 (be) winter season and
it 4 (rain) for days. We took a subway
train to the nearest station. The wall 5
(be) very crowded and the stairs 6 (be)
very steep. I read a lot of things about the
Great Wall, but I 7 (not/ expect) such an
amazing structure. I 8___ (enjoy) my climb
and the beautiful view. However, I felt a little bit
uncomfortable when I thought dead workers
under the wall. The wall 9 (seem) endless
to me, but I made it to the top. It 10 (be)
a great experience overall.



b	Work in pairs. Ask and answer the questions				
	about Paul's the Great Wall visit. Use Yes/				
	No questions and Wh- question words; who,				
	when, what, why, how, where.				

Reiiina	China	
Deijing,	Cillia.	
	Beijing,	Beijing, China.

- Read the CHECK THIS OUT! box below.

 Then complete the sentences with one of the time expressions in the box according to the given information.
 - two hours ago ◆ two days ago ◆ yesterday
 - ◆ a month ago ◆ when she was young

1. I bought a new house on Saturday. Today is
Monday.
I bought my house
2. They are on holiday. This is the second
day of their holiday

	day of their nonday.
	They started their holiday
2	It is 2 mm mover I had more less about 1 mm

3. 1	t 18 3	p.m.	now.	I had	my	lunch	at 1	p.m.
Ι	had	my lu	nch _			_•		

4. She is 50 years old. She lived in A	inkara 30
years ago.	
She lived in Ankara	

5.	It is	Febr	uary.	I visited	l my	uncle	e in j	Januai	y
	I sav	v my	uncle						

CHECK THIS OUT!

- A: Where were you yesterday?
- **B:** We were at the cinema. We watched "the Magic".
- A: We saw it last week. It was horrible, wasn't it?
- A: Dad, did you do any sports when you were young?
- B: Yes, I played football for a long time.
- A: I called you two days ago but you didn't reply.
- B: I'm sorry. I didn't see your call.
- A: What happened in Gölcük in 1999?
- B: A large earthquake occurred.

4 PRONUNCIATION (Track 4)))

Listen and repeat the sounds and sentences.

did you:
['dɪdʒə], didja

did you: ['dɪdjʊ]

Did you do your homework last night?
Did you need any help yesterday?
Did you play the piano or guitar?
Did you answer the questions?
Did you cook the dinner by yourself?

5 SPEAKING

Work in pairs. Make questions by using the prompts. Complete the table for your pair and yourself.

ARE YOU A SOCIAL OR AN INTROVERT PERSON?					
Last Month,	You	Your partner			
1. meet a new friend?					
2. speak with a person you don't know?					
3. How many times/ spend time with friends after school?					
4. How many times/ not answer the incoming phone calls?					
5. suggest going anywhere to someone?					
6. visit a relative?					
7. help someone you don't know?					

6 WRITING

a	Read the paragraph. Find the capitalization and punctuation mistakes in the paragraph and
	correct them.

B

My birthday present

Last sunday was my birthday i was very tired and got home very late so as soon as I got home, I went to my bedroom to go to bed. There was a box on my bed. "Love from tokyo" was written on the box. I opened it immediately. There were two photos of my best friend cameron and me, a hand-made bracelet a yellow hat and a book. The box was full of presents but I enjoyed the book most. Because it was a book of my favourite author, Charles dickens.

0. Birthday	1	2	3	4	5
	6	7	8	9	

- b Make one of the Seven Wonders of the Ancient or Modern World brochure for a travel company.
 - Search the Seven Wonders of the Ancient and Modern World. Choose one of them.
 - Write a few facts about the wonder.
 - Write a few facts about the local people and living culture around the wonder.
 - Write about transportation facilities to go to the wonder.
 - Find a catchy slogan.
 - Write your opinions about the wonder.

NATURAL WONDERS OF THE WORLD

LEAD IN

Answer the following questions.

- 1. What are the geographic features you know?
- 2. What are some examples of geographic features in your country?
- 3. What are the famous natural wonders in your country?

LISTENING & SPEAKING



VOCABULARY

- Look at the geographical features and formations below. Match the words in the box with the pictures.
 - ◆ rock cliff ◆ waterfall ◆ mountain range ◆ aurora (natural light) ◆ volcano ◆ reef













- 2. ______ 4. 5.
- Match the definitions with the pictures in Exercise a.
 - **a.** a long row of mountains _____
 - **b.** water dropping from high to lower _____
 - **c.** a high steep face of a rock _____
 - **d.** natural coloured-light in the sky _____
 - e. a mountain that forces hot gas, rocks, ash and lava into the air through a hole at the top _____
 - **f.** a long line of rock or coral in the sea _____

- Write examples from your country for each feature if there is any.
 - rock cliff _____
 - waterfall ___
 - aurora (natural light) _____
 - mountain range _____
 - ◆ volcano _____
 - reef _____

2 SPEAKING

Answer the questions below by sharing your opinions with your peers in class.

- 1. What geographic feature (lake, mountain...) attracts you most? Why?
- 2. What are two natural wonders you would like to see in your country?
- 3. What are two natural wonders you would like to see in the world?
- 4. For a country, what are the benefits of having a wonder which is on the formal wonder list?
- 5. How can a government protect the natural wonders?

3 LISTENING (Track 5)))

c

- a Natural wonders of the world need votes to be in the world list. Listen to the radio programme and match the names of the natural wonders with the pictures.
 - ◆ Harbour of Rio de Janeiro ◆ Aurora Borealis (Northern Lights) ◆ Victoria Falls
 - ◆ Paricutin Volcano ◆ the Grand Canyon ◆ the Great Barrier Reef ◆ the Mount Everest



b Listen again and fill in the table with the information about the natural wonders.

The Wonder	Country	Length/ Width	Best ways to experience	Best times to explore
1. The Great Barrier Reef				
2. Victoria Falls				
3. The Grand Canyon				

Read the summary of the radio programme. Circle the correct	1.	a. two	b. three	c. four	d. one
option to complete the sentences.	2.	a. beauty	b. countries	c. competence	d. people
Lena Lane was the reporter of the	3.	a. local	b. American	c. foreign	d. famous
radio programme. There were also	4.	a. HD	b. big	c. underwater	d. digital
more reporters in the	5.	a. ships	b. coral	c. plants	d. fishers
programme. They talked about	6.	a. always	b. usually	c. never	d. rarely
the ² for the seven natural	7.	a. celebrities	b. natives	c. wild animals	d. children
wonders of the world list. The	8.	a. spring	b. summer	c. winter	d. autumn
reporters had interviews with three	9.	a. weather	b. colour	c. view	d. mountains
³ people. The first person	10	. a. volcano	b. desert	c. lake	d. ocean
suggested bringing 4					
camera to see the fish and 5	He	said there wa	ıs ⁶	bad weather, so	any time of the
year was good time to visit. The seco					•
the tour and said ⁸ was not	the	right season t	o visit there.	The third person	n thought their
wonder was unique because of its 9		The next	day they talk	ked about four m	nore wonders: a
mountain, Northern Lights, a harbou	r and	d a(n) 10	·		

READING & WRITING



READING

- Answer the following questions.
 - 1. What are the topics of the blogs you follow?
 - 2. Do the blogs help you with your choices or decisions?
- Read "Susan Eagle's travel blog" and place the missing sentences into the text.
 - a. Some historians say that she came here for the special, unique, and refreshing water.
 - **b.** I saw many extraordinary cave churches.
 - c. Moreover, I got a chance to visit natural wonders in other regions of Turkey.
 - **d.** There are a lot of nature attractions around which are not very far.
 - e. After some hiking we turned back our starting point.

CHECK THIS OUT!

A:What did he do all day at the hospital?

B: He had an operation.

A: Did you visit him there?

B: No, I didn't. He **left** the hospital in the morning.

Susan Eagle's Blog

I spent my last year in Turkey because I was an exchange student there. I lived in İzmir with my host family. İzmir is located in the Aegean region. ¹____. The Butterfly Valley, Ölüdeniz (the Dead Sea), Kazdağı (Mount Ida) National Park, Cunda Island, Pamukkale (The Cotton Castle), and Olympos are only some of them. ²____. For instance, I went to Cappadocia and Ihlara Valley by myself. Discovering places alone was a great pleasure for me. I want to share my experiences with you. First of all, I can say that I fell in love with Turkey. Both İstanbul and the cities in Anatolia affected me deeply.

Here is a natural site that the Byzantines built, Hierapolis, also known as Pamukkale (The Cotton Castle). I think, the "Cotton Castle" is one of the most attractive wonders in Turkey. It contains hot springs, travertine, terraces, and minerals. We had a bath in the pools that include rich minerals to relax. I felt like Cleopatra. 3_____. I didn't see another site like this anywhere else.





You see the beautiful Butterfly Valley in this photo. We took a boat to get there. We started to walk to a waterfall. Amazing butterflies in different colours accompanied us along the way. When we arrived there, we drank clean fresh water coming from the waterfall. Then we started our climb. 4____. The next day, we went canyoning that made me so thrilled. We finally went to the top of the Mount Babadag for paragliding. Watching the Deadsea was one of the most exciting experiences of my life. Then, we left there with unforgettable memories.

On the way to Cappadocia, there was another amazing stop. The Melendiz River formed this valley thousands of years ago. Ihlara Valley is pretty deep. I suffered from leg ache for a week after climbing the stairs you saw in the photo. It was very enjoyable to walk through the valley. The river was so cold that I could stay in it for only 5 minutes. 5 _____. However, it was worrying to see most of the drawings on the walls began to vanish.

I enjoyed myself during the year in Turkey. I'm looking forward to visiting there again.



C	Read the blog again. Work in pairs. Ask and answer
	the questions in the present simple or past simple
	according to the text. Use the prompts below.

1. A: Where/ Susan/ spend her last year and why?
B:
2. A: What features/ Pamukkale/ have?
B:
3. A: How/ she/ get to the Butterfly Valley?
B:
4. A: What activities/ she/ do at the Butterfly Valley?
B:
5. A: What/ she/ experience at the Ihlara Valley?
B:

d Complete the paragraph with the past form of the verbs in brackets.

Two years ago I 1 (go) to Phuket, Thailand with
my parents and sister-in-law. We travelled by plane. The
flight 2 (take) about 13 hours. It 3 (be) a long
and enjoyable travel. My brother 4 (meet) us there.
The weather was hot and wet during our holiday. In the
morning we 5 (swim) in the ocean. In the afternoon
we visited popular tourist attractions and holy places
such as Phi Phi Islands, James Bond Islands, and Wat
Chalong Temple. We ⁶ (get) bamboo trekking in the
rainforests and ⁷ (feed) the monkeys. We ⁸
(not/go) to the famous circus which was recommended
by my brother's friend because we respect animal rights.
There are many varieties of seafood which are very cheap.
Although I don't like seafood, I 9 (try) some fish
in different colours and an octopus tentacle. I must admit
that surprisingly I $^{\rm 10}$ (like) all the seafood I ate.

It was an amazing holiday. I strongly recommend you to go to Phuket and spend at least two weeks.

e Read the paragraph above again. Say the sentences that are mentioned about:

- When/ where she went,
- Who she was with,
- How she got there,
- What she did there,
- What her feelings and thoughts about the place are.

CHECK THIS OUT!

- Have you hurt yourself?
- She saw herself in the mirror.
- The little girls got dressed by themselves. Nobody helped them.
- He watched the film by himself.
 Nobody else was at home.
- 2 Read the CHECK THIS OUT! box and do the exercises.
- a Circle the reflexive pronouns.

h	im yo	urself	ourselve	s
you	irselves	we	himse	lf
h	is	hersel	lf)	they
our	myself	my	it	itself
041	her	you	themsel	ves
	she	us	your	

- b Complete the dialogues. Use reflexive pronouns.
 - **1. Amy:** Mummy, look! I solved this problem by _____.

Mum: Well done, honey. It's time to go to bed now. Can you prepare _____ for the bedtime?

Amy: Of course, mummy. Good night!

2. Aylin: George, I'm preparing ____ a cup of tea. Would you like to have one?

George: Thanks, not now. I'm trying to hang this picture on the wall.

Berk: Do you need help, daddy?

Aylin: Oh, Berk. Eat your lunch, please. Your dad can do it by _____.

Berk: Daddy, don't hurt _____ again, please!

3. Ceyda: Have you heard that Mike and Sylvia painted their house by _____?

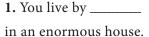
Thomas: Yes, so what?

Ceyda: Do you think we can do it by _____?

Thomas: No way!

- 3 Look at the pictures and do the exercises.
- a Complete the sentences by looking at the pictures and adding the appropriate reflexive pronoun.







4. The boy is trying to get on the swing by



2. She is walking to her mum by _____.



5. The teenagers are taking a picture of



3. We cooked for



6. I hurt _____ while repairing the chair.

- b Work in pairs. Ask and answer about the actions you performed last week.
- **e.g.** clean your house? (✓)

A: Did you clean your house by yourself?

B: No, I didn't do that by myself. My mum helped me.

1. do your homework $?(\checkmark)$

	A:
	B:
2.	make your bed?(✓)
	A:
	B:
3.	cook dinner? (✓) (my sister)
	A:
	n.

4 Choose the correct option for each item in the quiz.

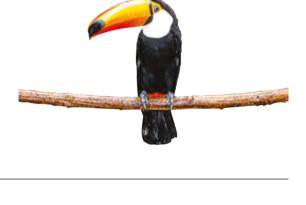
WONDERS OF THE WORLD QUIZ			
 Which of the following is one of the ancient seven wonders? The Hanging Gardens of Babylon The Colosseum Petra The Great Wall of China 	5. The Taj Mahal was built as a a. tomb b. lighthouse c. chateau d. mausoleum		
 2. Petra is located in a. Italy b. France c. Jordan d. Egypt 	6. Where are Victoria Falls located? a. America b. England c. Egypt d. Zimbabwe		
3. What is the colour of Petra?a. Greenb. Greyc. Redd. Yellow	7. Where is the Grand Canyon located? a. America b. England c. Egypt d. Zimbabwe		
 4. Which wonder did an American explorer rediscover? a. Christ the Redeemer b. The Taj Mahal c. Machu Picchu d. Colosseum 	 8. Which wonder didn't the people vote for? a. The Great Pyramid of Giza b. The Colosseum c. Chichen Itza d. The Lighthouse of Alexandria 		

5 WRITING

Which natural wonder in the world/in your country excites you most? Imagine taking a trip to this place with your friends. Write a blog entry paying attention the capitalization, spelling and punctuation rules. (Write between 130 and 150 words)

Write about,

- When/ Where you went,
- Who you were with,
- How you got there,
- The adventure you experienced together,
- How and what you explored,
- Your feelings and thoughts about the wonder.







UNIT 8

EMERGENCY AND HEALTH PROBLEMS

8A What's Wrong? 8B An Apple a Day Keeps the Doctor Away 8C Emergency

In this unit you will be...

- giving and asking for advice.
- expressing opinions.
- receiving and giving instructions.
- talking about problems about illnesses.
- making an appointment.

LEAD IN



Answer the following questions.

- 1. Do you often get ill?
- 2. What do you do when you feel ill?

LISTENING & SPEAKING



1 VOCABULARY

Look at the pictures and match them with the health problems. Then listen and check. (Track 1)

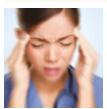
What's wrong?

a. an earache **b.** a backache **c.** a broken leg **d.** a fever e. acne

f. a toothache

g. a cough **h.** a heart attack i. a stomach ache i. (the) flu k. an eye disorder

I. a headache







- - 3.



















- 10. _____
- 11._
- _____ 12. _



LISTENING (Track 2)))

- Listen to the dialogues and tick the illnesses you hear in the list on the vocabulary part.
- Listen to the dialogues again and take notes.

Zoe's appointment time:
Zoe's mother's advice:
The doctor's advice:

- Dr Pole ______ a prescription.
- Use your notes to write sentences.
- e.g. Zoe had better see the doctor.

1.	Sne _			
2.				
∠. .				
3.				

3 SPEAKING

Work in pairs. Choose a health problem from the box in Exercise 1. Then make a short dialogue.

e.g.

Student A

What's the matter with you?

Student B

I'm unwell. I have a terrible cough.

Student A

You should/ ought to...

Student B



Now change the roles.

- 4 Read the tips below about being healthy. Write other tips you know.
 - Stay away from germs.
 - Sleep enough.
 - Eat healthy snacks.
 - Do physical activity regularly.
 - Manage your emotions and stress.
 - Don't eat junk food.

.		
• _		
• _		
• _		
• _		
• _		

- **5** Look at the tips in Exercise 4. Then give some advice by using the tips as in the example.
- e. g. You should/ ought to stay away from germs. You shouldn't/ ought not to eat junk food.

1.	
2.	
3.	
4.	
5.	
6.	
7.	
X	

- **6** Complete the sentences with the correct words.
 - ◆ sprain ◆ burnt ◆ hurt ◆ cut
 - 1. Yunus _____ his leg while he was playing football, so he couldn't play football for 2 months.
 - 2. My father _____ his arm because of the overheated steam.
 - 3. In the kitchen, most people _____ their fingers.
 - 4. When she had an accident, her three ribs and one of her arms were _____. The doctor put them in the bandages.



READING-WRITING



What does the following expression mean?

"Stop the world, I want to get off!"

READING 1

- Read the text and choose the best title for it.
 - 1. Can you get rid of stress or not?
 - 2. Effects of stress on the body

Many people suffer from stress. Many factors can cause this. Working hard and working conditions are only two reasons of stress.

An English expression says "Stop the world, I want to get off!" This expression refers to stress or a feeling of panic that makes people want to stop whatever he or she is doing.

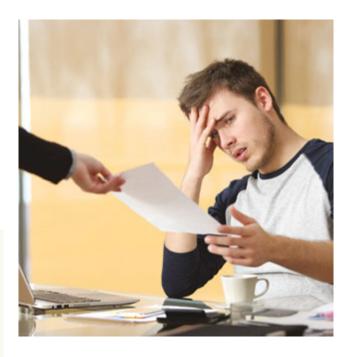
What is stress? Stress is a condition of feeling worried and nervous. It causes pressure and tension. The effects of too much stress can cause physical, emotional, and mental health problems such as high blood pressure, stomach aches, and problems with digesting food. Besides, it can cause respiratory disorders like asthma.

People suffer from anxiety disorder as the result of too much stress. They may feel tired all the time. People being under pressure can't stand little problems. For example, a gentle parent can overreact to her/ his children for making noise if he or she works at a stressful atmosphere. Stress can make people moody or nervous.

Chronic stress can cause a variety of serious mental illnesses such as depression. Over eating is the result of long-term stress as well.

There is no doubt that stress is a serious problem. It affects not only the body, emotions, and people's minds, but also our immune system. Some ways of reducing stress are listening to music, avoiding negative thinking and taking up a new hobby.

The best thing you can do is to stop the world and rest for a while.



- Read the text again and answer the following questions.
 - 1. What does stress mean?
 - 2. What kind of health problems can stress cause?
 - 3. If a person has an anxiety disorder, how does he or she feel?
 - **4.** When does depression happen?
 - **5.** How do you reduce stress according to the writer?
- Match the highlighted words in the text with their definitions.

1. _____ someone's memory or their

	ability to think
2.	to experience physical or
	mental pain
3.	changing food in your
	stomach into substances that your body can
	use

- **4.** _____ getting angry or unhappy easily
- 5. _____ the result of a particular influence

Write your methods to cope with stress. Then share them with the class.



Some clues to cope with stress

- Reduce caffeine and intake of refined sugar.
- Go for a walk in fresh air.
- Get more sleep.
- Talk to someone about how you feel.
- Manage your time.
- Learn to say "No".



CHECK THIS OUT!

When we give some advice, we say;

If you're ill, you should see a doctor.

A: Your arm can be broken, you shouldn't move and should see an orthopedist.

B: Maybe you're right.

A: I eat dinner very late.

B: You ought to eat dinner early in the evening.

A: Should I take the medicine for five days?

B: Definitely.

A: You're coughing. You had better drink linden tea with honey.

B: I'll try it.

- 3 Look at the picture and answer the questions.
- a What do you see in the picture?



- b What should you do if you have got nausea and feel exhausted?
- c Read the dialogue and underline the sentences about the health problems and advice.

Grandma: You look pale. What's wrong?

Granddaughter: I've got nausea and I'm

feeling exhausted.

Grandma: You had better have a rest.

Granddaughter: You're right, grandma.

Grandma: You should drink mint tea with

lemon. I can make it for you, sweetie.

Granddaughter: Yes, please. Is it your home

remedy, grandma?

Grandma: Not really. Everybody knows it.

Granddaughter: Thanks.

Grandma: It's OK, sweetie.

- 4 Look at the sentences and give advice for each situation.
- e.g. A: I had an asthma attack. I couldn't breathe well.

B: You ought to/ had better take your asthma drugs regularly.

You shouldn't/ ought not to go out when there is air pollution.

A: I burnt my hand.

B: __

A: I have a rash on my back and chest.

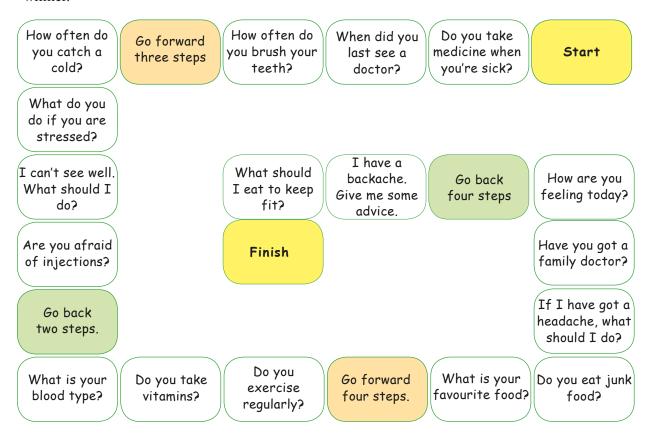
B.

A: My brother has a bad sunburn. He is in pain.

B:

5 GAME

Play the game in groups of four or five. Write numbers from 1 to 6 on pieces of paper and fold them. Put the folded paper in a box. Draw a paper from the box and look at your number. If it is number 2, go to the second square or if it's number 4, go to the fourth square (put the paper you drew in the box again). Then read the question and answer it. The first person to reach the finish line is the winner.



6 WRITING

Read the proverbs about health and write a short paragraph (between 70 and 80 words) about what the proverbs mean.

 "Good health is above 	e wealth."				
• "After dinner sit awhi	le, after suppe	r walk a mile	e."		

AN APPLE A DAY KEEPS THE DOCTOR AWAY

LEAD IN



Answer the following questions.

- 1. Do you do exercise to keep fit?
- 2. What do you do to be healthy?

LISTENING & SPEAKING

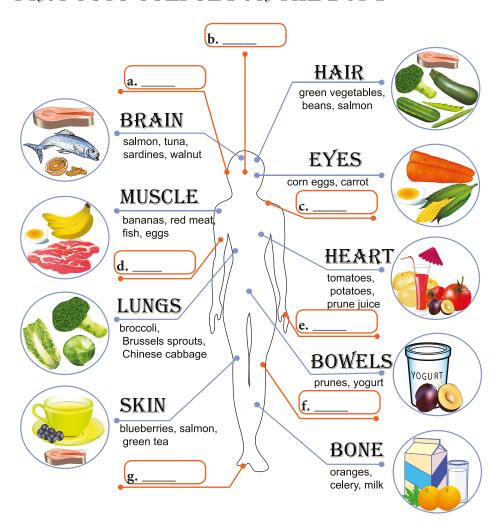




1 VOCABULARY

Look at the picture and label the parts of the body on the picture. Then listen and check your answer. (Track 3)

PRODUCTS USEFUL FOR THE BODY



- nose
- arms
- legs
- hands
- feet
- ears
- shoulders

"An apple a day keeps the doctor away." What does this proverb mean? Write your explanation in a few sentences.

3 Look at the pictures and answer the questions below.

What do you see in the pictures? Describe them.

- 1. What are their jobs?
- **2.** Where are they?
- **3.** What are they doing?

4 LISTENING (Track 4)))

a Listen to the dialogue and fill in the blanks.





b Complete the sentences according to the listening text.

1. Lucy's trouble is
2. According to Lucy's mum, a balanced diet
·
3. Lucy is going to see
4. Lucy's mother got anfrom a
dietitian for Lucy's health care.

c Choose the correct definition according to the dialogue.

1. processed means

- **a.** chemicals added to a substance in order to make it last longer
- **b.** to deal with information or documents in an official way

2. balanced means

a. considering all the facts in a fair wayb. a healthy mixture of different kinds of food

3. dietitian means

- **a.** a person who gives advice about food and eating
- b. the type of food that someone usually eats

5 SPEAKING

Work in pairs. Prepare a dialogue on making and confirming an appointment on the phone. Act out the dialogue.

A: You are a secretary.

B: Your partner is a patient.

Now change the roles.

CHECK THIS OUT!

We use **echo questions** to show interest and surprise.

e.g.

A: Our English teacher can speak four languages fluently.

B: Four languages?

A: It's amazing, isn't it?

B: Definitely.

6 PRONUNCIATION (Track 5)))

Listen and repeat.

A: I have got a headache.

B: Have you? I can give you a painkiller.

A: I was bored with the party.

B: Were you?

A: Yes, because there were a few people there.

A: I have good news for you.

B: Good news?

A: Yes. You passed the final exam.

A: Kate resigned from her job.

B: Did she?

A: Yes. She's looking for another one.

A: I'm seeing the doctor today.

B: The doctor? What's wrong?

A: Be calm. Just a routine check-up.

"

TODAY'S IDIOM

Keep an eye on

It means "to watch in order to protect."
The nurse is keeping an eye on the patient until the doctor comes.

7 READING

a Answer the following questions.

- 1. Do you think you eat properly?
- 2. What is a balanced diet?

b Put the following sentences in the correct place in the paragraph.

- A balanced diet is food intake that is low in fat and sugar, but high in vitamins and minerals.
- Men usually need more calories than women
- We should avoid refined white flour.
- Our body uses calories from food for walking, thinking, breathing, and other functions.

A balanced diet gives our body nutrients. They make the body function correctly. We should take the majority of our daily calories from fresh fruit, vegetables, whole grains, protein, and nuts. Thus, we get the proper nutrition from our diet.

Intake	of dail	y calorie	s can o	change	depend	ling
on our	ages, g	ender, an	d phy	sical ac	tivity le	evel

In the same way active people need more calories than inactive people.

Meat and beans are essential for muscle and brain development.

Because it is harmful for our health.
In conclusion,
4

8 WRITING

Write a similar dialogue about making and
confirming an appointment you have acted
out the dialogue as in Exercise 5.

READING-WRITING



Answer the following questions.

- 1. How important is sleep for you? Why?
- 2. How many hours do you usually sleep?

READING

- Look at the picture. Guess what the text is about. Then read the text.
 - 1 Having a rest is as important to our body as doing exercise and eating healthy diet. If you don't sleep enough, you can feel exhausted. Your body is a bit like a battery. Sleep and relaxation recharge it. If you don't do this, it may stop working properly.
 - 2 Lack of sleep affects our ability to concentrate. When you dream, your brain may be clearing itself out and preparing itself for the next day's thinking. Especially teens need at least eight hours of sleep a night. If you stay out late, try going to bed early the next night. The effects of lack of sleep can go on several days.



3 Your body needs a period of rest to repair itself and this prevents itself from getting worn out. During sleep, substances called hormones stimulate body tissues to grow and repair themselves. If you have difficulty falling into sleep, try reading a book. In addition, avoid consuming coffee, tea, or food before going to sleep. A cup of hot milk may help you relax.

Answer the questions according to the text.

- 1. What does the human body need?
- 2. What happens in case of the lack of sleep?
- **3.** How many hours do teens need to sleep?
- **4.** If you have a sleep problem, what do you do?

Find the words in the paragraphs with the following meanings.

1. _____: to regain one's strength and energy by resting for a time (paragraph 1)

2. _____: to go home late (paragraph 2)

3. _____: to keep something from happening (paragraph 3)

4. _____: extremely tired, exhausted (paragraph 3)

5. ______: to make something to grow, develop or become active (paragraph 3)

6. ______: the material that animals and plants are made of (paragraph 3)

Read the text again and underline if clauses.

e.g. If you don't sleep enough, you can feel exhausted.



2 EVERYDAY ENGLISH

Read the dialogue below. Then guess what the phrases in bold mean.



Useful Expressions

How are you doing? That's ridiculous! Could be worse. Not bad. Get well soon

Terry: Hey! How are you doing, Ezgi?

Ezgi: Hey! Not bad. You? Terry: Could be worse. Ezgi: What's wrong?

Terry: Neither my private life nor my health

is going well.

Ezgi: Tell me your problems. Maybe I can

help you.

Terry: I broke up with my flatmate. We had an argument about who should do the

Ezgi: That's ridiculous! Obviously, both your friend and you are obstinate.

Terry: Then terrible backache.

Ezgi: A terrible backache?

Terry: It happened while carrying the furniture to my new flat near school.

Ezgi: Oh, get well soon. You shouldn't be offend at each other. If you want, I can talk to him. You're close friends. Someone must do something.

Terry: Maybe you had better talk to him.

Ezgi: I will.

Complete the sentences according to the dialogue.

1. Terry moved to a r	new flat because
2. Ezgi thinks both _	 and
•	, so he has a backache. t she
0 00	

3	Match the sentences to make meaningful	l
	sentences.	

1.	If you d	lon't d	rink	en	ougl	n wat	er,	_
2.	If Lucy	starts	to g	о о	n a c	diet, _		
		_	_	_	_			

- 3. If Berna has a headache, ____
- 4. You dream ____
- **5.** That person must see a psychiatrist ___
- a. she can take a pain killer.
- **b.** you can become sick.
- c. she loses weight.
- **d.** if someone has a mental problem
- **e.** if you sleep.

Rewrite the following sentences by the phrases given.

e.g. Carol can join the meeting or her husband can join it.

Either Carol or her husband can join the meeting. (Either... or...)

Can went to America to do a master's degree. His sister, Ceren went to America to do a master's degree, too.

Both Can **and** Ceren went to America to do a master's degree. (Both... and...)

My sister doesn't eat junk food or processed food. (Neither... nor...)

My sister eats neither junk food nor processed

- 1. I don't care about problematic people or their opinions. (Neither... nor...)
- 2. You must take your medicine regularly or you must see the doctor. (Either... or...)
- 3. I have got an earache and a headache. (Both... and...)
- **4.** Our teacher can give a test on Wednesday or Friday. (Either... or...)

Talk about some activities or some food that are healthy for both your body and mind.

e.g. Walking early in the morning is good for both our body and mind.

6 LISTENING (Track 6)))

a Complete the lyrics while listening then sing the song of Abba together.



I have a ¹ , a song to sing
To help me cope with anything
If you the wonder of a fairy tale
You can take ³ even if you fail
I believe in angels
Something good in everything I see
I believe in angels
When I know 4 is right for me
I'll cross the stream, I have a dream
I have a dream, a fantasy
To help me through reality
And my 5 makes it worth the while
⁶ through the darkness still another
mile
I believe in angels
Something good in everything I see
I believe in ⁷
When I know the time is right for me
I'll cross the stream, I have a dream
I'll cross the stream, I have a dream
I have a dream, a song to sing
To help me cope with anything
If you see the wonder of a fairy tale
You can take the future even if you fail
I believe in angels
Something good in everything I see
I believe in angels
When I know the time is right for me
I'll cross the stream, I have a dream
I'll cross the stream, I have a dream.

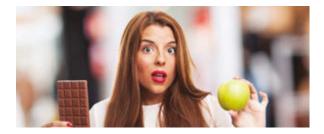
b What is the song about?

7 WRITING

Describe one habit you don't consider healthy.

The questions below can help you.

- What is the habit?
- Why do you think the habit is unhealthy?
- What do you think of its effects on someone's body? Why?
- What should or shouldn't people do in this situation?



8 Let's have some fun.

The surgeon told his patient that woke up after having been operated:

Surgeon: I'm afraid we're going to have to operate you again because I forgot my rubber gloves inside you.

Patient: Well, if it's just because of them,I'd rather pay for them if you just leave me alone.

LEAD IN



Answer the following questions

- 1. Are you a calm person in case of an emergency?
- 2. What do you do in an emergency situation?

LISTENING & SPEAKING



VOCABULARY 1

- Match the emergency cases with the pictures. Then listen and check your answer. (Track 7)
 - a. injured wrist
- **d.** heart attack
- **b.** drowning
- e. stopped breathing
- c. choking
- **f.** suffocating













Write the following phrases under the b correct pictures. Then listen and check your answer. (Track 8)

Wearing an elastic bandage	0	0	Moving the person into fresh air safely
Applying abdominal thrusts	0	•	Applying cardiac massage
Turning the drowning person't head to the side	s O	0	Giving artificial respiration

LISTENING (Track 9)) 2

Listen to a TV programme about first aid. Fill in the blanks.

Firstly, call an ambulance immediately and
then turn the drowning person's 1 to
the side to let any water to drain from his or
her ² and nose. ³ the head
back to the center.
Secondly, begin mouth-to-mouth resuscitation
on land. Resuscitation is to make someone
⁴ again. Strongly breathe four
5 into the mouth of the 6
person as you pinch his or her nose. After
four strong breaths, put your ⁷ near
the mouth and watch the 8 for any
breathing movement.
Thirdly, check the pulse for signs of life. Until
an ambulance arrives at the scene of accident,
9 the cycle.
Listen to the dialogue again. Write true (T)

- b or false (F). If it's false, correct it.
 - 1. The guest is an eye doctor. ____
 - 2. The statistic shows that home accidents are more than the other accidents. _
 - **3.** Everybody can help a person who needs even if they have no idea about first aid. ____
 - 4. Dr. Abbott gave useful information to viewers. _

3 SPEAKING

What should we do first in case of an emergency?

- 4 Complete the dialogue below with the statements in the box. Then act it out.
 - To my knowledge he should perform CPR, too.
 - Everybody in the corridor is in a panic.
 - Thanks God.
 - I did.

Morteza: What's going on here? 1
Sam: The lecturer in our department is having
a heart attack.
Morteza: Oh my God! Someone should call
for emergency medical assistance. Did anyone
call 999?
Sam: ²
Morteza: What should we do then?
Sam: One of his assistants began artificial
respiration.
Morteza: 3
Sam: She is both performing CPR and giving
artificial respiration.
Morteza: ⁴
The ambulance came.
LICTENING (Torol 10) 1

5 LISTENING (Track 10)))

a Listen to the telephone call and fill in the blanks.

A: Help me! I need	d a ¹!
B: What is the ²	, madam?

A: My husband is unconscious on the sofa!

B: Please calm down, madam. Take a deep

A: I need some help, right now!

B: Madam, I'm going to put you through to 911.

A: ⁴_____, please!

B: I'm transferring you right now, madam.

b Which countries do you think the dialogues in Exercise 4 and 5a take place?



RULES 2 KNOW

First Aid means:

AIRWAY

BREATHING

CIRCULATION

We can say that they are the ABC of First Aid.

6 SPEAKING

Work in pairs. Imagine you would call 112. Ask for help from the emergency service.

Your partner is at the call centre.

You are calling 112.

This is emergency service 112. How can I help you?

I think
my neighbour is
having a heart attack. Our
address is...



DO YOU KNOW THIS?

- In Turkey, you should call 112 if someone has an emergency health problem.
- In England, the emergency service is 999.
- In the USA it's 911.
- ER is the short form of emergency room.

READING-WRITING



What kind of accidents can happen at home?

READING 1

- Read the texts below. Fill in the blanks with the phrases in the box.
 - minor burns a cut or scrape
 - A Most accidents happen at home. One of the accidents that occur at home is _____. If you cut yourself and the injury is open and bleeding, the first thing you should do is to be calm the victim. Then,
 - elevate the injured part of the body as much as possible above the heart.
 - Next, stop the bleeding; apply direct and constant pressure to the **wound** using a sterile compress or cloth.
 - After cleaning the wound, apply an antibiotic ointment.
 - Then cover the wound with clean and sterile gauze. When the wound is deep, it needs stitches, so go to a hospital.
 - Every cut carries a risk of infection.

Signs of infection include:

- Redness
- Swelling
- Excessive pain
- B Another common home accident is ___

When you burn yourself, hold the burned area under cool (not cold) running water for 10 to 15 minutes to soothe the pain.

- Remove rings or other tight items from the burned area.
- Try to do this quickly and gently, before the area swells.
- Don't break small **blisters** (no bigger than your little finger nail). If blisters break, gently clean the area with mild soap and water, apply an antibiotic ointment and cover it with a nonstick gauze bandage.
- Apply moisturiser, aloe vera lotion, or gel, which may provide relief in some cases.
- See your doctor if you develop large blisters. You need medical help if the burn covers a large area of the body or if you notice signs of infection such as increased pain, redness, and swelling.

Match the pictures with the texts. Then write the home accidents in the blanks.





Look at the words in bold in the texts and match them with their meanings.

1.	: a painful, raised area
	of skin with liquid inside

- **2.** _____: to move something to a higher level or height
- 3. _____: to make something feel less painful
- **4.** _____: the good feeling that you have when something unpleasant stops or does not happen
- **5.** _____: injury, especially one that is made by a knife

d Complete the sentences about the texts in 1a.

- 1. When someone cuts himself, _____ the bleeding.
- 2. When the wound is deep,

3. When someone burns herself, _____

.....

4. Signs of infections are; _____

2 Complete the sentences.

- **1.** If a person still has a pulse but his breathing has stopped, ______.
- **2.** When there is no breathing, the patient is in cardiac arrest, ______.
- **3.** Call the ambulance if ______.
- **4.** Apply an antibiotic ointment _____

3 GAME

- Form a team.
- Your teacher shows a word related to the topic (for example; heart attack) to a student from one of the teams.
- ◆ That student draws the word the teacher has shown on the board and team mates try to guess the word.
- If the team guesses the word correctly, they get a point.
- Your teacher can give a certain time to the team to guess.



TODAY'S IDIOM

Dice with death

It means "to put your life at risk doing something dangerous."

Diving in deep sea alone is dicing with death.

4 Look at the signs below and answer the questions.

- 1. Where do you see these signs?
- 2. What should we do?
- **3.** What shouldn't we do when the cases happen in the pictures A, B, and D?



- 3. _______



- 1. ______
- 3



- 1. _____
- 2.



- 1._____
- 2. ________
- 3. _____

5	Put the instructions in the correct order about
	what to do in the case of fire.

Call for fire brigade first. 1

Stuff any cracks around the doors with clothes. _

Do not use elevator if there is one. ____

If there is pall of smoke in the room, get down on your hands and knees. ___

If you are stuck in an upstairs room. Do not panic.

Crawl towards the window to ask for help. ____

6 WRITING

Think an emergency situation such as getting poisoned from food or chemicals, etc as in Exercise 5. Search on the Internet. Then write instructions about what people should do before going to hospital.

7 READING

- a Read the text. What is the topic about?
 - ◆ Hospitals in Turkey ◆ Medical Treatment in Turkey

Turkey is a great choice to travel if you need medical treatment. It has become a top destination for medical tourism in Europe. Hospitals and medical facilities in Turkey have got quality medical professionals. In addition, some of them are US board certified. Turkey has a lot of private hospitals as well, and it offers a full-service to international patients.

Turkey treats thousands of foreign patients from the Middle East and European countries every month. It provides patients quality care. The Ministry of Health is in charge of all health services in the country. It competes with other countries such as; the US, Germany and England. Besides good health care, Turkey is a low cost health provider when it's compared with the other nations.

b According to the text 7a...

1. Turkey is	a. to be the centre of medical tourism.
2. The aim of Turkey is	b. from Middle East and Europe.
3. Foreign patients are	c. reasonable cost.
4. The health treatment is	d. a great choice for medical treatment.



B DISCUSSION TIME

- 1. Imagine you live in Europe, would you like to come to Turkey to heal? Why? Why not?
- **2.** Is medical service cheap for Turkish citizens? If no, why not?
- 3. When you're ill, do you prefer going to a family doctor or a general hospital first? Why?

9 Let's have some fun.

Beth's mother has three daughters. One is called Lara, the other one is Sarah. What is the name of the third daughter?

The answer is Beth

10 PROJECT TIME 🦓



Prepare a poster about five ways you can save someone 's life. Present it in class.

- Use pictures about First Aid.
- Write what you should do.





ORGANIZING PARTIES AND CELEBRATIONS

LEAD IN



Answer the following questions.

- 1. Do you like parties? Why, Why not?
- 2. Do you celebrate your birthday? Why, Why not?
- 3. What types of celebrations do you know?

LISTENING & SPEAKING



VOCABULARY

- **a.** Match the party types with the pictures below.
- **a.** Graduation party
- **b.** Dinner party
- **c.** Retirement party
- d. Fancy Dress party

- e. Barbecue party
- **f.** Birthday party
- **g.** Baby Shower party
- **h.** Fundraising party

- i. Housewarming party
- **j.** Tea party
- k. Wedding Anniversary 1. Farewell party
- **b.** Which of the celebrations are common in Turkish culture?
- **c.** Which of the celebrations are common in other cultures?









- 2.
- 3.



















- _____ 11._ 10.
- 12. _

2 LISTENING (Track 1)))

- Look at the pictures below and choose what type of party the listening text is about.
 - 1. graduation party
 - 2. birthday party
 - 3. barbecue party
- Listen and write the names of the items under the pictures.







2.

3.







6.







8.







10.

11.

12.







13. _____ 14. ____ 15.

- 3 Listen to the dialogues and do the following exercises below. (Track 2)
- Write if the sentences are true(T) or false (F).

1.	It's	a	garden	party.	
----	------	---	--------	--------	--

- **2.** Rose is turning seventeen. ____
- **3.** Sandra is joining the party. ____
- **4.** Tom is bringing snacks. ____
- **5.** Jane is bringing forks, spoons, and knives. ____
- **6.** Simon is bringing ice tea and fruit juice. ____
- 7. Sue is bringing party hats and balloons. ____

Listen again and tick () in which dialogues these sentences are said.

Dialogues	1	2
1. We're giving a surprise party for Rose.		
2. See you when you are back.		
3. She is turning seventeen.		
4. Who is bringing the party hats		
and balloons?		
5. I'm very sorry not to join you.		
I'm flying to London tomorrow.		

CHECK THIS OUT!

We use present continuous for future meaning.

- A: What are you doing on Monday?
- B: I'm taking my driving test on Monday. (I've already arranged my driving test)
- C: I'm meeting Pam at nine o'clock on Monday. (I've already arranged)

SPEAKING 🖼

One of your classmates is turning sixteen next week. You're preparing a party for your friend's birthday. Talk about your plan on how to get the party items.

- Who is buying the birthday cake, snacks, and beverages, etc.?
- Who is joining the party?
- Who is collecting money to buy items for the birthday?

5 EVERYDAY ENGLISH

a Read the dialogue below and do Exercises b, c, and d.

mela. What are you up to on a going to the dentist in the u free in the afternoon? s, I am. about going to the cinema in the ato do anything indoors. bout having a barbecue party by We can invite our friends. s a great idea, Ted. We can hear ag. The weather is fresh and are. Let's think about preparations bout buying some beef? at's good. Shall we buy something
u free in the afternoon? s, I am. about going to the cinema in the a, Ted. The weather is very nice. to do anything indoors. bout having a barbecue party by Ve can invite our friends. s a great idea, Ted. We can hear ng. The weather is fresh and re. Let's think about preparations bout buying some beef?
u free in the afternoon? s, I am. about going to the cinema in the t, Ted. The weather is very nice. to do anything indoors. bout having a barbecue party by Ve can invite our friends. s a great idea, Ted. We can hear ng. The weather is fresh and re. Let's think about preparations bout buying some beef?
about going to the cinema in the a, Ted. The weather is very nice. It to do anything indoors. It to do anything a barbecue party by We can invite our friends. It is a great idea, Ted. We can hear ag. The weather is fresh and the re. Let's think about preparations bout buying some beef?
a, Ted. The weather is very nice. It to do anything indoors. bout having a barbecue party by We can invite our friends. Is a great idea, Ted. We can hear ag. The weather is fresh and are. Let's think about preparations bout buying some beef?
to do anything indoors. bout having a barbecue party by Ve can invite our friends. s a great idea, Ted. We can hear ng. The weather is fresh and re. Let's think about preparations bout buying some beef?
to do anything indoors. bout having a barbecue party by Ve can invite our friends. s a great idea, Ted. We can hear ng. The weather is fresh and re. Let's think about preparations bout buying some beef?
bout having a barbecue party by Ve can invite our friends. s a great idea, Ted. We can hear ag. The weather is fresh and re. Let's think about preparations bout buying some beef?
ng. The weather is fresh and re. Let's think about preparations bout buying some beef?
at's good. Shall we buy something
hat about having some ice tea?
Let's buy
d. Most people like it.
'm buying some soda, too.
ow about buying salad? Some tomatoes and some
you mind if I buy some cookies?
course not, Pam. What do you music?
n't worry Ted. Let's call Simon
1 11 41 1 14 11
should prepare the invitation list here together.
• •
here together. all we meet near the park at one
here together.

- b Complete the dialogue with these sentences.
 - They play the guitar very well.
 - I have an appointment on Saturday at 10 o'clock.
 - Oh, no Ted. I hate ice tea.
 - Call me if you need help.
 - Of course, we should buy them.
- c What do Ted and Pamela decide to do together? Circle the correct answer.
 - **1.** go to the cinema
 - **2.** have a barbecue party
 - 3. go to the beach

REMEMBER THIS!

Suggestions

- How about going on a picnic?
- What about drinking tea?
- + Shall we watch TV?
- Let's throw a party.
- Why don't we buy some hamburgers?
- Would you like to join us?
- Why don't you join us?
- Is there anything I can help you with?

Accepting

- · Yes, OK.
- That's good.
- That sounds nice.
- I'd love to.

Refusing

- I'm sorry, I can't.
- No, thanks.
- I'd rather not to go there because I have another commitment.
- d Underline the suggestions in the text.

6 SPEAKING 🖼

- a Work in pairs. Your friend is throwing a farewell party next Sunday. Talk to your friend about what to do for the party using suggestions. Then act it out in class.
- b Role Play: Make an arrangement to meet your friend on Saturday. Suggest an activity. Your friend refuses your suggestion. Make another one. He/ she accepts. Decide on the date and time.

READING

- Answer the following questions.
 - 1. Do you like organizing a party for your friends? Why, why not?
 - 2. Do you always agree with your friends in a group work? Why, Why not?
- Read and order the paragraphs to make a meaningful dialogue.

Richard: Alright. We have agreed on the place of the party. Let's plan the menu.

Sandra: What about eating chicken and chips? Richard: I don't agree with you. It's not a good menu for the graduation party. How about eating fish and chips? Many people like it.

Sandra: OK! If you say so. How about eating some dessert?

Sandra: Oh, Richard I don't think we need to make an invitation list. All the students in the class are free to join the party. If we write on the notice board, we can easily inform the students about it.

Richard: You're right.

Sandra: How about holding the party at Star

Kitchen Café?

Richard: It doesn't have enough space for the

Sandra: I agree, but it's not expensive. It's good

for students.

Sandra: I like simple decorations.

Richard: I don't agree with you. This is our graduation party. We need colourful decorations.

Sandra: OK! Richard. You win. What shall we

do about the music?

Richard: I like apple pie as dessert.

Sandra: I don't like it at all. I like chocolate cake.

Richard: That's fine Sandra. Do you have any idea about how we should decorate the café?

Richard: OK! Sandra. We have a deal on the music.

Sandra: See you at the party.

Richard: See you.



Richard: Let's call a DJ for our party. We're going to dance and enjoy it.

Sandra: We don't need to hire a DJ. We already have talented friends. Some of our friends can play the violin, guitar, and drums. So, we can ask them to play their instruments instead.

Sandra: We're graduating from school next week. Let's organize a graduation party.

Richard: It sounds fun. We are going to enjoy a lot. Let's make an invitation list first.

- Read the dialogue again and answer the following questions.
 - **1.** Who is organizing the party?
 - **2.** Where is the party?
 - **3.** What are they going to eat as dessert?
 - 4. Are they going to eat chicken and chips at the party?
 - 5. Who likes colourful decorations?

DISCUSSION TIME

You are organizing a graduation party with your friend for one of your classmates. You disagree with your friend on the place, date, and menu. Talk to your friend about your opinion. Then decide on the topic. Use expressions such as "I don't agree with you, I agree but, I believe that, I don't think so".

READING & WRITING



READING

Read the paragraphs and write the name of the party for each paragraph as a title.

events. It helps per fun. They listen to prepares food and There are different such as a garder graduation party dress party, baby sanniversary. 1	rties to celebrate special cople to socialize and have music and dance. The host beverages for the guests. In types of entertainment on party, farewell party, sy, birthday party, fancy shower party, and wedding as party when they graduate chool, high school, college, y wear elegant clothes and ember this special occasion r lives.	People wear different kinds of costumes for such parties. They look like a famous person, a movie star, or a cartoon character. It is called costume party in American English. It is common in Western cultures. 5 People throw this party to celebrate their new age. They decorate the room with some decorations. Some people invite their friends by phone or send invitation cards to them. People eat birthday cake, sweets, and cookies. The person celebrating his birthday blows candles before they eat the cake.
People hold this party when their friends or relatives move from one city to another. It is a good way to say goodbye to their friends or relatives moving out of their town or neighbourhood. Couples celebrate it because they got married on that day. They celebrate it by having a nice dinner in a fancy restaurant. Some of them give a party for this anniversary. They invite their friends. They buy gifts for each other.		People throw this party for the woman who is expecting a baby. Guests give gifts for the baby. Only women join the party. One of the family members, usually grandmother, hosts this party. 7 This is generally a formal party. It is an honour to join this kind of party. This party can be a prestigious event. For example, British Royal Family gives it at Buckingham Palace.
Match the words	with their meanings.	c Read the statements and write true (T)
1. blow 2. gift 3. occasion	a. performances that people enjoyb. an important event or ceremonyc. to send out air from the mouth.	 or false (F). 1. Parties help people to socialize and have fun 2. Students throw garden party when they graduate from school 3. Fancy dress party is common in Turkey.
4. host	d. present	
5. celebrate	e. someone who invites guests to a meal or party	4. People wear different costumes in a farewell party
6. entertainment	f. to show that a day or an event is important by doing	5. People give parties to celebrate their birthday
	something special on it	6. Men can join the baby shower party

2 Read the invitation cards below and answer the questions.







1. What is each invitation abo

a	b
C	d

- **2.** What are the dates of the first and third parties?
- **3.** Where are the parties?
- a. _____ b. ____
- c. _____ d. ____
- **4.** Who sends the first invitation?
- **5.** Whom does Mary send the fourth invitation to?
- **6.** Which invitation do you prefer going? Why?

DO YOU KNOW THIS?

RSVP means "please reply"

The person sending the invitation would like you to tell him or her whether you accept or decline the invitation.

3 WRITING

Look at the invitation cards and write your own. Write down who gets the invitation, what kind of party you are planning, and also the date and the time of the party.





TODAY'S QUOTE

A party without a cake is just a meeting.

Julia Child

- 1. What does Julia Child mean with this quote?
- 2. Do you agree with this quote? Why, why not?

LEAD IN



Answer the following questions.

- **1.** Which traditional festivals do you know in Turkey?
- **2.** Which traditional festivals do you know in the world?

LISTENING & SPEAKING



1 VOCABULARY

- a Write the names of traditional festivals or ceremonies under the pictures.
 - ◆ Harbin Ice Snow Festival ◆ Henna Night
 - ◆ Edinburg Fringe Festival ◆ Children's Day
 - ◆ Sydney New Year Eve Festival ◆ Loy Krathong





a. _____ b. _







c. ____







e. _____ f.

£			

 Look at the pictures in Exercise 1a and guess in which countries these festivals take place.
 The first letter of each country is given below.

a. S_____ **b.** T____ **c.** T____

d. C_____ **e.** T____ **f.** A_____

2 LISTENING (Track 3)))

a Match the words with their definitions.

1. groom **a.** A woman who is about to get married.

2. bride **b.** A man who is about to get married.

b Listen to the dialogue about "henna night". Then write true (T) or false (F) next to the sentences.

sentences.1. The bride's family holds henna night after the wedding. ____

2. Henna is a symbol of innocence and a gesture of good will. ____

3. Groom wears a traditional costume.

4. Bride covers her hair with a blue veil

5. Bride's mother in law puts gold in her hand.

c Put the following sentences into correct order.

a. The bride's friends and family members come together and they sing or dance at this night.

b. Groom's mother puts gold in bride's hand.

c. Her relatives hand the henna to the guests.

d. A relative or a friend of the bride applies henna on her hand.

e. It's usually held in bride's house and it is a ritual of Turkish cultural heritage.

f. The bride wears a traditional costume called *bindalli* and covers her head with a *red veil*.

3 SPEAKING 🖼

How do brides celebrate their henna night in your hometown? Talk about henna night briefly by giving examples.

4 EVERYDAY ENGLISH

a Read the dialogue below and do Exercises b and c.

Merve: Hello! Lisa Lisa: Hi! Merve.

Merve: My sister is going to live in America. Her wedding is on Sunday. I'm going to throw a party for my sister before her henna night tomorrow. Would you like to join us?

Lisa: Yes, of course. Is there anything that I

can help you with?

Merve: Sure. Would you mind making a shopping list for the party?

onopping not for the

Lisa: No, not at all.

Merve: We don't have much fruit. Could you add some apples and oranges to the list?

Lisa: OK, done.

Merve: We don't have enough ingredients to make a salad, so add a few carrots, some tomatoes, and cucumbers to the list.

Lisa: All right.We need a lot of snacks, but we don't have many biscuits. We don't have any cookies and chips either. Many people love them, so we should get some.

Merve: You're right. We also need a little fruit juice.

Lisa: Do you need help with anything else?

Merve: Yes, are you good at cooking?

Lisa: Yes, I am.

Merve: Have you got time to prepare all the

patties?

Lisa: Yes, I will do my best to help you.

Merve: It looks like it's going to be an enjoyable party. Thank you in advance. See you at 2 on Friday.

Lisa: Bye for now.

b Read the dialogue and decide if the sentences are true (T) or false (F).

- **1.** Merve is going to throw a party for her brother. ____
- **2.** They don't have enough ingredients to make a cake. ____
- 3. Lisa is going to prepare all the patties. ____
- c Underline the expressions of "quantity" in the dialogue.

CHECK THIS OUT!

Quantifiers

- e.g. I don't have enough ingredients to make a cake. I don't have any baking powder. I have a few eggs, some flour, a little sugar, but I have a lot of oil.
- e.g. → I have just moved to this city. I'm happy because I have a few friends.
- I 'm very sorry. I have **few** friends. I don't know many people around here.
- I can't afford to buy that dress because I have little money.
- I have a little money, but I can buy the dress.
- e.g. How many students are there in the garden?

There aren't many. They don't have much time to get back to their class.

5	Fill in the blanks with "a lot, much, many,
	a few, a little". Each question has more than
	one answer.

1. We use	for large amounts.
2. We use	for small amounts
3. We use	for countables.
4. We use	for uncountables.

6 Fill in the blanks with "a little, a few, a lot of, little, many, much". There are two extra words.

1. It is a very crowded school. There are

students here.
. I can't afford that shirt because I have
money.
. You shouldn't add salt in your mea

CHECK THIS OUT!

4. There aren't _____ photos in my family album.

Polite requests

- Can I see your passport?
- Would you like to come with me?
- Could I have your name, please?
- Would you mind opening the window?
- Answers
- Yes, certainly/ of course/ sure.
- Sorry, I'm afraid/ I'm sorry I can't.
- No, not at all/ Yes, I'm a bit cold.

7 SPEAKING 🖼

Ask your friend to do something for you politely.

READING

- Answer the following questions.
 - 1. Have you ever been to Şeb-i Aruz ceremony?
 - 2. Do you visit your relatives in Ramadan?
 - 3. What do you eat in Ramadan Festival?
- Read the text and do the exercises below.

Ramadan Feast

Ramadan is a holy month of fasting. In Ramadan, Muslims don't eat or drink anything from sunrise to sunset. They break their fast with their friends or relatives. Ramadan is much more than just not drinking and eating. People fast to purify their souls, give up bad habits, and test their patience. Many people give money to the poor and charities during this month. Holy Ramadan lasts 30 days. At the end of 30 days, Ramadan Festival is celebrated.

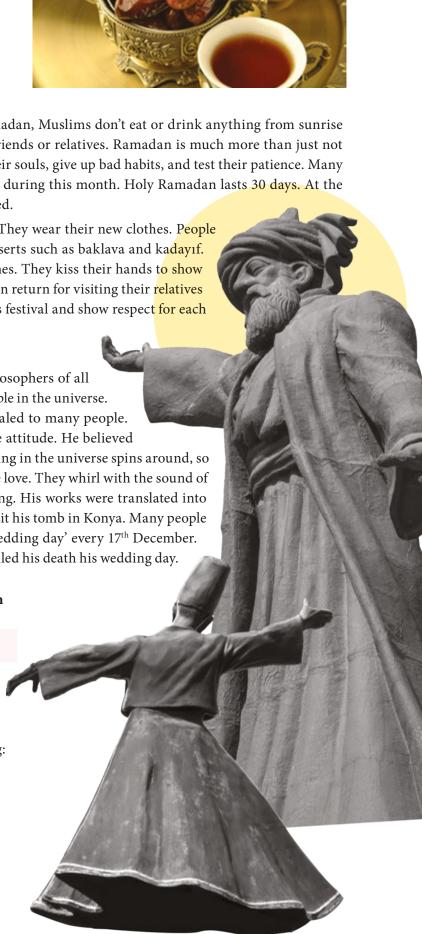
People wake up early on Ramadan Festival. They wear their new clothes. People serve their guests sweets and traditional desserts such as baklava and kadayıf. People visit their relatives especially older ones. They kiss their hands to show respect. Children collect money and candies in return for visiting their relatives and neighbours. People come together in this festival and show respect for each other.

Şeb-i Aruz

Mevlana was one of the greatest mystic philosophers of all time. In his writings, he addressed all the people in the universe. His positive and tolerant teaching has appealed to many people. He advised unlimited tolerance and positive attitude. He believed in divine love. Mevlana thought that everything in the universe spins around, so

dervishes following his steps spin to find true love. They whirl with the sound of ney. They wear white costumes while whirling. His works were translated into many languages. People all over the world visit his tomb in Konya. Many people come together to celebrate Şeb-i Arus 'his wedding day' every 17th December. He died on that day in the 13th century. He called his death his wedding day. It means reunion with the beloved (God).

- Match the words with the definitions given below.
 - purify ◆ appeal ◆ soul ◆ holy ◆ whirling
 - 1. the spiritual part of a person that is about emotions and deep feelings:
 - **2.** to find something attractive or interesting:
 - 3. related to God or religion: ___
 - 4. to remove bad acts or thoughts from something _
 - 5. turning around in circles ____



d	Answer	the	questions	about	the	texts.
		***	d erections	40046		COLLEG

- 1. Why do people fast in Ramadan?
- 2. What do people do in Ramadan Festival?
- 3. What does Şeb-i Aruz mean?
- 4. Why do dervishes spin?
- **5.** Why did Mevlana's philosophy appeal to many people in the world?

9 SPEAKING 🖼

Talk about how you spend your Ramadan and Ramadan Feast with your classmates.

10 Fill in the blanks with these words.

◆ branch
◆ wish
◆ believe
◆ come true
◆ seasonal
◆ hang
◆ arrival
◆ celebrate

Hıdrellez is a ¹ festival in Turkey.
It starts at night on May 5. People ²
Hidrellez across Anatolia for the end of winter
and ³ of spring. They ⁴
that Prophets Hızır and İlyas met on the Earth
on this day. People make a 5during
these celebrations believing that their wishes
will ⁶ within a year. Some people
write their wishes on a piece of paper. Then they
⁷ them on a ⁸ of a tree or put
under a rose.

CHECK THIS OUT!

We use "be going to" for our future plans.

Father: What is your plan for tomorrow? Son: I'm going to meet my friends and then we are going to go to the café and drink something there. Then we're going to play basketball.

Father: OK. Don't get back home late.

11 Ask and answer questions in pairs about your plans for next week. Then tick (✔) the activities you and your partner are going to do next week.

Activities	you	your partner
1. watch a movie		
2. write an email		
3. go out for dinner		
4. do homework		
5. send a text message		
6. call someone after class		
7. do shopping		
8. join a festival		
9. join a party		
10. throw a party		

12 SPEAKING 🖼

- a Work in pairs. Ask your partner these questions.
 - What are you going to do next summer?
 - Where are you going to go?
 - Whom are you going to go with?
 - What activities are you going to do with your friend?
- b Choose a traditional festival. Do a search about it by using the Internet sources. Then prepare a presentation and present it in class.

13 PRONUNCIATION (Track 4))

a Listen and repeat each word.

Ω	u:		
good, cook, book	school, youth, boot		

b Listen and write the words in the correct column.

- ◆ sugar ◆ shoe ◆ food ◆ put ◆ should
- ◆ cool ◆ June ◆ woman ◆ soup ◆ look

Ω	u:

READING & WRITING



1 **READING**

- Look at the pictures below and guess what the texts are about.
- Read the texts and decide which festival you would like to join.



Match the words with the meanings.

☐ 1. date back to	a. having a harmful impact on people
☐ 2. evil	b. what your name is and who you are
☐ 3. identity	c. to have existed since a particular time in the past
4. entertain	d. to amuse or interest people in a way that gives them pleasure

Holi Festival

People celebrate it in spring. It is celebrated in India. First, people put natural powder on their face then throw colourful water at each other in this festival. It is the festival of colours and festival of sharing love. They celebrate the arrival of spring. This festival is the symbol of victory of good over evil.

Carnival of Venice

It is one of the most famous festivals in the world. It is celebrated in Italy. It dates back to the 14th century. In the past, people used masks to hide their identity and social status. This mask helped rich people cover their identity. In the Carnival of Venice artists and singers entertain people. Many people wear extraordinary costumes. Tourists and Venetians walk around the streets of Venice wearing colourful masks.

Fill in the blanks with the words in the box. Use the correct form of the verbs.

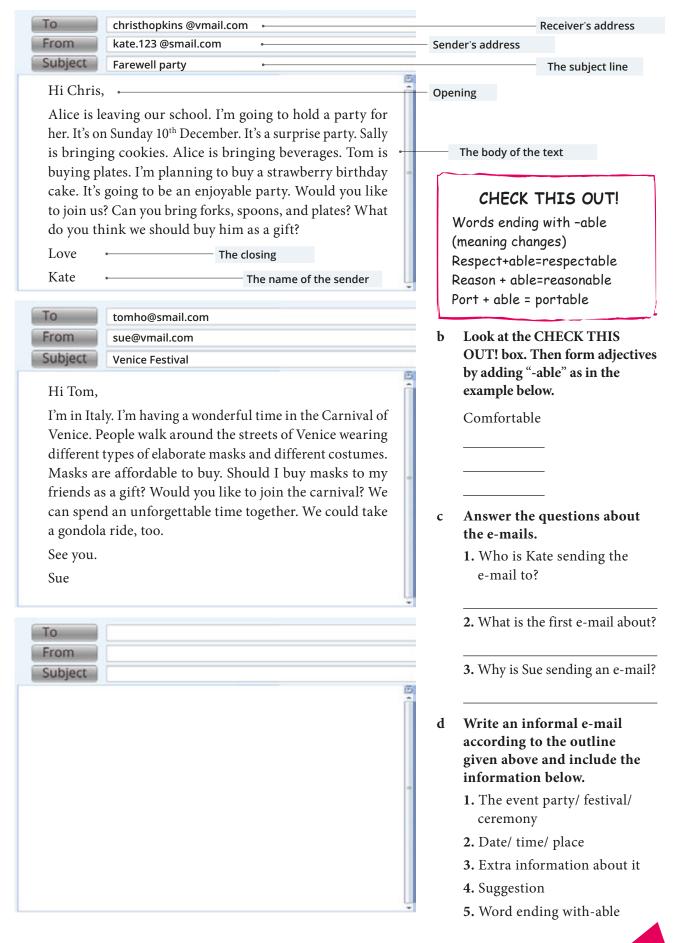
 ◆ date back to ◆ identity ◆ evil ◆ entertain 						
1. Police are searching for the of criminal						
2. The film is about good people who defeat						
·						
3. The Carnival of Rio 1723.						
4. A magician the children at the						
party yesterday.						

e	In which country	do these	activities	take place	? Tick (🗸)	the correct one.
---	------------------	----------	------------	------------	------------	------------------

	India	Italy	
1. This festival is the symbol of victory over evil.			
2. They wear different types of masks.			
3. They throw colourful water at each other in this festival.			
4. Many people wear extraordinary costumes.			
5. Artists and singers entertain people.			
6. It is the festival of colours and festival of sharing love.			

2 WRITING

a Read the informal e-mails below and underline the words ending with "-able" in the two e-mails.



PLANNING FOR GATHERING

LEAD IN



Answer the following questions.

- 1. Do you like making plans? Why, Why not?
- 2. What do you usually make plans for?

LISTENING & SPEAKING



VOCABULARY

Look at the drawings below. What are these people's future plans? Write their plans under each drawing using "be going to".









2.		

3.			

4.	

Dialogue Dialogue

LISTENING (Track 5))

Listen to three dialogues and complete the sentences.

Dialogue A:

Tim and Başak are going to go to ¹_____ on Sunday.

Dialogue B:

Samuel is going to ²_____ a housewarming party and invite his 3_____ and ⁴_____ to his party.

Dialogue C

Doğukan is going to ⁵ after school tomorrow.

Listen to the dialogues again. Which dialogues do these sentences belong to? Tick () the correct box.

1.	She	got	promoted	at	work.

- 2. I'm going to move to Texas.
- 3. OK! Then let's meet on Sunday afternoon.
- **4**. What is she throwing a party for?
- 5. We can buy it online.
- 6. Will you join my party?
- 7. What are you going to do on Sunday?

SPEAKING 🖼

Talk about your summer plans with your classmates.

	e.g. I'm	going to	work
1	part tin	ne and sa	ve

4 READING

a Look at the pictures below and describe what you see in each of them.







b Read the dialogue and do Exercises c and d.

Lisa: Have you made a plan for your vacation? **John:** Yes, I have. I have already bought my ticket. I'm going to Punta Cana next week.

Lisa: Where is it?

John: It's a wonderful holiday place in

Dominic Republic.

Lisa: What are you going to do there?

John: I'm going to see the natural beauty and wildlife. I'm going to walk around tropical forests. It's famous for pink feathered flamingos and colourful parrots. I'm going to see them, too.

Lisa: You like sports very much, John. Are you going to do sports activities, too?

John: Yes, of course, Lisa. I'm going to go parasailing and dive in the sea.

Lisa: Wow! That's great. How long are you going to stay there?

John: I'm going to stay there for two weeks.

Lisa: Whom are you going to go with?

John: With my friends.

Lisa: When are you leaving Zürich? **John**: I'm leaving on December 17th.

Lisa: What time are you leaving?

John: I think my plane will take off at 6:15, but

I'm not sure.

Lisa: Let me look at it. Your plane is taking off at 7:15, John. Be careful about the time.

John: Okay! Lisa.

Lisa: Have a nice vacation.

John: Thanks a lot.



- c Answer the following questions about the dialogue.
 - 1. What is John going to see?
 - 2. Which sports is he going to do there?
 - 3. Is he going to go there with his friends?
 - 4. What time is his plane taking off?
 - 5. When is he leaving Zürich?
- d Read the sentences below and decide which sentences refer to a plan, which sentences refer to an arrangement. Write (A) for "arrangement" and write (P) for "plan" in the blanks.
 - **1.** I'm going to stay there for two weeks. ____
 - 2. I'm going to walk around tropical forests. ____
 - **3.** I'm going to go parasailing and dive in the sea. ____
 - **4.** I'm leaving on December 17. ____
 - **5.** Your plane is taking off at 7:15, John. ____
- e Circle the correct option.
 - 1. When we have already made arrangements, we use
 - **a.** be going to **b.** present continuous tense
 - 2. When we plan something, we use
 - **a.** be going to **b.** present continuous

5 SPEAKING 🖼

Describe your future arrangement and plans for next week as in the speech bubble. My parents and I are visiting my grandmother next Sunday afternoon. I'm going to play chess with my grandfather. I'm also going to prepare the dinner with my grandmother. Then we are going to eat supper together.

6 Read the Dialogue 1 given below. Then complete the sentences with "be going to" in dialogues 2, 3, and 4.



Dialogue 1

Doğukan: Look at Simon!

Sandra: Oh my God! He's going to eat a giant

loaf of bread.

Doğukan: Yes. This is unhealthy. It has a lot of

carbohydrates in it.

Sandra: Yes, but it seems to me that he doesn't care about it. **He is going to be overweight if**

he keeps doing that.



Dialogue 4

Tom: What does this weather icon mean?

CHECK THIS OUT!

We use 'be going to' for strong predictions.

• According to the weather report, tomorrow

Sandra: Don't you know?

It means_____



Dialogue 2

Jane: Let's go to the cinema today.

Yiğithan: I think we should stay at home.

Jane: Why?

Yiğithan: Look at those black clouds.

Jane: You're right. Perhaps another time.

7 SPEAKING 🖼

is going to be foggy.

Look at the pictures below and write dialogues with strong predictions.

• My sister is going to have a baby.



Dialogue 1

Richard:

Bora: ____

Richard:



Dialogue 3

Simon: Watch out!

Kayla: Oh the lorry is coming towards us.



Dialogue 2

Joe: _____

Rose:

8 EVERYDAY ENGLISH (Track 6))

Listen to the phone conversations and complete the sentences below.

Dialogue 1

Mert: Hey George, it is Mert calling. Is ¹_____?

George: 2_ _. I'll call her.

Susan: Hello, Mert. Mert: Hi, Susan

Susan: How are you?

Mert: Things are going great. Would you like

to join me on Saturday for dinner?

Susan: 3

Where are we going to go?

Mert: Sam's Garden.

Susan: I love that place.

_ you ___ Mert: Fine. Then, I'll 4____

Susan: Thanks. That would be very nice. I'm

⁵ forward to it, Mert.

Mert: See you then.

Dialogue 2

John: Hello, Sue. This is John.

Sue: Hi, John.

John: How are you?

Sue:Things are going great.1_

John: My birthday is on Sunday. I'm

²_____ a party. Would you like to come to

my party?

Sue: I³_____. Where is it?

John: It's at my house.

Sue: What time is the party?

John: At 6 p.m

Sue:Thanks for ⁴_____ me.

John: It's my pleasure. See you at the party.

Sue: See you.

Dialogue 3

Nick: Hello Tom.

Tom: Jill and I are going to cinema on Sunday

at 7 p.m. Would you like to join us?

Nick: I'm afraid, I won't be able to 1___

you. I have ²_____ commitment.

Put the sentences into correct order.

- **a.** Hello. Can I speak to Sandra Brown? ___
- **b.** It's Linda Grantham.
- c. L-I-N-D-A G-R-A-N-T-H-A-M ___
- **d.** Who is calling? ___
- e. OK. Please hold the line. I'll put you through. ___
- f. Hello. Zed Bank. How can I help you?
- g. Thank you. ___
- **h.** I'm sorry. I couldn't catch your name. Can you spell your name, please? ___

Complete the sentences with the words in c the box.

contact ◆ have ◆ available ◆ speak ◆ leave

Sam: Hello. This is Sam Brown speaking. Could I ¹_____ to Jack May, please?

Tom: I'm sorry, Jack May is not ²_____.

Sam: Can I³_____ a message for him?

Tom: Sure.

Sam: Please tell him that Sam Brown wants to

with him. Tom: Okay, I'll tell him. Does he 5 _____

your phone number?

Sam: No, he doesn't. My phone number is

903 378 6621.

Tom: I will pass your message to Jack May.

Useful Expressions

Requesting Someone

- Hello, Good morning. I'd like to speak to Ryan.
- Can I speak to Ryan? Is Ryan here?
- Is Ryan available?

Leaving a Message

- Would you like to leave a message?
- Can I leave a message?

Difficulties of Understanding

- I'm sorry. I didn't catch your name. Could you speak up?
- Can/ Could you spell your name, please?
- Could you say it again?
- Please speak more slowly.
- What number did you dial?
- · Sorry, I think I've dialled the wrong number.

EVERYDAY ENGLISH

- Answer the following questions.
 - 1. Look at the picture on the right. Where are they? What is the waitress doing?
 - 2. Look at the menu below. What would you like to eat?



Read the dialogue and do Exercises c and d.

Mary: A table for two, please.

Waitress: Right this way, please. Have a seat.

Charles: Thank you. Can I have the menu, please? I have never been to Turkey before. I'd like to try some Turkish cuisine.

Waitress: Sure. I recommend you to have döner kebab and künefe as dessert. Here is the

menu, sir. What would you like to order?

Charles: I'd like to have döner kebab and lettuce salad. That sounds good.

Waitress: What about you, madam?

Mary: I'll have lentil soup as a starter. Then

steak and chips as the main course.

Waitress: How do you want the steak cooked

rare, medium, or well done?

Mary: Medium, please. Waitress: Anything else?

Charles: I'd like to have künefe.

Waitress: Would you like to drink something?

Mary: A cappuccino, please.

Waitress: I'm sorry. We don't have cappuccino. Mary: Oh, OK. I'd like to drink Turkish coffee.

Charles: I'll have a can of fruit juice with ice

cubes.

Waitress: Here you are. Enjoy your meal.



Useful Expressions Customer

- Can I have the menu?
- How much is it?
- I'd like to have/ I'll have_

Waiter/ Waitress

- Can I help you?
- What would you like to eat/ drink?
- Anything else? Enjoy your meal.
- Here it is./ Here you are.

Answer the questions about the dialogue.

1.	What does Mary	order (as a	starter	and	the
	main course?					

2.	How does Mary want her steak cooked?
3.	What does Charles order as dessert?
4.	What does Charles want to drink?

d	Complete	the	dialogue	with	your	own	words.
---	----------	-----	----------	------	------	-----	--------

Waiter: Can I ¹ you?	
Customer: I'd like to order ²	
Waiter: Sure. Here you are. Anything ³	_?
Customer: A large 4	
Waiter: Here ⁵ Enjoy your meal.	
Customer: How much 6?	
Waiter: That's 7	

10 SPEAKING 🖼

Role play: Write your own menu. Choose your own food or drink. Make a dialogue. Then act it out.

Students A is a customer. Order the food and drink.

Student B is a waiter or waitress. Serve your customer.

READING & WRITING



1 **READING**

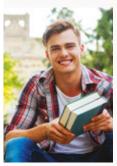
Belda, Tom and Luis live in the same town, but study at different universities in Ireland. They come together at a graduation party organization in their town. Read their personal information and future plans and do Exercises b and c.

My name is Belda. I'm going to be a preschool teacher and I really like kids very much. I'm going to work as a babysitter in my summer holiday. I know it isn't easy to look after kids because taking care of them is a great challenge. You should be very



patient and you need to keep an eye on them all the time. You should have many responsibilities for this job. On the other hand, babysitters are well paid. In my opinion, this job prepares me better for real life.

My name is Tom. I will work as a waiter after my graduation business administration department



because I want to gain some experience. In the future I'm going to have my own restaurant. Being a waiter is very common among the teenagers here. I sometimes get tips and my lunch is free, too. I don't get a very high salary. It is not an easy job, but I like being with people and serving people.

This job requires cooperation, teamwork, and responsibility. I have all of these qualifications.

My name is Luis. I'm graduating from computer engineering programme. This summer I'm going

to work as a web designer. It's a great job for me because it helps me improve myself. I'm interested in technology and creating web sites for customers. This job requires a lot of patience because it has long working hours, but I earn a lot of money.

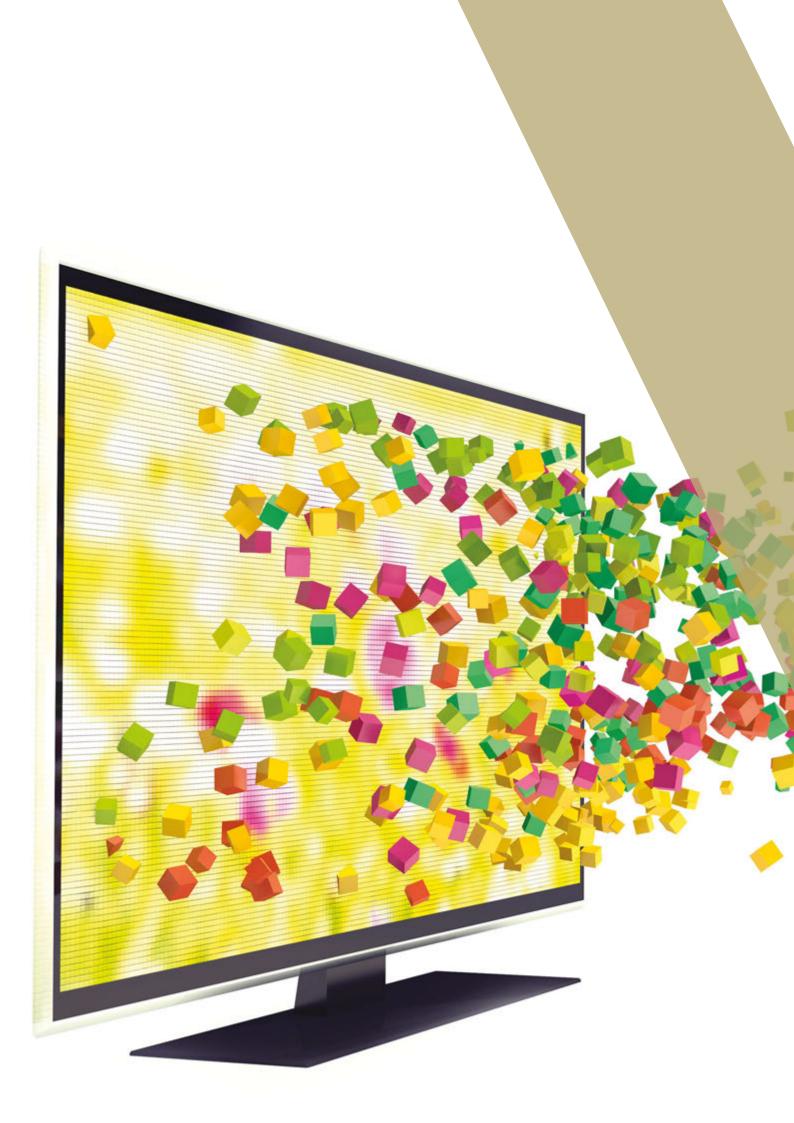


- Read the definitions below and match the highlighted words in the text.
 - 1. An ability or quality that you need for particular job.
 - 2. A small amount of money you give someone for a service.
 - **3.** Fixed amount of money you earn every month.
- Answer the questions about the text. c
 - **1.** What is Belda going to be in the future?
 - 2. What is she going to do in her summer holiday?
 - **3.** What is Tom going to do in the future?
 - 4. If you want to work as a waiter, what qualifications do you need?
 - **5.** What is Luis interested in?
 - **6.** Do web designers earn a lot of money?

2 WRITING

Imagine that you are talking to your friends about your future plans at the graduation ceremony. Write a short paragraph between 80-100 words about your future plans.

••••	





UNIT 10

TELEVISION

10A What's on TV Tonight?10B Future Inventions10C Weather Forecast

In this unit you will be...

- making predictions about the future.
- stating and asking for opinions.
- interrupting someone in a conversation politely.
- describing fixed arrangements.
- talking about the weather.

LEAD IN

Answer the following questions.

- 1. How many hours do you watch television per day? Do you think that you're a "couch potato"?
- 2. What did you watch last night?
- 3. What is your favourite TV programme? What do you like about this programme?
- 4. What type of programmes do you dislike? Why?
- 5. Would you like to appear on TV programmes? Why, why not?

LISTENING & SPEAKING 4 🌙



VOCABULARY

	a	Match the different	types of TV	programmes with	the definitions.	One is extra
--	---	---------------------	-------------	-----------------	------------------	--------------

Sports • News • DIY ◆ Makeover ◆ Music • Soap Opera ◆ Talk Show Travel ◆ Cookery ◆ Game Show • Cartoon • Sitcom • Documentary 1. A television programme about facts and real 7. A television programme that reports world or national events. _ life topics such as wild life. _____ 8. A television programme that you can learn 2. Known as a situation comedy. It's an amusing new things to do by yourself. ____ TV series. ____ 9. A television series that is a fictional drama of 3. A television programme about sports and fictional characters. sports events. ____ 10. A television show in which people compete. 4. A television programme for children. 5. A television show about changing one's 11. A television show that you can listen, live or physical appearance or life style. ____ recorded music. _ 6. A television programme about cooking with 12. A television programme that shows popular holiday destinations around the world. _ some guests. ___

Look at the pictures below and write the types of television programmes they represent.















5. 6.

2 LISTENING (Track 1)))

a Listen to a part of a TV programme that a mother and her daughter are watching. What type of programme are they watching?



- b Listen again and order the things Isabel did.
 - a. She slid the shaft of the motor through a hole in the button. _____
 - b. She turned the robot on. _____
 - c. She stuck the motor and battery pack to body. _____
 - d. She told the materials they needed. __1__
 - e. She coloured the toilet paper roll. _____
 - f. She attached the battery pack to the motor.
- c Write the main idea of the TV programme.

3 DISCUSSION TIME ****

- a Work in groups. Discuss the answers of the questions below. Listen to your friends carefully and tell if you agree or disagree with them. Take note of the ideas you come up with.
 - 1. What types of programmes do you like best? Why? Give some examples from some national programmes.
 - 2. Do people watch the same things every day?
 - 3. What types of programme are most popular in your country? Why?
 - 4. What do you think of dating programmes? Can a person find his or her soul mate in these programmes? Why?
 - 5. What do you think of DIY programmes? Do you think a person can learn how to repair or restructure some things? Why?

b Share your ideas you have in common with the other groups.

4 SPEAKING

Make a survey in your school.

- Write 5 questions about TV programmes.
- Ask 3 people about their preferences on TV programmes and write down their answers.
- Share them with your classmates in the class.



Questions

e.g. Do you like watching?
What type of programmes?

1		
2.		
3		
4		
5		

People	1	2	3
Answer 1			
Answer 2			
Answer 3			
Answer 4			
Answer 5			

READING & WRITING



1 **READING**

Read the text and do the exercises b, c, d, and e.

WE LOVE TELEVISION

Television has had an important role in our lives for nearly 50 years. There was only one television channel, Turkish Radio and Television Corporation (TRT), in Turkey until 1989. Today there are a lot of TV channels and people have a chance to watch various TV programmes such as soap operas, documentaries, talent shows and so on. We can classify programmes under three general headings according to their functions. These are entertainment, children's, informative, and educational programmes. While informative and educational programmes focus on serious topics such as science, politics, and history, entertainment programmes generally aim to reduce people's stress. Children's programmes can be instructive and entertaining at the same time. Actually, it's hard to separate these three functions one from another. A programme can sometimes include two or all of the functions.

Each TV programme includes a message for people. If people receive this message, the programme becomes successful. Here are some examples of messages.

- Wear make-up and become beautiful
- Women and men are equal/ not equal
- Read a lot of books
- Waste/ Save money

Whatever the message is, broadcasters firstly aim to make money. So, it's very important to be cautious about the messages on TV.

People like watching television in Turkey. The programme preferences of Turkish people vary. However, RTSC (Radio and Television Supreme Council) sources and the rating results show that they watch mostly entertainment programmes, especially TV series. Game shows, news programmes, reality, and talk shows follow the series on the list of most watched TV shows. When you ask people about the rating results, they say it's supply-driven. It means that they don't want to watch so many entertainment programmes, but those are what they are



offered. Broadcasters claim the opposite, though. They say that they discontinue broadcasting unpopular programmes in advance.

Turkish people brought television into their lives very late. However, it sets the agenda of life in Turkey. Programme contents of the television channels vary according to the target audiences. Although some audiences complain about the poorness of programme types, they can make choices among alternatives with the remote control in their hands.

b Decide whether the sentences below are true (T) or false (F).

- 1. After 1989, new TV channels started to broadcast in Turkey. ____
- 2. There are a few of programmes on TV now. ____
- 3. Entertainment programmes focus more on enjoyable topics than educational ones. ____
- 4. Children's programmes are entertaining. ____
- 5. Each programme must have only one function.
- 6. People think the variety of programmes is enough. ____

Answer the questions about the text.

- 1. Why did people watch a few types of programmes in early years?
- 2. What kind of topics do informative programmes focus on?
- 3. What do broadcasters think of people's opinions about rating results?

CHECK THIS OUT!

WRITING A PARAGRAPH

Supporting sentences explain, describe and illustrate the main idea and the topic sentence. You can use comparisons, contrasts, and statistics. They help to extend your writings.

Watching television is a free-time activity that has many negative sides. First of all, It is a waste of time. Instead of watching TV, you can talk to your friends, and become socialized, read books and learn new things. However, you don't gain anything when you watch television. We could use our time more effectively.

Topic: Negative sides of television

Topic sentence: Watching television is a free-time activity that has many negative sides.

Supporting sentences (details): First of all, it is a waste of time. Instead of watching TV, ...

d Read the first paragraph of the text in 1a again. Write the topic and the topic sentence. Underline supporting details in the paragraph.

Topic: ____

e Read the text again. Write the words used with the same or similar meaning, spelling and pronunciation in Turkish.

1st paragraph – (10 words)

Topic sentence: _____

2nd paragraph – (1 word)

3rd paragraph – (1 word)

5th paragraph – (1 word)

6th paragraph – (2 words)

f Write 5 more English words used with the same/ similar meaning and spelling in Turkish.

1. _____ 2. ____ 3. ____

4. _____ 5. ____

2 Listen and write the type and functions of the programme (educational, informative, children's, or entertainment). Fill in the related column in the table below. (Track 2))

Listening	Function	Type
1		
2		
3		
4		
5		
6		
7		
8		

3 SPEAKING

Tell the types of the programmes shown in the pictures below. Talk about the messages of the programmes.









- 4 Discuss the importance of the TV programmes in our lives.
- a Think of the aspects in the table below and write your notes in the boxes.

Programme type	Target audience (man/ woman/ children)	Target age	Pros	Cons
News				
Fashion shows				
DIY shows				
Sports programmes				
Cartoons				

- b Use your notes above and share your thoughts about the TV programmes. Do you think the programmes are based on broadcaster's preferences or audience's preferences?
- 5 Read the dialogues below. Look at the verb forms in bold in the dialogues and answer the questions.

1. Alison: Do you have any plans for the weekend?

Sude: My sister **is getting married** on Saturday.

Alison: It must be very exciting.

2. Kemal: What is your plan for tomorrow night?

Simon: I'm going to finish my final report.

Kemal: I wouldn't like to be in your shoes.

3. Conrad: Would you like to join us tomorrow? We'**re going**

to look for a new house.

Sandy: Sorry, but I'm meeting my adviser in the afternoon.

4. Hale: What is she preparing for? She looks very busy.

Jonathan: She's having a big party at home tonight.

Hale: Oh, I see.

5. Damon: When will you see your dentist?

Alex: I'm seeing him at 5 o'clock today.

Damon: Would you like me to come with you?

Alex: Thanks, I'll handle it myself.

1. Which verb forms describe a fixed arrangement?

is getting married,

2. Which verb forms describe an intention/ plan?

- 6 Work in pairs.
- a Talk to your friends about your 'fixed arrangements' and 'intentions/ plans' for tomorrow, next week and next year.

e.g.

What are you doing tomorrow?

I'm going to the conference tomorrow at 3 pm.

Are you at home tomorrow morning? I want to stop by for a cup of coffee.

Let's drink our coffee out. I'm going to buy a dress for the farewell party on Sunday. Come with me.

PLANNER 6 CALENDAR							
SUNDAY	MONDAT	TUESDAY	WEDNESDAY	THURSDAY	PREAT	SATURDAT	
		1	2	3	4		
6	7	8	Shift moding	10	11	(12	
	NE Silve Stati New parker		SEMINIA.				
13	14	15	16	17	18	19	
					breik		
20	21	22	23	24	25	20	
		Areal Pather		(afterio			
27	28	(29)	30	31			

b Look at Julia's notes below about the first week of May. Ask and answer questions as in the example.

	Tuesday			
	4 study with Selma at 8 pm			
	have dinner with family			
	Wednesday			
	5 go to the library in the morning			
	in the afternoon			
	Thursday			
	6 get your dress from the tailor before			
	the breakfast			
day	Friday			
E	7 meet your school counsellor at 3 pm			
	11 am			
	Saturday			
	8 go to the dance club			
	Sunday			
	9 have breakfast with Maya and Ozan			
	brunch			
	Monday			
	10 meet twins at George's			

e.g. A: Is Julia studying with Selma at 8 pm on Monday?

1. A: __

B: No, she isn't. She's having dinner with her family.

B:	
2. A:	
B:	
3. A:	
B:	
4. A:	
B:	
5. A:	
B:	v
6. A:	

7 WRITING

Brainstorming

Make a list of negative and positive effects of watching television on youth and children.

Pros	Cons
1.	1.
2.	2.
3.	3.
4.	4.
5.	5.

8 If you had a TV channel, how would your schedule be? Answer the questions below.

- 1. What would the name of your channel be? Why?
- 2. What types of programmes would be for children/ youth/ women/ men and when would you broadcast them (in the morning/ afternoon/ evening)? Why?
- a Prepare your own TV schedule for two days. You can write the programmes you watch or create new programmes. Think of your answers for the questions above while preparing the schedule.

August					
	Sat	Fri			
07.00-09.30					
09.45-11.45					
12.00-13.00					
13.15- 15.00					
15.15-17.00					
17.15-19.00					
19.15-20.15					
20.30-22.30					
22.45-24.00					

Present your schedule with a slide show or poster in class. Talk about the reasons for your programme choices.

FUTURE INVENTIONS

LEAD IN

Answer the following questions.

- 1. What do you want to do after this class?
- 2. What do you want to do when you finish school?
- 3. Where do you want to live 10 years later?
- 4. What new technological tools will be in our lives in 2050?
- 5. What innovations do you follow in science and technology?

LISTENING & SPEAKING



- LISTENING (Track 3)
- Listen to the interview of a school science magazine. Tick () the innovations you hear.





- 2.









- 6.





- 8.

Listen to the interview again. Complete the questions with correct words.

a. Do you think ¹_____ will have ²_____ like people?

- **b.** 3_____ will houses be 4_____?
- **c.** Do you follow the ⁵ _____ in 6_____ and technology?
- **d.** What do you think life in ⁷_____ will be 8_____ in thirty years?
- **e.** What will ⁹_____ sector be like?
- Put the questions above in the order you hear in the listening.
 - 1. ____ 2. ___ 3. ___ 4. ___ 5. ___
- According to Mark, which of the following d sentences are true (T) or false (F). Correct the false information.
 - **1.** Students will not go to school. ____
 - **2.** Having lessons in a class is important. ____
 - **3.** Teachers will not give any project work. ____
 - **4.** Students will study for 4 hours a day. ____
 - 5. Students will connect online and see each other and their teacher a few times a week. ____
 - 6. Teachers will lead students to reach the information.
 - 7. Scientists will cure many diseases. ____
 - **8.** People will live longer. ____
 - 9. Robots will have the ability to decide on something. ____
 - **10.** Robots will have feelings. ____
 - Read the CHECK THIS OUT! box on page 197, then listen to the interview again. Write the interruption expressions the interviewer used.

 - 3. ____

CHECK THIS OUT!

Interrupting a conversation

Sorry to interrupt!

Excuse me for interrupting, but...

Can I stop you there for a moment?

Interrupting an interruption

Would you let me finish first?

I haven't finished it yet.

Allowing an interruption

Ok, what do you want to add/ say? No problem. You can go ahead.

Continuing after an interruption

Where was I?

As I was explaining/ saying.

e.g.

Karen: There will be 4 season clothes in the

future. They will keep you warm or cool...

Nate: Sorry to interrupt, but can I ask

a question?

Karen: Go ahead.

Nate: What kind of fabric will they use? Karen: I don't know. Well, where was I?

f Work in pairs. Use the interruption expressions and responses in CHECK THIS OUT! box and make dialogues about life in the future. Use the clues in the parentheses.

1.	A:	(prediction)
----	-----------	--------------

B: _____(interruption)

A: _____ (response)

2. A: _____(prediction)

B: _____ (interruption)

A: _____ (response)

CHECK THIS OUT!

A: People will live in space in the future.

B: It's an interesting prediction.

A: How can I trust you?

B: I promise I won't lie to you.

A: You look happy.

B: I guess I will not fail the test.

A: This problem is very difficult.

B: Don't worry. I will help you.

2 SPEAKING 🖼

a Which do you think is better: Face to face education or online learning? Tick (✔) your choices. Discuss your answers in class with your peers.

	Face to face education	Online learning	Both
a. It's cheap.			
b. Students can study at their own learning speed.			
c. Students can follow their own interests.			
d. It's comfortable.			
e. Students can socialize.			
f. Students stay away from bullying.			

b Read the dialogues in the CHECK THIS OUT! box on the left. Then complete the dialogue with "will or won't".

A: What do you think cars ¹	_be like in
thirty years?	

B: I think cars ²_____ fly.

A :	Really?	How 3	the	air	traffic	be?

B: Cars ⁴ _____ encounter in the air. They

⁵_____ fly at different heights.

A: 6_____ there be traffic lights?

B: No, cars ⁷____have auto-system to stop and start.

A: Where 8_____ we park?

B: We ⁹_____ park. They ¹⁰_____ be in front of the windows of our houses.

c Work in pairs and discuss the given topics below. You can add more topics.

houses ◆ schools ◆ robots ◆ health sector,
etc. in the future.

READING & WRITING



READING 1

Read the text below and match the related pictures with the correct description of inventions in the text. Then write the names of the inventions under the pictures. One picture is extra.







1. c - portable analyser







5.

FOR A BETTER WORLD

A science magazine organized an international competition. It is for encouraging young scientists and engineers aged between 11 and 16. They looked for the best invention ideas that would make the world more liveable. There are too many problems to solve in the world. Wars, refugees, global warming, melting glaciers, animal extinction, unemployment, poverty, and hunger are some of them.

'Would you like to have a chance of changing a small thing and making a big difference?' asked the magazine to the teenagers of the world. Here are some of the invention ideas;

- a Visually impaired people will place the smart lens in their eyes like ordinary ones. They will watch films or videos through the **integrated chip**. The lens will have micro mirrors and scan images to transfer to the brain. These mirrors will be a bridge between visual cortex and images. In a few seconds they can start to watch whatever they want.
- b Do you think that you can understand the feelings of people with special needs? With these virtual reality glasses you will feel and live the same thing with them; you will use a wheel chair instead of your legs, you will see only the deep darkness, or won't hear anything for a while, which will help people to feel more empathy.

There are thousands of people; especially children around the world who are dying of malaria or the curable diseases. One of the reasons behind the deaths is late diagnosis. Doctors who work in far countrysides waste their valuable time to send blood tests to health centres and wait for results for weeks. After

doctors analyse blood with this portable analyser in 15 minutes, it will diagnose the virus that causes the diseases.

d In our bodies, areas at high risk get hotter while fighting with illnesses. This machine will scan the whole body in a short time and find the hot area. So, doctors will locate

the damaged area without an operation. For example, the scanning machine will show the risky veins without angiography.

e This radio wave reaches directly to the **autonomic nervous system** that controls anger and violence. When you release the wave to the crowd in chaos, people won't be angry anymore. Governments will use it to bring peace to the society.

Teenagers dreamed and inventors will try to realize them. All the participants have this common idea that the inventions must be affordable and accessible. Otherwise, humanity will wait for many more years to use them.

Look at the highlighted words in the text and write them to the related category.

Science

Health	S
a	a
b	b
c	c
d	d
Match the words in 1b v	with the definitions
1. to recognize and name	e a disease
2. a very small combining	g electronic material
3. a person who escaped country because of wa	
4. an artificial environm	ent
5. a tube that carries blo	od to the heart
6. a part of the brain tha	t allows you to see
7. a large ice that moves	slowly
8. a disease caused by a ty	pe of mosquito
9. the state of being poor	r
10. the nervous system _	
Read the text again and questions.	answer the following
1. Which inventions are r special needs?	
2. Which inventions are 1	related to diseases?
3. Which inventions can b	e used to have fun?
4. How will visually imp	
5. Why do people die of world?	
6. How will the scanning damaged area?	
7. How will the radio was	
8. What is the participan about their invention want that?	



Issues

Answer the following questions in your own words.

- 1. Which invention in the text do you think is more likely to come true? Why?
- 2. Which inventions did you like most? Why?
- **3.** Which inventions are the most important to the world? Why?
- 4. Write three more global issues apart from the ones mentioned in the text.

SPEAKING 🖼

Work in pairs and discuss your future plans. Ask and answer questions similar to the ones in the example dialogue.

- ◆ summer holiday ◆ investments; money, house...
- social awareness; for children, animals...
- ◆ family/ children ◆ countries you will see
- ◆ city/ country you will live ◆ university/ job
- e.g. A: Where will you spend your summer holiday? **B:** In Antalya.
 - A: What subject will you study at university?
 - **B:** I will study social sciences.

- 3 Look at the pictures below.
- a Say and write what people in the pictures decide to do at the time of speaking. Use the correct form of verbs in the box.
 - help ◆ make ◆ shop ◆ buy



Maggy: These bags are too heavy.
 Thomas: Poor you! I _____ with the

bags.



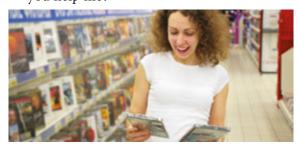
2. Jessica: Look! The fridge is empty and an army is coming for dinner!

Jack: Oh, no! I _____ for you.



3. Melisa: Mum, I'm hungry.

Mom: Ok, honey! I _____ a cake. Will you help me?



4. Merve: What a boring evening it is!

Clara: I have an idea! I _____ a DVD for us.

b	Work in pairs. Read the situations below and
	write dialogues as in Exercise a.

1. You're outside with your friend and your friend is cold.

A:
B:
2. You are late for school. Your father has time to drive you to the school.
A:
B:
3. Your mom is vacuuming the carpets. She is getting tired and there is lots of housework to do.
A:
B:
4. Your mom wants you to go to bed early. However, you decide to study.
A:
D.

4 WRITING

'Would you like to have a chance of changing a small thing and making a big difference?' Write your creative idea for an invention that will make the world more liveable. Write between 50-100 words.

Write

- the purpose of the invention
- what it is
- who it is for
- how it works

-		

5 Read Yokomo's letter to herself for future.

Hi future Yokomo,

I hope you're well. I'm 15 years old now and the year is 2016. I live in London with my family. I go to a public school in London. I love Maths and Geography. I'm interested in computer programmes, games, adventure books, detective stories, listening to rock music, playing the guitar, and playing chess. I like going out with my friends and brothers.

I will open my letter 10 years later. I don't know what will change in my life in 10 years, but I have lots of goals and dreams in my mind. First of all, this summer I will visit my hometown in Japan and see my grandparents. Next year I will participate in the national chess competition and I will go to a sport centre to be fit.

I will graduate from the school with a high grade 3 years later. If I have good marks, I will have a better chance to get into university. At the university I will set up a rock band and we will sing our own songs in a club.

In 5 years, I will climb to Mount Everest, but not to the top. I will be a professional in chess. I will read 10 books each year.

In 10 years, I will be a computer engineer, but not a usual one. I will create new programmes and games to sell. They will be very popular. I will earn so much money that I will run my own business. I will buy a big house with a pool and I will marry.

I hope to realize most of my projects. See you after 10 years from now.

b	Use your notes in the table and
	write about Yokomo's current life,
	future goals, and intentions for
	the future.

e.g.	visit her hometown in the near
	future
	(holiday)
	(school)
	(career)
	(hobbies/ interests)
	(family)

c Write a letter to your future self about your future goals and intentions. Write 230-250 words.

Greet your future self.

- Paragraph 1: your current life
 Write your goals and intentions;
- Paragraph 2: in the near future
- ◆ Paragraph 3: in 3 years
- Paragraph 4: in 5 years
- Paragraph 5: in 10 years

Write your final words for yourself.

a Based on Yokomo's letter, fill in the table below with short notes.

	her current life	near Future	in 3 Years	in 5 years	in 10 years
holiday		visit hometown			
school					
career					
hobbies/ interests					
family	live with family				

LEAD IN

Answer the following questions.

- 1. What's the weather like today?
- 2. What was the weather like yesterday?
- 3. What is your favourite season? Why? What's the weather like in that season?
- 4. What kind of weather do you dislike? Why?

LISTENING & SPEAKING 4 🌶



VOCABULARY

- Match the pictures with the words given in the box.
 - **b.** snowy **c.** sunny **d.** windy **a**. rainy
 - e. stormy **f**. partly cloudy **g.** cloudy
 - i. rain mixed with snow **h.** rainy with lightning





5. 6.



8. 9.

- Match the definitions with the words.
 - 1. shower ___ a. cold
 - **2.** chilly ___ **b.** containing a lot of water in the rain
 - 3. humid ___ c. covered in water
 - **4.** mild ___ **d.** a short period of rain
 - 5. wet ___ e. not very cold or not as cold as usual

LISTENING (Track 4))

- Listen to two people talking about the weather in Istanbul. Write true (T), false (F) or doesn't say (DS).
 - **1.** Brittany lives in İstanbul. ___
 - **2.** Monica is going to live in İstanbul. ___
 - 3. Monica asks for Brittany's help about renting a house. ___
 - **4.** It is winter at the time of speaking. ___
 - **5.** It rains a lot in spring in Istanbul.
 - **6.** Monica likes hot weather.
 - 7. According to Brittany, the weather is nice in autumn. ___
- Listen to the dialogue again and complete the sentences with the correct words.
 - _____ is the weather over there? The _____ is 20°C degree today.
 - 2. The weather _____ says that it is going to be nice in April.
 - 3. What is the typical weather of this
 - 4. _____ are common and nights are
 - 5. It _____ but it is not extremely cold.
 - 6. It is sometimes _____ hot and _____.
 - 7. Does it often _____ in autumn?
 - 8. Autumn is _____ and cool.

REMEMBER THIS!

How's the weather? What's the weather like?

It's raining. It's snowy. It's windy. It's humid.

3 SPEAKING 🖼

- a Say 'what the weather is like' in the cities below. Use at least two words to describe each city.
 - hot ◆ warm ◆ cold ◆ chilly ◆ rainy ◆ mild
 - freezing cold ◆ humid ◆ cool ◆ foggy
 - ◆ snowy ◆ sunny ◆ windy ◆ stormy
 - ◆ partly cloudy ◆ rainy with lightning



e.g London <u>is rainy and chilly.</u>



1. San Francisco



2. Sydney



3. Paris



4. İstanbul



5. Pisa

5 PRONUNCIATION (Track 5)))

a Listen and repeat the words in the box. Pay attention to the difference between the pronunciations of the words.

/æ/	/^/
cap	cup
hat	hut
track	truck
match	much
ankle	uncle
fan	fun
cat	cut
Sam	some
chat	chart
can	can't
ran	run

- b Listen to the dialogues. Circle the word you hear. (Track 6)
 - 1. He wants to buy a hat/hut.
 - 2. There was a big cut/ cat on his shoulder.
 - 3. He is looking for his cap/ cup.
 - 4. Which one is your hat/hut?
 - **5.** They **run/ ran** in the garden all day long.
 - **6.** Are those **caps/ cups** yours?
- 4 Look at the map and the weather symbols.



a Write and say how the weather is in the cities on the map;

1	Exmouth	
т.	EXIIIOUIII	

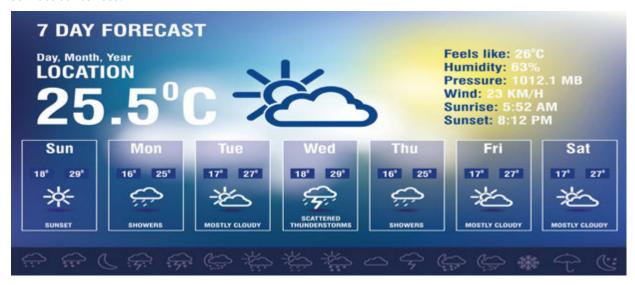
•	Melhourn		

- 3. There ______ in Sydney.
- **4.** Perth ______.
- 5. Alice Springs _____
- b Compare the weather conditions in your country with Australia in winter.

READING & WRITING

1 READING

- a Look at the title of the text and the report below. Answer the questions.
 - 1. What is a weather forecast?
 - **2.** How often do you follow the weather forecast?
 - 3. Do you choose your daily clothing according to the weather forecast? How? Give examples.
 - 4. Do you change your plans according to the weather forecast? How? Give examples.
- b Read the weekly weather forecast report of London and complete the paragraphs with the correct sentences.



WEATHER FORECAST

- a. Sea waves will rise offshore.
- **b.** Difference between day and night temperatures will reach 10°C.
- **c.** It's the warmest day of the week.
- **d.** But don't rush to take off your jackets.
- e. If you have a weekend plan, you're lucky.
- f. It will be a chilly and rainy morning.

c Look at the activities below. Tick (✔) the activities you can do on each day by looking at the weather forecast on page 204.

	Sunday	Monday	Tuesday	Wednesday	Thursday	Friday	Saturday
Have a picnic							
Go snowboarding							
Walk under the rain							
Swim in the lake							
Ride a bike							
Go camping							
Observe thunderstorms							

- d Review the table you filled in above. Talk about the reasons for your choices.
- **e.g.** I prefer to have a picnic on Sunday and Saturday because it is sunny and warm in these days. We can stay outside for a long time in these days. Monday is a good day to...
- 2 Look at the CHECK THIS OUT! box and read the sentences with "get" and "take".
- a Find the phrases with "get" and "take" in the forecast in Exercise 1b and write them below.

1	2
3	4

- b Complete the sentences with the correct form of "take or get".
 - 1. A: I <u>took</u> a test yesterday.

B: How was it?

A: I hope, I will ______ a good mark.

2. A: I'm very tired.

B: I think you need to _____a hot bath.

3. A: Can I ______ some photos of the museum?

B: I'm sorry madam. You're not allowed to do it.

4. A: It's _____ cooler. Can you ____ my coat, please?B: Ok! How long will it ____ him to come here? We're going to

_____ cold while waiting him.

CHECK THIS OUT!

Get/ take

Can you get some tea? (buy)

Can you get the chair for me? (bring)

It's getting darker. (become)

Did you get my e-mail? (receive)

I'm getting married tomorrow.

How can I get to the library from here? (arrive)

Will you take your guitar? (move something)

Take off your jacket, it's very hot.

It **takes** two days to make a pottery. (talking about time)

Take a bus/ a taxi/ a bath/ a shower/ medicine/ a photo/ an exam/ a message/ a break/ a risk



4 Linda and Merve are talking about the following week considering the weather forecast. Complete the sentences with "will" or "be going to" and the verbs given in the parentheses.

Linda: I've checked the weather forecast and planned my whole week. However, it is a bit disappointing.

Merve: Why do you think so?

Linda: The weather will be cooler than I expected. Anyway, it's not a big deal. Whatever the weather is, I always find something to do.

Merve: So, what is your plan for Sunday?
What ¹______ you _____ (do)?

Linda: The weather forecast says that it ²_____ (be) a sunny day. So Mark, Karen and I ³____ (have) a picnic by the lake. Would you like to come with us?

Merve: Of course, I have nothing better to do. It ⁴_____ (be) the first picnic of the year for me. What about Monday?

Linda: It's not a nice day to go out. We ⁵_____ (play) board games with my classmates.

Merve: It's a good idea. I ⁶______ (suggest) playing to my roommate. I'm looking forward to hearing your plan for Tuesday.

Linda: I promise you ⁷______ (like) it. It's a family day. I ⁸_____ (pick up) a film and my mother ⁹_____ (set) the PC in the garden in the afternoon. Then my father and sister ¹⁰_____ (cook) spaghetti

bolog	maise for us.			
10	P-Zee	3	7	T
100				
	Pa	E MU		
>/		1	IA	
	•			
	•	W	371	

Merve: Unfortunately, I ¹¹
(not have) a family day.
Linda: And Wednesday. It's the darkest day of the week. What shall we do on dark days?
Merve: I don't know. What?
Linda: Go to the cinema, of course.
Merve: But you ¹² (watch) a film on Tuesday, too.
Linda: Oh yes, you're right. It's too much even for me. I ¹³ (change) my Wednesday plan.
Merve: I think you ¹⁴ (stay) home on Friday and Saturday and study for the upcoming exam. Right?
Linda: No, because I finished studying. I saved the best activity for the last. I (fly) to Manchester to
visit my friend, Cecil. We ¹⁶ (spend) a great weekend. I've already planned everything.

REMEMBER THIS!

A: What's your holiday plan?

Merve: I can't believe you!

B: We're going to stay in a 5 star hotel with my family.

A: Is it expensive?

B: Not really because I've booked our room a month ago.

A: What's your holiday plan?

B: I will go abroad.

A: Oh, nice. Where will you go?

B: I'm not sure, but somewhere cool.

CHECK THIS OUT!

A: Do you think that tomorrow will be a holiday for students due to heavy snow?

B: Yes, in my opinion it will.

A: Do you agree that summer is the best season in Adana?

B: I totally disagree with you. I think it's the worst one because of the showers and high temperature.

That's for sure!, Absolutely!, I guess so!, I'm not so sure about it!, No chance!

5 SPEAKING

Study the CHECK THIS OUT! box on page 206. Then match the statements/ questions below with the replies.

- 1. I think the lesson wasn't boring.
- **2.** Houses will be cheaper in the future.
- **3.** We will take pills instead of food in the future.
- **4.** Do you agree that the exams were hard?
- **5.** Do you think that television makes people dumb?
- **6.** I think there will be no homeless people in the future. Don't you think so?
- **A.** That's for sure! I couldn't solve the problems.
- **B.** I don't agree at all! They will be more expensive.
- **C.** Yes, in my opinion people shouldn't watch it.
- **D.** No, I don't. There will be much more.
- **E.** I don't think so! Eating is a pleasure for many people.

F.	I	agree.	Ι	reall	ly	enjo	yed	it.
----	---	--------	---	-------	----	------	-----	-----

1	2	3
	_	_

REMEMBER THIS!

Starting a Conversation

What a nice/ beautiful day, isn't it?

What a terrible weather!

What a lovely day!

I think it will rain today.

The weather forecast said it will be a nice day.

Can you believe all of this rain we have?

Kevin: Hi Sue. What a lovely day, isn't it?

Sue: Oh yes. I like this time of the

year. Everywhere is white.

Kevin: Right. We're planning to go skiing

at the weekend.

Sue: Nice plan. Enjoy yourself. Anyway, I'd better go before the library closes.

Kevin: Ok, see you later.

6 Read the REMEMBER THIS! box on the left and CHECK THIS OUT! box on page 206. Work in pairs. You are two strangers at a bus stop talking about the weather. Agree/ disagree with your partner and tell your reasons. Use the clues below.

Student A: Start the conversation expressing your opinion about the weather.

Student B: Agree/ Disagree. Tell your reason.

Student A: Tell about the activities you can do under that weather condition.

Student B: Disagree with the idea. Tell your opinion about the activity. Tell your own plan and say goodbye.

Student A: Say goodbye.

Student A: _	
Student B: _	
Student B: _	
Student A: _	

7 WRITING

a Talk about how the weather affects your life. Take notes about what you wear, eat, and do under the weather conditions.

	RAINY	SNOWY	SUNNY	WINDY
Clothing:				
Activity:				

- b Write a paragraph (between 30-50 words) about what you wear and do under each weather condition and whether you like/ dislike those conditions with your reasons. Use your notes above and the connectors such as "and, but" or "because".
- **e.g.** I don't like rainy days because I feel depressed in rainy weather. When I feel depressed, I eat too much chocolate. I wear my pyjamas, put on my slippers, and watch TV with my family.





UNIT 11

SCHOOL LIFE

11A At School11B Educational Rights and Manners11C Liberty and Independence are My Character

In this unit you will be...

- talking about obligation and prohibition.
- taking part in a conversation in everyday life situations.
- using the language both in formal/informal settings.
- talking about national, moral, and cultural values.
- using verb patterns.
- talking about national festivals.

LEAD IN

Answer the following questions.

- 1. What's your favourite school subject? Why do you like it?
- 2. What are the things you like about your lessons, friends, and facilities at school?
- 3. What do you and your classmates do during your lunch break?

LISTENING & SPEAKING

1 VOCABULARY

- a Write the school subjects under the pictures.
 - ◆ English ◆ Maths ◆ Geography ◆ Chemistry ◆ History ◆ Biology ◆ Literature ◆ Music ◆ Gym ◆ Physics









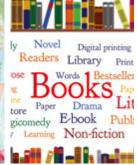


1. ______ 2. _____ 3. _____ 4. _____ 5. ____











6. ______ 7. _____ 8. _____ 9. _____ 10. _____

What about you? Complete the sentences with school subjects.

My favourite school subjects is/are ¹______. I'm good at ²______.

I should study more on ³______. I'd like to be better at ⁴______.

2 SPEAKING

Answer the following questions.

- **1.** Do you have a lunchroom or cafeteria in your school?
- **2.** Where do you eat your lunch at school?



3 VOCABULARY

Complete the sentences with the words in the boxes.



- ◆ sports hall ◆ floors ◆ 40 ◆ court ◆ library ◆ lab
- ◆ canteen ◆ language ◆ playground ◆ room

THE FACILITIES IN MY SCHOOL

My high school is old, but wonderful. It has four
¹ , with
a basketball ³ , a volleyball court,
and a football field. Also we have a 4
where we do Physical Education lessons when
it's rainy or too cold outside. In my school there
are about 5 classrooms, a computer
room, a 6 for science, a lab for
chemistry and physics, a music ⁷ ,
and three foreign ⁸ classrooms. The
⁹ is not very big but it has a lot of
books and a few computers which we can use at
break time. In the 10 we have lunch.
I like my school, friends, and teachers.

4 LISTENING (Track 1)))

a Tick (✔) the words you hear while listening to the conversation between the interviewer Philip and the high school student John.

Biology	daily	discuss
ancient	calculate	History
leisure	average	archaeologists
future	fascinating	brother
year	documentaries	hang

b Listen to the conversation again and decide if the statements are true (T) or false (F).

- 1. John likes Geography the most. ____
- 2. The fascinating part of his favourite subject is the human. ____
- 3. He doesn't like Math because it makes him feel anxious. ___
- 4. John thinks that Maths is helpful in daily life. ____
- According to John, archaeologists have an important role to know more about the secrets of history.
- 6. He always agrees with his parents all the way. ____
- 7. He never spends time watching TV. ___



- c Listen to the conversation again and answer the following questions.
 - 1. Why does John like History?
 - 2. What school subject doesn't John like?
 - 3. What would John like to study at university?

5 SPEAKING

Work in pairs. Talk about your school subjects and facilities of your school.

6 Do the questionnaire. Then share your ideas with your partner.

- 1. Which of these activities do you do in your spare time when you are not at school?
 - a. team sports **b.** any activity
 - **c.** visit friends **d.** arts
- **2.** Which club are you attending this year?
 - **b.** Chess Club a. Sports Club
 - **d.** other c. Maths Club
- 3. Where is the club meeting?
 - **a.** in the classroom
 - **c.** in the sports hall
 - **d.** in the canteen
- **b.** in the lab
- 5. How often do you attend club meetings? **a.** once a month **b.** every week

school clubs?

c. friendship

a. a healthier life

c. three times a term **d.** twice a year

4. Which one isn't a benefit of attending social

b. cooperation

d. getting a job

LISTENING (Track 2)))

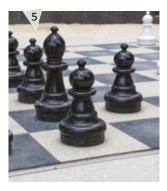
- Match the pictures with the school clubs given in the box. a
- Listen to the students and write which clubs they are in. Choose the clubs from the box.
 - __ Eco Club __ Chess Club __ Philosophy Club __ Art Club
 - __ Culture and Literature Club __ Sports Club __ ICT Club __ Travel and Tourism Club

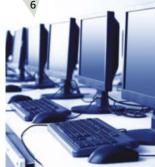




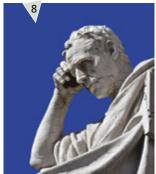












- 1. NORA: _____
- **2.** BRIAN:
- **3.** SHARON: _____

READING & WRITING



Sandra is a high school student. What do Sandra and her parents have to or don't have to do? Write the prompts in the correct columns.

- limit time spending on computer to one hour
- go shopping
- ask permission before going anywhere
- pay the bills
- do homework
- go to work

SANDRA has to
1
2
3
HER PARENTS have to
1
2
2

- pay house rent
- obey school rules
- attend parent meeting at school
- earn money
- study for university entrance exam
- attend school

SANDRA doesn't have to
1
2
3
HER PARENTS don't have to
1
2
3

Make sentences about your school regulations.

STUDENTS don't have to mustn't have to leave class when the bell rings for break time eat and drink in school cafeteria interrupt other students' learning use mobile phones in the classroom wear a school uniform attend school regularly

SPEAKING 🖼

- Why do we need school rules? What happens if you break one of the rules?
- Talk about your school rules. Share your ideas with class.

CHECK THIS OUT!

 We use 'have to' to express a strong obligation;

Astronauts have to wear space-suits in the space.

Paul feels very bad. He has to stay in bed today.

- We use 'don't have to' to state that there is NO obligation or necessity. You don't have to know everything. It is holiday. Kate doesn't have to go to school.
- We use 'must' to express necessity; She is ill, so she **must** see the doctor. We must make our hotel reservations.
- We use 'mustn't' to express prohibition;

It's late, you **mustn't** make so much noise. Students mustn't run in school corridors.

4 READING

- a Read the dialogue between two teenagers. Circle the "phrases of necessity", "obligation", and, "prohibition".
- b Work in pairs. Write a similar dialogue and practice.

THE WORLD OF TEENAGERS

Robert: Hi, Nancy. How's it going? Oh, you look worried. Is everything OK?

Nancy: Not really. I'm a little bit worried about the rules of my new school.

Robert: Me, too. There are so many rules in my school as well. And if you break the rules, you get punishment immediately.

Nancy: I see. Rules are everywhere. What are the rules of your school?

Robert: For example, we can't use mobile phones in school. It is strictly forbidden to use them, especially in classes.

Nancy: It is the same in my school too but I think it is better not to use them in classes because they can be really distracting.

Robert: I totally agree. I can concentrate on classes much better without my mobile. Moreover, we cannot hand in our homework after the deadline. Our teachers are really very careful about the deadlines. They always say that we must be punctual in order to be successful in real life.

Nancy: It is the same in my school too. Our teachers want us to be organised and punctual, too. I know they are right, but it is sometimes difficult to be on time.

Robert: Moreover my school is very sensitive about hygiene. We have to keep the school environment free from litter.

Nancy: I think this rule is also very necessary.

Robert: Hey, we were complaining about the rules a few minutes ago.

Nancy: Yes, they make me feel stressed.

Robert: But we said that they are necessary, didn't we?

Nancy: Yes, we did.

Robert: So what is the problem? I think we must accept that the school rules are all for the sake of students. We should stop complaining about them. Can you imagine a school without any rules?

Nancy: Not of course. I know we have to obey them for our own sake, but they can sometimes be hard to follow.

5 SPEAKING ₩

What are the other DOs and DON'Ts at school and at home? Share your ideas with the class.

6 PRONUNCIATION (Track 3)))

- a Pay attention to falling and rising intonation in asking Wh- questions.
 - **1.** The final word usually gets more emphasis.

What time is the film?

2. For repetition/ clarification of certain information.

What time is the film

3. For showing surprise.

What time is the film?

b Listen and practice three types of falling and rising intonation like in 1, 2, and 3 on the following question.

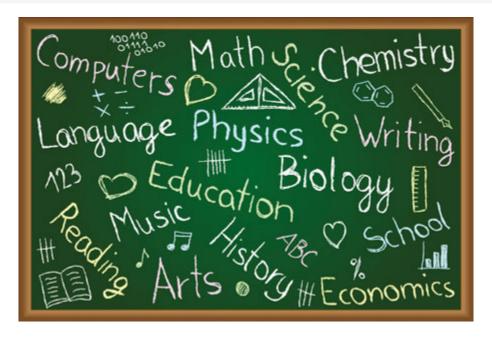
When do you visit them?



7 VOCABULARY

Match the school subjects with their definitions.

- ◆ ART ◆ MATHS ◆ MUSIC ◆ GEOGRAPHY ◆ BIOLOGY
- ◆ PHYSICS ◆ CHEMISTRY ◆ HISTORY ◆ PHYSICAL EDUCATION



- 1. The study of composing or performing vocal or instrumental sound is ______
- 2. The study of instructions in physical exercise and sports is _____
- **3.** The study of life, plant forms, and the natural world is _____
- **4.** The study of mechanics, energy, and motion is _____
- 5. The study of land forms, atmosphere, and human population of the earth is _____
- **6.** The study of the cultures and countries in the past is _____
- 7. The study of productions of paintings, drawings, or sculpture is ______
- **8.** The study of solids, liquids, gasses, and the periodic table is ______
- **9.** The study of numbers and calculations is _____

8 WRITING

- a Write the activities students do in the following facilities in your school.
- e.g. 1. library: Students can read or borrow books.
 - 2. ICT lab: ____
 - 3. medical service: _____
 - 4 gym:
 - 5. cafeteria:
 - **6.** counselling service: _____
 - 7. teachers' department: _____
- b Work in groups and prepare wall charts about class/ school rules to display in the classroom.

LEAD IN



Answer the following questions.

- 1. Is primary, secondary, and high school education compulsory in every part of the world?
- 2. What do you think the phrase "having a right to education" mean?

LISTENING & SPEAKING



1 VOCABULARY

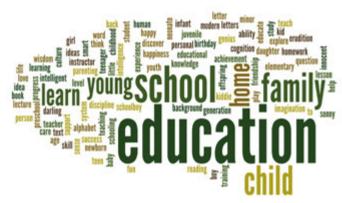
Complete the sentences with the words in the box.

- personality
- human
- great

- guarantee
- primary
- social



- 1. The right to education is vital for the economic, ______, and cultural development of all societies.
- 2. Education begins with ______ knowledge.
- Education is a form of learning that is necessary for the development of one's _____ and identity.
- 4. Education is one of the _____ rights. All children must be able to go to school.
- 5. Most countries _____ children's rights to education. They focus their efforts on primary instruction.
- 6. Education plays a _____ role in the life of everyone.



- Which prompts listed below are related to the right to education? Put a tick (♥) next to them and share your ideas with your partner.
 - __ a. inviting classmates for a birthday party
 - __ b. traditional school building
 - __ c. have respect for others' opinions
 - __ **d.** basic learning needs
 - **__ e.** free compulsory education
 - __ **f.** planting flowers in the school garden
 - **__ g.** participate in school life
 - __ h. obeying safety rules at school
 - __ i. study and do homework
 - __ j. free books and other instructional materials
 - __ k. learning in a safe environment
 - __ **l.** flexible educational programmes



3 LISTENING (Track 4)))

Listen to the text about high schools in Japan and write true (T) or false (F) next to the statements.



- 1. Mihoko's school has similar rules as in the other countries. ____
- 2. Mihoko has to wear a school uniform, but she is free for shoes. ____
- 3. They must always paint their fingernails. ____
- 4. They mustn't be at home after 9 pm. ____
- 5. Japanese students have a lot of accessories to wear at school. ____
- 6. They must be by 8:20 pm at school. ____
- 7. School social clubs are important to Japanese high school students. ____



4 SPEAKING 🖼

Answer the following questions and share your ideas with the class.

- 1. What do you think of home schooling?
- 2. What's the best way to learn a foreign language?
- 3. Why do some people have more difficulty than others when learning a language?
- 4. Some people say that they can understand, but not speak foreign languages. Do you agree? Why, why not?
- 5. What languages would you like to learn in the future? Why?

5 READING

Read the paragraph below and fill in the blanks with the phrases and sentences given in the box. There is one extra.

- **A.** being a good, successful, and social person and citizen in life
- **B.** the importance of education
- **C.** teachers, parents, family members, friends, and other related people
- D. perhaps it takes
- **E.** food which is necessary for a healthy body
- F. teachers, parents, and my dear friends

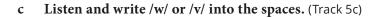
First of all, hello to our respected ¹____. I would like to talk about ²____. Our home is the first place of education where we learn how to behave to others. As you know, education plays a great role in the life of everyone. Getting a good education is very necessary to achieve success and a happy life just like ³___. As well as providing physical and mental standard, it develops the personality of the people. We grow and develop more in life. The first aim of getting a good education is ⁴___. In such a competitive world, we can provide solutions to all problems. We must form our habits of learning from our ⁵___ in our life. The members of the family, community, and country are thankful to well-educated people.



6 PRONUNCIATION))

The consonantal sounds "w" and "v"

- **a Listen and repeat the following words to practise the sound /V/:** (Track 5a) voice, video, very, village, vampire, vase, visa, volume, volunteer, vacuum
- **b** Listen and repeat the following words to practise the sound /W/: (Track 5b) word, whale, when, waste, weather, which, warm, wind, winter, week, awake







7 GAME

While you are watching the video, your teacher will pause at random. Talk about what is happening on the scene.

8 Describe and write what the high school students are doing in the pictures below. Then, share your ideas with your partner.



A			
н			_
I.			

9 SPEAKING

Look at the pictures below and talk about what people are doing.

10 Look at the pictures below again, and say whether these manners are GOOD or BAD by explaining your reasons.





.

2.





3. _____







5.

6. _____





7. _

8.



9. _____

11 SPEAKING 🖼

Are the following manners good or bad? Put a (\checkmark) for the good and (X) for the bad next to each and talk about your reasons in class.

- ☐ 1. chewing food with your mouth closed
- **2.** not waiting in the queue
- 3. interrupting people
- 4. pointing at someone
- 5. waiting your turn before you speak
 - **6.** making fun of people
- 7. when you phone someone, saying who you are
- → 8. knocking on closed doors before entering
- **9.** covering your mouth when you cough or sneeze
- 10. making a noise while eating
- ☐ 11. playing loud music in public places
- 12. saying "please" and "thank you"





READING & WRITING



1 **READING**

- Read the text quickly and choose the best title for the text.
 - a. Fish and Chips
 - b. Fishing
 - c. The Fisherman and The Sea
- b Underline the verb patterns in the text.
- e.g. I like swimming. or I want to swim.

I love fishing very much. When I was a teenager, I used to go fishing with my father twice a week. We liked walking through the fields and finding a safe place to sit down and cook the fish we caught.

Now I try to go to the rivers once a week. Last month I decided to join a fishing competition. I wanted to try something different and hoped to catch a different kind of fish. I thought it would be better to drive to the place that the competition took place, so a friend and I went by my car. There was a big crowd. My friend suggested looking for a place under a big tree and promised to find a big shade. Soon we camped in an area where the fish loved swimming.

Suddenly my friend jumped into the river, and started to swim. I didn't mind it because I expected him to catch an enormous fish. However, we went back home with a huge Wellington boot in the evening. I loved having this experience, and I recommend doing it to everybody.



CHECK THIS OUT!

GERUND and INFINITIVE

We use **gerunds** (verb + ing):

- After certain verbs; She finished writing the letter.
- After prepositions; I am interested in collecting stamps.
- · As the subject of a sentence; Swimming is a good exercise.

We use infinitives ((to) + infinitive):

- After certain verbs: They decided to go to the movies.
- · After many adjectives; It's difficult to get up early.
- To show purpose; He left home early to catch the train.
- Infinitive without 'to': My parents let me go out at night. After modal verbs; We can't buy a new car.

2 WRITING

Write eight positive or negative sentences using the phrases in the boxes. Add some words when necessary.

I	
My father	
My mother	•
My classma	ate(s)

be happy promise mind let like

talk/ to talk/ talking about people borrow/to borrow/ borrowing belongings go/ to go/ going on holiday eat/ to eat/ eating snacks help/ to help/ helping for homework buy/ to buy/ buying a new mobile phone

e.g.	1. I	don't	like	talking	about	people.	•
------	-------------	-------	------	---------	-------	---------	---

2.	
8	

3 Read the following text and fill in the blanks with the words in the boxes.

managi	ng enou	gh
affect	waste	less
high	flexible	
samo	e balar	nce

Manage Your Time

	3	
10 9 8	11 12 1 2 3 7 6 5 ⁴	

4 Complete the sentences below by using verb patterns, and giving true information about your life.

e.g	"I never want to walk in the rain." or "I nev	er like
	walking in the rain."	

1. I never promise	Family
Career 2. I don't mind	The difference of the second
3. I spend a lot of time	Life
4. I usually avoid	leasure
5. I sometimes decide	



5 WRITING

Write a paragraph between 85 and 100 words by answering the following questions.

- 1. Do you have to wear a uniform at your school?
- 2. Do you like wearing a uniform? Why? Why not?
- 3. Do you think wearing a school uniform is a good idea? Why, Why not?

LIBERTY AND INDEPENDENCE ARE MY CHARACTER

M. Kemal ATATÜRK

LEAD IN



Answer the following questions.

- 1. What are some of the Turkish national festivals?
- 2. How do you feel about attending national festivals and celebrations?
- **3.** How do people celebrate them?

LISTENING & SPEAKING



Talk about the pictures below. Which special occasion are they illustrating? What are the people doing?









LISTENING (Track 6)

Listen to four high school students and write the names of the Turkish national festivals each talks about.

National Sov	vereignty and	l Children'	s L)ay
--------------	---------------	-------------	-----	-----

Republic Day

Victory Day

Commemoration of Atatürk, Youth and Sports Day

Student A	
Student B	
Student C	
Ct., J.,,t D	



- Listen again and fill in the blanks with the words in the box.
 - ◆ ceremonies ◆ celebrating ◆ declaration ◆ meaningful ◆ Independence
 - **1.** It's the beginning of the War of ______.
 - 2. Please join us at this ______ event.
 - **3.** Many people are _____ this day by attending military parades in the streets.
 - **4.** Children are happy with these joyful _____ and festivals.
 - **5.** Today is the anniversary of the ______ of the Turkish Republic.

- 3 Talk about a national day that you celebrate in your country each year.
- 4 Match the following dates with the events.











DATES

- **a.** 19th May
- **b.** 23rd April
- c. 30th August
- **d.** 10th November
- e. 29th October

EVENTS

- **1.** National Sovereignty and Children's Day
- __ 2. Mustafa Kemal Atatürk's death
- __ 3. Youth and Sports Day
- __ **4.** Republic Day
- __ **5.** Victory Day
- 5 What was the recent national festival which was celebrated in Turkey?
- **6** Complete the text with "too" or "enough".

Cihan will take a(n) 1______ difficult Maths exam on Wednesday next week. But on the same day there is a football match between Beşiktaş which he supports and Galatasaray. It's a derby, so probably the stadium will be 2_____ crowded. That means the tickets will increase in price. He isn't rich 3____ to afford expensive tickets. Fortunately, he has some extra money from last week. Although he is 4____ anxious, he is carefree 5____ to go to the match instead of studying his exam! He doesn't have 6____ time to study. Icing on the cake, his father is 7____ strict about his lessons.

CHECK THIS OUT!

Too and Enough

Too and **enough** states degree with adjectives.

- Too means more than what is needed.
 I can't work today. It's too hot.
- Enough means all right.
 He's intelligent enough to pass the test.
- Enough may be before nouns.
 We have enough money to buy this car.
- 7 Answer the following questions using "too" or "enough".
 - 1. Why can't elephants jump?
 - **2.** Why couldn't Harry solve the problem?
 - **3.** Why can't you touch the ceiling?
 - **4.** Why can't you buy an aeroplane?
 - 5. Why can't Jack lift 100 kilos?



READING & WRITING



READING

Read, scan the text, and find out how many national holidays are mentioned.

OUR NATIONAL DAYS

Nationals Festivals are the greatest days that our nation celebrates together. When we celebrate our national days we remember our ancestors' victories and we understand the importance of their sacrifice. The public hang Turkish flags everywhere in our National Festivals.

Mustafa Kemal Atatürk, the founder of the Republic of Turkey, dedicated The National Sovereignty and Children's Day to the children of our country. We celebrate it on April 23. It's the establishment date of the Turkish Grand National Assembly. Turkish schoolchildren take seats in the Parliament on this day and symbolically govern the country. Republic Day is the anniversary of the declaration of the Turkish Republic on October 29, 1923. After the victory in the War of Independence, the Turkish Parliament proclaimed the new Turkish state as a republic. Public administration buildings, schools, post offices, and many small businesses are usually closed on this day. Schoolchildren perform theatre sketches, poetry readings, and traditional Turkish dances.

19th May, Commemoration of Atatürk, Youth and Sports Day is an annual national festival because Atatürk arrived in Samsun on May 19, 1919, so it's the starting date of the Turkish War of Independence. Young Turkish athletes carry the national flag from Samsun to Ankara in about 10 days. The Turkish president accepts the flag at a ceremony on May 19. Several sports events take place on this day all around Turkey.

Turkish War of Independence ended with the victory of Turkish Armies in Dumlupınar Battle on August 26-30, 1922. Victory Day is celebrated with ceremonies in every part of Turkey on August 30 every year. Air forces celebrate the day with demonstration flights and military schools hold annual graduation ceremonies.

Mark the statements as true (T) or false (F).

- 1. We celebrate the festivals with all nations.
- 2. Atatürk gave Children's Day to the children as a gift.
- 3. The Turkish parliament declared the Turkish Republic on August 30. ____
- 4. Atatürk arrived in Samsun and ended the Turkish War of Independence. ____
- 5. Athletes arrive in Ankara and the Turkish president gives them a Turkish flag. _

Answer the questions about the text above.

- 1. What is the aim of each festival mentioned in the text?
- 2. What do Turkish schoolchildren do on The National Sovereignty and Children's Day?
- 3. Whom do the athletes take the flag to?
- 4. Which battle ended the Turkish Independence War?

2 A good classmate... Choose the words and phrases in the box to write in the correct column.

- ♦ honest tell the truth make fun of people a bully use great manners thoughtful responsible
- ◆ rude ◆ annoy people ◆ share ◆ mean ◆ hurt someone ◆ kind ◆ gossip ◆ use quiet voice ◆ impatient

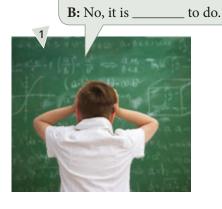
	DOES	
1		
2		
3		
4		
l .		

	DOESN'T
1	
2	
3	
4	

]	S	
1			
2			
3			
4			

	ISN'T
1	
2	
3	
4	

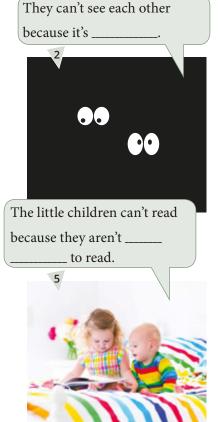
- 3 Share your choices with your partner and try to add more words or phrases orally.
- 4 Complete the sentences with "too" or "enough" and the correct adjectives.

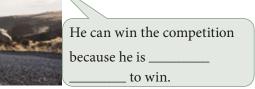


A: Can he do this calculation?

He doesn't want to study because he isn't _____ to study.







- 5 Fill in the blanks with the correct words "too, enough, too much, too many".
 - 1. There were _____ questions to answer.
 - 2. I couldn't buy the sweater because it was _____ expensive.
 - **3.** He does not have _____ time to do his homework.
 - **4.** Do you have _____ money to go abroad?
 - **5.** The film is _____ boring to watch. Let's leave the cinema early.
 - **6.** There aren't _____ shops in our town.
 - 7. The room wasn't warm ______, so I turned the heating on.

6 READING

Read the text and answer the questions below.

Social Values

Every nation has its special values. These values depend on different social, cultural, religious, and economical situations. However, there are also some common points on different values across different nations.

One of the basic Turkish national values is knowledge about history. The knowledge about history is the memory of the society. A nation that does not know its history has no future. Morality is another important value of Turkish society. Teaching moral values begins in the family and it continues in all educational stages of life. According to Turkish values, religion is one of the values of providing unity. In addition, language is a basic important value and the nation must protect it. There are many other values common in Turkish culture. For example, Turkish society always respects patriotism, love for one's country. Turkish people are hospitable, so they like entertaining their guests. Turkish society believes that being helpful is important for overcoming difficulties. Turkish people honour and respect elders. Protecting their honour is one of the main goals of Turkish people.



- What are basic national values?
- 2. Which values hold a society together?
- 3. If you see an elderly person on the bus, do you offer your seat? Why, why not?
- 4. Why must people have knowledge about the history of their country?
- 5. How do you protect your native language?
- 6. What is patriotism?

- 7 Look at the elements of values in the box and put them in the right category.
 - ◆ good manners ◆ citizenship ◆ neighbourhood
 - language ◆ tradition ◆ honour ◆ hospitality
 - ♦ knowledge of history justice liberty
 - ◆ customs ◆ loyalty ◆ respect

• patriotism • folk-dan	ace
MORAL 1 2 3 4 5	NATIONAL 1 2 3 4 5 Caring show Protection of the point of
SUCCEED ALL AD ROUR WIN HONOUR OFFORTUNE SERVICE SERVI	CULTURAL 1 2 3
HISTORY	

8 Talk about the values above considering your own country.

9 WRITING

Write a formal and polite letter to the school administration about your needs and wishes. Apply basic capitalization, spelling, and punctuation rules when writing.



Dear Mr,
Open your letter with an explanation of why you are writing the letter
Add any details in the next paragraph or two
Close the letter with any necessary items
Best Regards,
Write your Name, and sign





UNIT 12

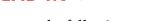
DETECTIVE STORIES

12A Crime 1 12B Crime 2 12C In Court

In this unit you will be...

- asking for detailed information.
- describing past activities.
- talking about sequential actions.
- describing people and places in detail.
- expressing common responses.
- telling stories.

LEAD IN 🖳



- Answer the following questions.

 1. What comes to your mind when you
 - 1. What comes to your mind when you see the drawing on the right?
 - 2. What do you think his job is? In which situations do you see him?

LISTENING & SPEAKING



1 VOCABULARY (Track 1)

Listen to the conversation between special agent, David Serval and journalist Susan Clark. Then, match the words with the definitions.



2 LISTENING (Track 2)))

a Listen to the dialogue and write the missing words.

A: Piccadilly Police Station... Do you want me to 1______ you?

B: I'd like to report a 2______ near Royal Shopping Mall, in my neighbourhood. It looks like a man is 3______, too. Please come 4_____ A: Would you please give 5_____ your 6_____ and telephone number?

B: Yes of course. It's 10, Apple Road and my telephone number is 30349622.

A: What's your name?

B: Sam Lane.

A: Thank you, Mr. Lane. A ⁷_____ is on the ⁸____ home right away.

b Use a name, address, and telephone number to act out similar dialogues.



3 READING

a Read the text and fill in the blanks with the correct forms of the verbs.

Get out of my sight!

Mrs. Laurent was in the bank. At that moment
three bank robbers 1 (enter)the building
Mrs. Laurent ² (be) so frightened that
she ³ (run) out of the building very
fast and ⁴ (return) to her car. There
⁵ (be) three young men in her car.
They were in the act of driving away. She
⁶ (be) shocked. At once she ⁷
(draw) her toy handgun and 8 (begin)
to scream 'Don't force me to use my gun! Get
out of my sight, go away, go away, get out of
the car!' Just as she 9 (scream), they
10 (get) out and ran as if they saw a
prehistoric monster. The lady 11(get)
into the car. While she 12 (drive),
she ¹³ (discover) that it ¹⁴
(not/ be) her car because there 15 (be)
masks, two rifles and two pistols in the car.
In a short time she ¹⁶ (find) her own
car. She ¹⁷ (park) it farther down
when she 18 (come) for the bank. She
¹⁹ (run) into her own car. While she
²⁰ (drive) to the police station, she
²¹ (be) very tired and she ²²
(not/know) what to say. When she ²³
(tell) the story in the door of police station,
(tell) the story in the door of police station, the detective couldn't stop giggling

b Listen and check Part 1. (Track 3)

c	Guess what happened at the end of the story and
	write an appropriate ending.

Then,			

- d Listen to the end of the story in Part 2. (Track 4)
- e Answer the questions according to what happened to Mrs. Laurent.
 - **1.** When Mrs. Laurent was in the bank, what happened?
 - **2.** While Mrs. Laurent was screaming, why did the bank robbers run away?
 - 3. While she was driving, what did she discover? Why?
- f Work in pairs. Prepare two questions about the text to ask your friend.

CHECK THIS OUT!

- A: What were you doing when the robber came to the bank?
- **B:** I was standing in a queue in the bank.(=I was still standing in the queue (long action) when the robber came to the bank. (short action)
- While/ As/ Just as/ When Mr. Luckman was carrying a large amount of money, two thieves threw two bottles of ketchup on the front window of Mr. Luckman's car to stop. Attackers ran away on a motorcycle with the money while/as/ just as/ when Mr. Luckman was trying to defend himself.

READING & WRITING



READING

Before reading: The following story is adapted from one of Agatha Christie's stories. What do you understand from the title of the story 'The cat among the pigeons'?

Characters: Hercule Poirot, the famous detective - Adam Goodman gardener (member of the British Intelligence) - Honoria Bulstrode, headmistress of Meadowbank School for Girls- Ann Shapland, Miss. Bulstrode's secretary-Miss. Chadwick, senior teacher and she helped to found Meadowbank School for Girls - Eleanor Vansittart, a senior teacher- Grace Springer, a sports teacher- Angèle Blanche, a French teacher - Eileen Rich, a teacher, -Princess Shaista, the cousin of Prince Ali Yusuf - Julia Upjohn, student at Meadowbank and Jennifer's friend - Mrs Upjohn, Julia Upjohn's mother. She is a former

member of British Intelligence. - Prince Ali Yusuf, prince of Ramat - Bob Rawlinson, the personal pilot of the prince of Ramat (and his best friend) - Jennifer Sutcliffe, niece of Bob Rawlinson and student at Meadowbank

The Cat Among The Pigeons - A

- Meadowbank School for Girls was one of the best prep schools in England. The summer term just started and there were new students, teachers and a member of staff. Miss. Bulstrode was the popular headmistress of this school for a long time and she wanted to get retired. Miss. Chadwick helped Miss. Bulstrode to found the school thirty years ago. So she wanted to be headmistress after her. However, Miss. Bulstrode wanted someone creative to encourage innovation and improve the education at school after herself. Miss. Vansittart was her second assistant. She was very suitable for the post or Miss. Rich could be another option for the job. Miss. Rich was an open-minded, hardworking teacher too.
- 2 That day a parent, Mrs. Upjohn visited headmistress Miss. Bulstrode. She was a member of military intelligence for a long time. Mrs. Upjohn tried to inform Miss. Bulstrode about someone who was an attacker in the garden. While Mrs. Upjohn was speaking, somehow Miss. Bulstrode wasn't able to concentrate on her talking. Although nothing important escaped her attention, she couldn't understand the importance of the conversation. Then, she felt anxious.
- There were newcomers as well as old teachers at school. They were the French teacher Angèle Blanche, the gym teacher Grace Springer, Miss. Bulstrode's new secretary Ann Shapland, and the gardener Adam Goodman. Meadowbank was an expensive girls' boarding school. Students were from rich families. Princess Shaista and Jennifer

Sutcliffe were new students. Princess Shaista was from Ramat*. Jennifer was an easy going girl and a talented tennis player. Jennifer and Julia Upjohn became close friends. Julia loves observing the people around because of being much more intelligent and much more careful. At school some strange events began to occur.

First someone threatened Miss. Springer's life in the gym and suddenly she disappeared. Then, an inspector begun to inquire about the case. Meantime, Jennifer Sutcliffe complained about <u>her</u> racquet deformation and wrote to her mother asking her for a new racquet. She was an experienced tennis player. Julia Upjohn and Jennifer Sutcliffe gave their racquets to each other. Most of the girls spent the weekend with their families except Julia. After exchanging the racquets, Julia took it to her room and discovered that there were jewels in the handle of the racquet. At that moment, someone tried to unlock the door quietly to open. She pushed the cupboard in front of the door to stop the attack. Julia's "aha" moment came while shivering with fear in her room after the attack at the weekend. She decided to tell her story to detective Hercule Poirot the next day because Meadowbank girls' boarding

The story flashes back to Ramat. Ramat was a small and rich principality in Yemen. There, a revolution was about to happen. Because Prince Ali Yusuf always trusted his pilot Bob Rawlinson, he gave a fortune in jewels to his pilot and wanted him to take the family fortune out of the country. While Bob Rawlinson was hiding the fortune in the luggage of his sister Mrs. Joan Sutcliffe, a woman next-door saw him. Mrs. Joan Sutcliffe was on a holiday with her daughter Jennifer in Ramat. Suddenly, Prince Ali Yusuf and Bob Rawlinson lost their lives in an airplane crash. Now, everybody and even the British Intelligence were on the trail of the treasure.

school couldn't provide a safe place for the students anymore. Detective Hercule Poirot was one of her mother's friends from military intelligence.

In the following days, a strange lady visited the school and gave Jennifer a new racquet and said that Aunt Gina sent it as a present. Then, the lady took Jennifer's old one to return it to Aunt Gina. Additionally, Adam Goodman gave his true identity away to Miss. Bulstrode, while Inspector Kelsey was interviewing people. He wasn't a gardener, he was a British agent. A few days later Aunt Gina wrote that she sent neither a racquet nor anything else. That weekend someone attacked Miss. Vansittart with a rabid squirrel as a weapon and she was fainted from shock. While she was lying on the ground in the gym, she became lost in a few minutes. The next day Julia escaped from the school to talk to Detective Hercule Poirot. For the police, the suspicious person was Miss. Blanche, new French teacher, whereas she was innocent, she did nothing. Only she knew who committed the crime. While trying to blackmail the attacker, Miss. Blanche disappeared at the gate.



Who is guilty or who is the cat among the pigeons? Answer of this question is in Part B.

((aha moment: a sudden understanding, recognition))

a	Match the highlighted words in the text with
	their meanings.

1. suspicious	a something (such as a gun
	knifeetc.) that is used to
	fight, attack someone
2. found	b. force someone to do
	something by a threat
3. innovation	c. perform
4. blackmail	d. likely to suspect or
	distrust
5. weapon	e. establish
6. commit	f. a new idea, method

b Read the story and choose the best answer.

1 was the popular headmistress	of
Meadowbank Boarding School for	Girls.

- a. Miss. Bulstrode
- b. Miss. Chadwick
- c. Miss. Rich
- **2.** Miss. Bulstrode didn't want Miss. Chadwick to be headmistress after herself because she wanted someone ____.
 - a. was fond of sports.
 - **b.** was creative, educated, and wasn't member of any military intelligence.
 - **c.** was creative to encourage innovation and improve the education.
- **3.** Mrs. Upjohn wanted to warn Miss. Bulstrode about a (n) ____ in the garden although Mrs. Upjohn wouldn't care.
 - a. student
 - **b.** worker
 - c. attacker
- 4. Whose treasure was everybody on the trail of?
 - a. family fortune of Bob Rawlinson
 - **b.** family fortune of Prince Ali Yusuf
 - c. treasure of Mrs. Joan Sutcliffe
- **5.** Miss. Springer, Miss. Vansittart, and Miss. Blanche were ____.
 - a. disappeared
 - **b.** guilty
 - c. working for British Intelligence
- **6.** School wasn't a safe place for the students anymore. So, ____ escaped from the school to talk to Detective Poirot.
 - a. Iulia
 - **b.** Jennifer
 - c. Princess Shaista

С	Answer	the	following	questions.
•		CIIC	10110 11 1115	questions

- 1. In what ways would you say that Julia Upjohn had a good sense?
- **2.** What does the cat represent and what do the pigeons represent?
- 3. What do these underlined words refer to? Her (2nd par.), her (4th par.), He (5th par.)

d Fill in the blanks with the names of characters from the story.

- 1. _____ fled from the school to talk to detective Hercule Poirot.
- 2. _____ trusted Bob Rawlinson too much. Bob Rawlinson was his pilot.
- 3. _____ Sutcliffe is Jennifer's mother. Mrs Sutcliffe is Bob Rawlinson's sister.
- 4. ______ isn't the gardener of Meadowbank Boarding School for Girls. He's a British agent.
- 5. _____ is Miss. Bulstrode's new secretary.
- 6. _____ wanted to be the headmistress of Meadowbank Boarding School for Girls because she helped Miss. Bulstrode to found the school.
- 7. _____ is the second assistant of Miss. Bulstrode.

2 LISTENING (Track 5)))

Choose the correct response to the questions given below and listen, check and repeat.

- 1. A: How is it going?
 - **B:** Nope I'm single./ Great! Couldn't be better because the thieves were caught.
- **2. A:** How are you feeling after the traffic accident?
 - **B:** Really awful./ Nothing much.
- 3. A: Did you get the job which you wanted?
 - **B:** Unfortunately not. / It's a small world.
- **4. A:** I think the program on precautions to avoid being victim of a crime wasn't informative.
 - **B:** I completely agree./ Wow, that's impressive!

3 Work in pairs.

a Fill in the gaps with the given phrases from the box.

- ◆ Sounds OK to me ◆ Would you prefer
- ◆ What about ◆ I'll give you a call
- ◆ Would you like ◆ Why don't we

A: 1 to come to a	detective movie
with me?	
B: When do you want to go	?
A: ² next Tuesda	ay evening?
B: It's impossible for me. I'r with my family.	n having dinner
A: 3 go next Th	iursday?
B: Next Thursday? 4	·
A: OK ⁵ to watch or neither crime one?	n a detective movie
B: Yeah, I want to watch a c	omedy movie.

b Preapare a short dialogue as above by using similar phrases and act it out.

4 SPEAKING 🖼

a Write questions for the answers.

······· question	
A: ¹	when the robbery happened?
B: I was in the	bank at the time of the robbery.
A: ²	
B: Yes, I saw ev	erything.
	man come in with a backpack. nall gun in his hand, and I froze.
A: ⁴	
B: No he wasn't	t alone. There was a short man
with a gun in th	ne entryway.
A: ⁵	<u>?</u>
B: He was obse	rving around.
A: ⁶	?
B: No. They we	ere wearing stockings over their
faces.	
A: Your answers	s can help us find the robbers.
7	the police station for

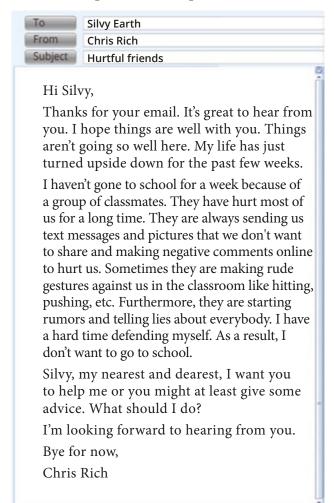
b Work in pairs. Act out a dialogue. Use different settings and scene to act out similar dialogues.

questioning?

B: Sure, no problem!

5 WRITING

a Read the e-mail quickly and circle the correct options for the questions below.



- 1. The email is...
 - a. to Silvy Earth from Chris Rich.
 - **b.** to Chris Rich from Silvy Earth.
- 2. Chris and Silvy are...
 - a. colleagues.
 - **b.** friends.
- **3.** First...
 - a. Chris emailed Silvy.
 - **b.** Silvy emailed Chris.
- b Read the email again and answer the questions.
 - 1. Whose life got worse in the last weeks?
 - 2. Why doesn't he want to go to school?
 - **3.** What is your advice to the person with the problem?

- c Imagine you've seen a crime in the classroom, in traffic etc. Make notes by answering the following questions.
 - When and where was the crime?
 - Who did it involve?

_				

d Write an email to a friend about the crime scene you took notes on in 5c.

То	
From	
Subject	
	21

LEAD IN 🖷



Answer the following questions.

- 1. What kind of crimes do you know?
- 2. What kinds of crimes often happen in your neighbourhood?
- 3. What penalties are usually given to those crimes?

LISTENING & SPEAKING



VOCABULARY

- Match the types of crime with their definitions.
 - 1. kidnapping ___ a. taking goods or people into or out of a country illegally
 - **2.** (armed) robbery __ **b.** trying to kill someone
 - **3.** arson ___ c. using a weapon, threats, or force to steal something from a bank, shop, etc.
 - **4.** assassination ___ d. a person who attacks people in order to steal their money
 - e. taking a person to a secret location using force **5.** smuggling ____
 - **6.** murder __ **f.** holding people in transit hostage (usually on a plane)
 - 7. mugger ___ g. setting fire to a property on purpose
 - 8. hijacking ___ **h.** the murder of someone famous or important
- **Listen and check.** (Track 6)
- 2 Match the crimes with the headlines.
 - kidnapping
 - smuggling • mugger
 - hijacking assassination
- murder
- 1. A masked man attacked young couple outside Central Park to steal Mrs Thomas' handbag. _
- 2. Two convicted at the Grand Theatre. 8 killed 12 wounded over the weekend at the Grand Theatre in Dublin. _____
- 3. President Kennedy was killed for political reasons. _
- 4. Little John was snatched from his bed.
- 5. 446 kilograms of ivory were taken out of Nigeria into Vietnam in an illegal way.
- 6. After taking control of the jets, terrorists destroyed the Twin Towers and hit the Pentagon in the day of terror.



3 LISTENING (Track 7)))

- a Listen to the news reports and match each person with the crime described. What crime did they commit?
 - ◆ kidnapping ◆ drug trafficking ◆ hijacking
 - robbery shoplifting

1. Roy Red and Richard Sal	
----------------------------	--

- 2. Adam Steen ____
- 3. Kevin and Stan brothers _____
- 4. Alex Dobbs and Jason Gabi _____
- **5.** Sam Jatala _____

b Listen again and answer the questions below.

- **1.** Roy Red and Richard Sal are robbers. What did they steal?
- 2. What happened to Adam Steen? Why?
- **3.** What were Kevin and Stan doing when they were caught up?
- **4.** Why did the passengers beat Alex Dobbs and Jason Gabi?
- **5.** Why did the police arrest Sam Jatala?

DISCUSSION TIME

- a Work in groups. Discuss answers to the following questions.
 - 1. Which crimes are most common in our country?
 - **2.** Can we reduce the crime with harsher punishment or better education? Why?
- b Work in groups. Create your own story by using the given sentences in a row and taking turns. Finish the story.
 - 1. That day was Jack's birthday.
 - 2. His mother made preparations.
 - **3.** Jack and his two classmates returned from the school.
 - 4. They celebrated his birthday.
 - **5.** They went into the garage in the evening.



5 LISTENING))

- a Now listen to Joyrider Jack's story without listening to the ending part and put the sentences in the correct order. (Track 8)
 - **a.** They drove away into the night. ___
 - **b.** First, they couldn't start the engine. ___
 - **c.** Jack and his two classmates went back from the school. ___
 - **d**. And pushed it down the road. ___
 - **e.** Three teenagers went into the garage secretly at night. ___
 - **f.** They pushed a beautiful red car out of the garage. ___
 - **g.** In the depth of the night, the red car was moving forward at high speed out of control. ___
 - **h.** His mother made preparations. <u>2</u>
 - i. Then, they did and jumped into the car. ___
 - j. That day was Jack's birthday. 1
 - **k.** They celebrated his 19th birthday with great joy. ___
- b Guess the end of the Joyrider Jack's story and write a short conclusion paragraph between 60 and 80 words for the story. Then, listen to the story with the ending part and compare its ending with yours. (Track 9)

READING & WRITING



READING 1

Answer the following question.

After reading "The Cat Among the Pigeons Part A", can you guess who the murderers are? Who are the cats among the pigeons?

Now, read Part B of the detective story and find out who the murderer is.

The Cat Among The Pigeons - B

Detective Hercule Poirot had to solve the chain of crime at school. He believed that the attacker was among the staff. According to his research, the kidnapped princess wasn't the real princess. Fake princess ran away from the school but, the real Princess, Shaista was kidnapped a year ago before the summer term in Switzerland. Was the attacker Eileen Rich? Miss. Rich was in Ramat at the time of revolution.

² Detective Hercule Poirot asked Mrs. Upjohn to return from her holiday for an interview. That day Mrs. Upjohn identified the attacker's face among the staff's photographs in Mrs. Bulstrode's room (Mrs. Upjohn had warned Miss. Bulstrode about the same person before but Miss. Bulstrode wasn't able to focus on the issue). The attacker was Ann Shapland, Miss. Bulstrode's secretary. When Mrs. Bulstrode heard this, she began to glare at everybody in her room. Shapland was an agent of a foreign country but she was the member of the British Intelligence too. Everybody knew her as a merciless and a cruel woman. She knew where the jewels were, because Ann Shapland was the woman nextdoor to Bob Rawlinson. She saw while Bob Rawlinson was hiding Prince Ali Yusuf's fortune in the luggage of his sister Mrs. Joan Sutcliffe. That day, Ann Shapland wanted to shoot Mrs. Sutcliffe. Miss. Bulstrode tried to keep Mrs. Joan Sutcliffe safe from Shapland's attack. At that moment Miss. Chadwick wanted to defend Miss. Bulstrode but that time Shapland's attack caused Miss. Chadwick's to faint on the ground in her room and Shapland locked her in a room. Through Hercule Poirot research, it became clear that Ann Shapland threatened Miss.

Springer's life while Miss.

Springer was looking for the jewels in the gym. Ann Shapland kidnapped Miss. Blanche because Miss. Blanche knew that Shapland threatened Miss. Springer's life and that's why Miss. Blanche was always trying to blackmail Ann Shapland. This situation was disturbing Ann Shapland deeply.

3 Shapland did nothing to Miss. Vansittart although the way of crime was the same. Miss. Chadwick attacked Miss. Vansittart with a rabid squirrel in the gym because Miss. Vansittart was searching for jewels in Shaista's cupboard in the gym when they met. In fact, she hated Miss. Vansittart. It was impossible for Miss. Chadwick to accept her as a headmistress. Committing crime made Miss. Chadwick unhappy. The feeling of guilt began to annoy her, so she jumped forward to protect Mrs. Bulstrode from shooting. In truth, Miss. Chadwick didn't want Miss. Bulstrode to retire. She said this to Miss. Bulstrode before fainting and passing away. Miss. Bulstrode didn't retire. She explained that Miss. Rich was going to be the headmistress after her.

Detective Hercule Poirot found the family jewellery and he returned them to the English woman. She was Prince Ali Yusuf's wife to whom he got married secretly when he was a student. Prince Ali Yusuf's wife gave an emerald to Julia Upjohn for her good work.

c	Match the highlighted words in the text with their meanings.					
	1. revolution	a. die				
	2. issue	b. destroy and interrupt				
	3. glare	c. injure with a sharp pointed instrument				
	4. merciless	d. a problem or difficulty				
	5. stab	e. stare in a fixed way and angrily				
	6. disturb	f. heartless, without mercy				
	7. pass away	g. a briliant grass-green trans	spar	ent precious stone		
	8. emerald	h. the overthrow of one gover	rnm	ent and its replacement with another		
d	Read the sentence	es below and choose the best a	nsw	ver.		
	1 was kidnap	pped and killed.		6 . Feeling of guilt began to annoy Mrs.		
	a. Hercule Pairo	ot	Chadwick because			
	b. Eileen Rich			a. Miss. Bulstrode disliked her.		
	c. Real Princess2. Why did the detective suspect Eileen Rich of the crimes?			b. committing crime disturbed her.		
				c. Miss. Rich was going to be headmistress.		
	Because she a. was in Ramat at the time of the revolution.			7. Mr. Robinson gave family jewel to		
				the English woman. She was		
				a. Miss. Bulstrode's		
	b. and Princess	were		secretary.		
	on holiday.	Wele		b. real Princess Shaista.		
	c. was the woma			c. Prince Ali Yusuf's wife.		
	nextdoor to Bob			8. Prince Ali Yusuf's wife gave Julia Upjohn an		
	Rawlinson.			emerald. Because		
	3 saw while			a. she called famous Detective Hercule Poirot		
	Bob Rawlinson was hiding Prince			to solve the crime.		
	Ali Yusuf's	MIST		b. she talked to Miss. Bulstrode's secretary		
	fortune in the			about the crime.		
	luggage of his	Dulchead		c. she's one of the close friends of Princess		
	sister Mrs. Joan Sutcliffe.			Shaista.		
				9. Setting of the story is		
	a. Mr. Robinsorb. Ann Shaplan			a. Meadowbank School for Girls.		
	c. Julia Upjohn			b. Rabat		
		was always blackmailing		c. Switzerland		
		cause she knows that		10. Detective Hercule Poirot		
	threatened 's life.			a. sent the family jewels to an English woman.		
	a. Ann Shaplan	d/ Miss. Springer		b. gave the family jewels back to Prince Ali Yusuf's wife.		
	b. Miss. Chadw	b. Miss. Chadwick/ Ann Shaplandc. Miss. Bulstrode/ Miss. Springer		c. returned home with family jewels.		
	5. Miss. Chadwic Because	k hated Miss. Vansittart.	e	Find and circle the words or expressions in the text for crime.		

a. Miss. Chadwick wanted to be the headmistress. **b.** Miss. Vansittart wanted to be the headmistress.

c. both of them are blackmailers.

f Put the following sentences from "The cat among the pigeons" into the correct order.

I.

- **A.** Prince Ali Yusuf gave a fortune in jewels to his pilot Bob Rawlinson to take it out of the country. ____
- **B.** Prince Ali Yusuf and Bob Rawlinson lost their lives in an aeroplane crash. ____
- C. A woman next door saw this event. ____
- **D.** Bob Rawlinson was hiding the fortune in the luggage of his sister Mrs. Joan Sutcliffe. ___
- **E.** There was a revolution which was about to break in Yemen. <u>1</u>
- **F.** British Intelligence was on the trail of the treasure. ___

II.

- **A.** At the school some strange crimes committed. ___
- **B.** The summer term started. 1
- **C.** Mrs. Upjohn wanted to inform Miss. Bulstrode about an attacker. ___
- **D.** Because of chain of crimes, Julia fled from the school to talk to Detective Hercule Poirot. ___
- **E.** First, someone threatened Miss. Springer's life in the gym. ____
- **F.** He believes that the attacker was among the staff.
- **G.** Prince Ali Yusuf's wife gave an emerald to Julia Upjohn for her good. ____

g Fill in the blanks with the words below.

- ◆ dangerous ◆ detective ◆ setting ◆ victim
- new → director → fainted → attacker → chain
- girls' retirement

The ¹	$_{}$ of the	e story is Meadowbank
school camp	us. A(n) ²	term would begin
at Meadowb	ank. It was	a most respected British
3	_ school. Th	e strong and determined
director Mi	ss. Bulstrod	le was preparing herself
for ⁴	She wa	anted to choose the new
5		
Meadowbar	ık school ca	ampus suddenly became
very ⁶	when	n one of the teachers was
found 7	Tł	nere was nothing to tell.

found ⁷______. There was nothing to tell. In a few weeks Meadowbank would be in the sea of trouble. The disorders and the confusions destroyed the school fame but it was clear that the ⁸_____ wasn't outside the campus. Miss. Bulstrode was not sure and she was astonished. Julia Upjohn, one of the clever students decided to talk to ⁹_____ Hercule Poirot to solve the ¹⁰_____ of crime. Hercule Poirot determined who the attacker was and the reason of the crime before anyone else became a ¹¹_____ or a pigeon to the cat.



Agatha Christie (1890-1916)

Writer, Traveller, Playwright, Wife, Mother, Surfer. She's known as the queen of crime all over the world. She was born in Torquay, South West England. Agatha Christie was the best-selling novelist when she was alive and she's still the best-selling novelist of all time. Her 66 detective novels like the world's longest-running play the Mousetrap and the 14 short story collections are still best sellers. Her books were sold over a billion copies in English and a billion in 44 foreign languages.



2 SPEAKING

a Read the story below. Summarize the story in the classroom without looking at the book. Talk about the setting of the story, characters of the story, and what happened in the story.

Sue Weeks is a reporter for an International Music Company. When she was in California last month, she had a shocking experience. It was her first trip. She interviewed the famous rap singer Dee Mama Bridgewater. She recorded the interview over her smartphone. Her smartphone and other personal belongings were on the front seat of her car. She was driving back to her motel early evening, but she realised that she was running out of petrol. She stopped at a petrol station. First, she filled the tank. Secondly, she took 30 dollars from her wallet. Then she went to the kiosk to pay. Just as she was paying, a girl opened her car door and took her smartphone, purse, passport, and her return air ticket.

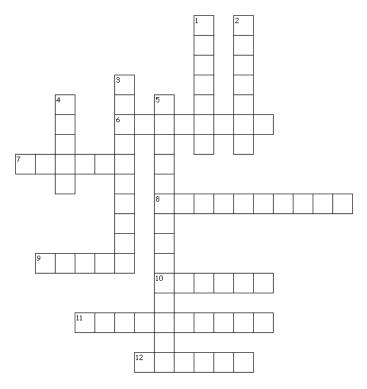
Setting of the story is California.

- b Complete the sentences according to the story above.
 - 1. Sue Weeks went to a petrol station because
 - **2.** When she was in the petrol station, first she
 - 3. Secondly, she...
 - **4.** Then, she...

3 WRITING

Make a similiar story. Write the setting of the story and its characters. Then what happened in the story.

4 Do the crossword puzzle with the clues given.



Across

- **6.** Going into another person's home or business with force to steal things.
- 7. Trying to kill someone.
- 8. A new idea, method.
- **9.** A problem or difficulty.
- 10. Perform.
- 11. Likely to suspect or distrust.
- **12.** Something that is used to fight, attack someone.

Down

- **1.** A brilliant grass green transparent precious stone.
- **2.** Destroy or interrupt.
- **3.** It is the use of computers and the Internet to commit a crime against someone.
- 4. Stare in a fixed way and angrily.
- **5.** All the members of an organization commit a crime.

12 c IN COURT

LEAD IN

Answer the following questions.

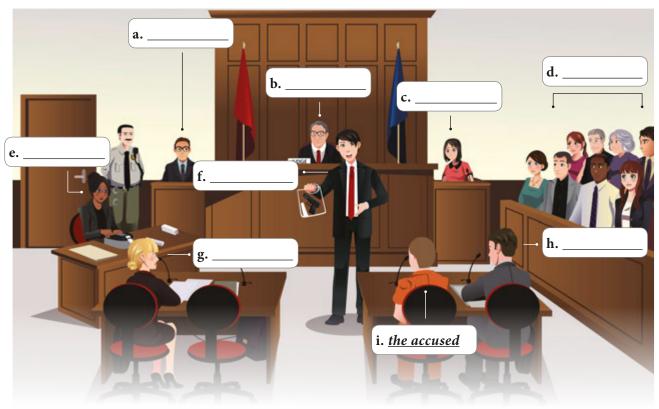
- 1. Why do people go to court?
- 2. Are courts always open to the public? Can everybody attend courts?

LISTENING & SPEAKING



1 VOCABULARY

- a Listen and repeat the words. (Track 10)
- b Match the roles of the people in the box with the pictures.
- judge ◆ the accused ◆ court reporter ◆ prosecutor
- ◆ jury ◆ defence lawyer ◆ witness (2) ◆ stenographer



c Match each word above with the definitions given below.

- 1. Somebody who comes to court to tell what they have seen or heard. ____
- 2. A group of people in a law court decide if a person is guilty or innocent. ____
- An official who decides how a guilty person, criminal should be punished in a court of law.
- 4. A professional who represents a person accused of a crime and advises the accused in court. ____

- 5. Someone who is accused of a crime and is on trial in a court of law. ____
- 6. His/ Her job is to write notes about what is said in court. ____
- 7. A professional who tries to prove that the person is guilty and he represents the state in court. ____
- 8. Somebody who keeps all the official papers about the cases in court and arranges them. ____

2 LISTENING (Track 11))

a Listen to the text and fill in the blanks below. Then read the text.

Ahmet was known for his good
1in his neighbourhood.Despite
always trying to do useful and good
things, one day he ^{2.} a public
property accidentally and he violeted a
^{3.} The police ^{4.} him
and sent him to the court. The judge
reviewed the ^{5.} about him and
understood that he was a good man.He
didn't want to send him to ^{6.} He
wanted him to do ^{7.} service



b	Answer	the	following	questions.
---	--------	-----	-----------	------------

1. What did Ahmet do?				
2. Who arrested him?				
3. Why didn^t the judge want to send Ahmet to prison?				

4. What punishment did the judge give to

Ahmet?

b	Listen and tick (🗸) the correct sound.					
	words 1 /æ/ 2 /e/ a. dad					
4	LISTENING (Track 13)) Listen to a news bulletin and choose the correct answer.					
	1. The first news item is about					
	a. a murder b. an arson c. a burglary					
	2 was threatening Rydd's life and blackmailing him for money.					
	a. His wife b. His secretary c. Nobody3. Police blackmailer of the multi-millionaire Richard Rydd.					
	a. were looking upb. foundc. were searching for					
	4. Robbers stole Mr Brown's					
	a. television and computerb. computer and mobile phonec. car					
	5. Police caught a group of eight vandals with two arsonists while they were					
	a. damaging carsb. burning the housesc. painting the cars					
	6. Ten boys aged between eleven and seventeen will do community service and					
	 a. clean the roads of the city on Saturdays for a month. b. clean the parks of the city every Saturday for two months. c. clean the parks of the city center for two months. 					
	7. Police gave the children a					
	a. book b. photograph c. warning					

Work in pairs. Talk about the latest news you have

heard. 🙀

3 PRONUNCIATION (Track 12)))

sounds.

/æ/ and/e/

Listen and repeat. Find the difference between two

READING & WRITING



1 READING

- Answer the following questions.
 - 1. This is the picture of Alcatraz Island. What do you know about Alcatraz island?
 - 2. Who was the Alcatraz Birdman? Why was he called Birdman?



Read the text below.

Birdman of Alcatraz

Robert Stroud was born on January 28, 1890 in Seattle, Washington, USA. He was one of the most well-known criminals in the USA. He was a dangerous murderer and sentenced to be hung. After five trials, he was sentenced to life imprisonment. In 1920 at Leavenworth, he was sentenced to solitary confinement. He regretted about his past. Feelings of shame always disturbed Birdman of Alcatraz. So he made a very great effort in order to educate himself.

One day, Robert Stroud found a nest with three injured sparrows in the prison garden. He began raising them. In a few years, he had 300 different types of canaries. Robert began a detailed study in order to cure injured sparrows and canaries and with the help of a warden, he wrote a book about canaries 'Disease of Canaries' in 1933. It was published and sold. In 1943 a later edition

DO YOU KNOW THIS?

Alcatraz Prison is located on Alcatraz Island in San Francisco Bay, California. it was the first prison built in 1853. They used the building as a military prison. On the island, there is a light house. They built it in 1854. There were a lot of prisons on the island. Army prisoners worked to construct the buildings. They used these buildings for 'Lower Prison'. There were enormous large and tall walls around these prisons. Years later, they began to use the buildings for 'Upper Prison'. Approximately 1, 576 murderers, gangsters, and bank robbers were behind the bars on the island. Alcatraz prison had a high security. Now Alcatraz Prison is a natural park and bird sanctuary and it is also a touristic place.



was published. He made important contributions to bird pathology to cure serious bird diseases. His discoveries were very important for farmers. Both outside and inside the prison he had a bright fame. In 1942, the prison staff sent him to another prison on Alcatraz Island. In 1959, because of serious health problems, prison staff transferred him to the Medical Center for Federal Prisoners in Springfield. Robert Stroud spent his time learning French at the hospital. He died on November 21, 1963 at the Medical Center for Federal Prisoners. Birdman of Alcatraz Robert Stroud is one of the best examples of self-improvement and rehabilitation in the world.

1. solitary confinement			punishment punishment						
2. sentence			b. act of returning someone to a good condition						
3. contribution			e e	c. care for a child or a young animal until it is able to take care of itself					
4. transfer			d. an action or a service that helps to cause or increase something						
 transfer self-improvement disease rehabilitation raise 			e. an illness affecting humans, animals or plants by						
			f. be kept in a room in prison						
			h. ability to make yourself better						
			Fill i	in the tir	neline of Bird	dman of Alcatraz with events and dates in the text as	from the example.		
	1890	28 January	Robert Stroud was born.						
1.									
2.									
3.									
4.									
_									
5.									
6. Read		t again and m	e statements. Alcatra:						
6. Read false 1. Ro	e (F). Con obert Stree e hanged	rrect the false oud was a dan	e statements. Alcatra: to impress to impress Alcatra:						
6. Read false 1. Ro	e (F). Con obert Stree e hanged	rrect the false oud was a dan	e statements. Alcatra	z Robert Stroud do					
6. Readfalse 1. Ro to be	e (F). Consider Street Street Hanged.	oud was a dan as fined a large a	e statements. Alcatra: to impress to impress Alcatra:	z Robert Stroud do					
6. Reac false 1. Ro to be	e (F). Con obert Stree hanged nen he wa	oud was a dan as fined a large a	amount of money ree injured sparrows in the yard	z Robert Stroud do					
6. Read false 1. Roto be 2. Th	e (F). Conobert Strucke hanged. men he was e found a e wrote a	rrect the false oud was a dan as fined a large a nest with three book about si	amount of money ree injured sparrows in the yard	z Robert Stroud de					
6. Read false 1. Ro co be 2. Th	e (F). Consider Street hanged hen he was e found a sis discovered to the consideration of the	eries were very	amount of money ree injured sparrows in the yard sheep	z Robert Stroud de					
6. Reac false 1. Ro be 2. Th	e (F). Consider Street hanged hen he was e found a sis discovered a sis discovered his discovere	rrect the false oud was a dan as fined a large a nest with three book about since eries were very leath, he was try	Alcatration improvements. Alcatration improvements and sentenced to improvements amount of money. Tobase a statements. Alcatration to improvements amount of money. Tobase a statements. Alcatration to improvements amount of money. Tobase a statements. Alcatration to improvements amount of money. Tobase a statements. Tobase a statements. Alcatration to improvements amount of money. Tobase a statements. Tobase a statements. Alcatration to improvements amount of money. Tobase a statements.	z Robert Stroud do					
6. Read false 1. Roto be 2. Th 3. Ho 5. Hi 7. Ro	e (F). Conobert Street hanged hen he was e found a sis discovers of the best Street has discovers of the best Street his discovers o	rrect the false oud was a dan as fined a large a nest with three book about since eries were very leath, he was try	Alcatrate to impression amount of money	z Robert Stroud do ove himself? AY'S PROVERB sentence. What					

Match the highlighted words in the text with their definitions.

2 WRITING

a Read the story and explain the highlighted words.

Judge and King Once upon a time, there was a judge in a far away green country. His name was Jerry. The king of the country wanted to see Judge Jerry because everybody was saying that he was the cleverest judge of the kingdom. The king wore some shabby and poor clothes, took his horse, and set off for the town where the clever Judge lived. While he was on the way to the town, he saw an old man. He didn't have a horse. He had to walk in cold weather. The king felt pity for the old man. "My pal, let's ride my horse together. It's freezing cold." The man was happy because he was very tired of walking. Old man thanked him and they went to town together. When they arrived in the town, the old man said that the horse was his. "This is my horse, but if you say that it is your horse, we'll go to Judge Jerry. He will decide whose horse it is." said king to the old man. Then he thought "I will understand if he's clever or not by his decision." They went to the judge and told their case. The judge asked them to leave the horse in his stable and come back the next day. Next morning the king and the man came back. Judge Jerry was waiting for them in the stable. There were lots of horses there. Judge wanted them to show the horse. They both showed the same horse. "Ok, this is

your horse, take it back. I'll punish the old man." said Judge Jerry immediately to the king. The

old man was astonished. The king was very happy and said "You're a very clever judge. This is true. It's my horse and he wanted to steal my horse. I'm your king. I wanted to learn how you knew that it was my horse and not his horse. We showed you the same horse." "My king you're right, you both showed me the same horse, but the horse recognized only you." said Judge Jerry.

CHECK THIS OUT!

Writing a story

When we write a story, we start writing by answering the following questions.

- 1. When did the event happen?
- 2. Where did the event happen?
- 3. Who were the people in the story?
- 4. What happened first?
- 5. What happened just before the main event of the story?
- 6. What happened finally?
- 7. How did the people feel?

Outline

Introduction Paragraph 1: who the people were in the story, when and where it happened and what happened first. Catch the reader's attention.

Main Body Paragraph 2-3-4: what happened before the main event and the main event of the story in chronological order. Develop the story.

Conclusion Paragraph 5: What happened in the end and how the characters felt. End the story.

- Answer the following questions according to the story 'Judge and King'.
 - 1. When did the event happen?
 - **2.** Where did the event happen?
 - **3.** Who were the people in the story?
 - **4**. What happened just before the main event of the story?
 - **5.** What finally happened in the story?

First read the outline on the left, then complete the following outline for the story 'Judge and King'. Outline

• Introduction Paragraph 1: Once upon a time, in a faraway green country, king of the country wanted to see the cleverest judge because everybody trusted him.

•	Main	Body P	aragraph	2 3:	

• Conclu	sion Para	agraph 4	:		

Imagine that your school organized a story competition and you want to join it. Prepare an outline for your own story by following the plan given below.

PLAN

Introduction

Paragraph 1 describe the characters and when/where the story takes

place

Main Body

explain what happened; Paragraph 2-3

> develop your story in chronological order

Conclusion

Paragraph 4

end your story by describing any consequences/results





UNIT 13

OLD TIMES

13A Oldies but Goldies13B Ancient Civilizations13C Historic Places

In this unit you will be...

- describing habits and routines in the past.
- making oral presentations on a planned topic.
- making deductions.
- exchanging ideas.
- talking about ancient civilizations around the world.
- describing a photo.

A OLDIES BUT GOLDIES

LEAD IN

Answer the following questions.

- 1. Do you know the activities in the pictures?
- 2. What is the difference between 'drive-in cinema' and 'open-air cinema'?
- 3. Which one do you prefer? Why?
- 4. Have you ever joined in an activity as in the pictures? If so, did you like it? If not, would you like to join in?

DRIVE-IN CINEMA





LISTENING & SPEAKING



1 EVERYDAY ENGLISH

Study the box below and then underline the expressions used for exchanging ideas in the dialogue on the left.



Useful Expressions to...

express your opinion

In my opinion, she'll get the highest grade.

I think the weather will be fine.

As for me, this question is hard.

I'm sure you can do it.

express your agreement

I agree with you/ her/ him...

I really think so.

She is absolutely right.

That's just it!

Quite so!

express your disagreement

I disagree.

Not at all!

I think otherwise.

No way!

I don't think so.



Rosa: In my opinion, this building used to be a dormitory.

Jack: I'm afraid, I disagree.

Rosa: Look at the painting. It is the same with

the ones in schools.

Jack: As for me, it used to be a hospital.

Rosa: No way! The corridor is too long.

Jack: I think otherwise. Here is an inpatient corridor.

Rosa: I don't think so.

Jack: I'm sure it used to be a hospital because

the doors are large.

Rosa: But why?

Jack: The beds can be easily removed out the

doors when there is an emergency.

Rosa: Quite so!

2 GAME

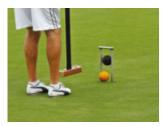
"Do You Know Me?"

Write three sentences about your old habits or state on the board. One of the sentences is not about you. Other students guess which of the sentences are about you.

3 VOCABULARY

Match the names of the games with the pictures.

- ◆ Croquet ◆ Tic-Tac-Toe ◆ Pickup sticks
- ◆ Twister ◆ Dominoes ◆ Scrabble





1. _____

2.

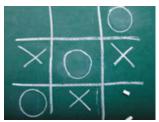




3. _____

4.





5. _____

6. _____

4 SPEAKING 🖼

Work in pairs. Ask these questions to each other.

- 1. Do you play any of the games above?
- **2.** If yes, explain how the game is played. If no, which one would you like to play and why?

REMEMBER THIS!

Kevin: How was your day out, sonny?

Elrick: There was a little concert. It was

really a good one.

Kevin: Were there many people at the

concert area?

Elrick: No, there weren't.

Kevin: Was your best friend with you?

Elrick: Yes, he was. Was my mum angry with me

as I didn't let her know the concert?

Kevin: Hmm. Yes, she was.

5 LISTENING (Track 1)))

a Granddad and grandson are looking at the family album and talking about the old times. Listen and fill in the blanks to complete their conversation.

Archie: What is it in your hand? Elrick: I 1_____ an old family album over there behind the sofa. Let's look at it together. **Archie**: Another time Elrick. I'm really tired today. Elrich: Come on! Is that you sitting on a wall, granddad? How much slimmer you ²_____:) **Archie:** You are such a kidder. I'm still fit. Surely I 3_____ to be younger and more handsome. Elrick: What were you doing 4_____? Archie: I was trying to see your 5_____. She was watching a movie at the open-air cinema. I was in love with her. Elrick: How nice and lovely you were! Archie: Do you know 6_____? Elrick: Not much. Archie: Aww! What a pity! In my day, there used to be open-air cinemas once a week. We didn't use to have televisions, telephones, or ⁷_____. We often used to go to the openair cinemas. It was the most popular public entertainment.

Elrick: In that case there didn't use to be any electronic stuff, what did you ⁸_____ for fun?

Archie: We used to play Tic-Tac-Toe, twister, croquet, dominoes, pickup sticks, scrabble, and so on...

Elrick: What social children you were!

- b Listen again and write true (T) or false (F). Correct the false ones.
 - Elrick is curious about the old times of his family. ____
 - 2. Archie is willing to look at the family album. ___
 - 3. There used to be an open-air cinema twice a week. ___
 - 4. Elrick thinks that people were more sociable in the past. ____

6	Work in pairs. Write a simple dialogue as in the CHECK THIS OUT! box. Write the activities you used to do when you were a child. Use the proverb "Old habits die hard." Act your dialogue out.		CHECK THIS OUT! Elrick: Hey dad, did you use to play computer games when you were a teenager? Kevin: No, I didn't use to play, because there weren't any computers but I used to play video games all day long. I couldn't give up even when I got married. Old habits die hard sonny! We use "used to" to express old habits.
		8	LISTENING (Track 2)) Archie and Elrick are visiting Archie's hometown. Listen to their conversation and tick () the place(s) there isn't now.
7	SPEAKING Work in pairs. Look at the past and present photographs of İstanbul. Talk about the differences.		shopping mall grocery store yard townhouse grandma's house public fountain
		9	WRITING Prepare some interview questions about memories and old habits. Make an interview with an old person in your family by using the questions and share your interview results with your classmates.
		10	SPEAKING Some way with the second state of the second seco

READING & WRITING



1 READING

a Read the text and highlight the phrasal verbs.

Different, yet Surprisingly Fun!

Hi, I'm Umay. I want to share a memory of mine. I travelled to some countries in Europe and I saw some traditions and customs. I found out that traditions and customs show us much about history, culture, philosophies, or lives of people, and especially how people have fun and relax. Sometimes they can be boring or funny and sometimes they can be weird. Let's see how we sometimes go wild. Also let's learn the origins of the traditions and see some customs.

One year ago, I put on my jacket and fixed on Spain for my destination. The plane took off and it was my first trip alone. I used to travel with my best friend up to that time. After a few days in Spain I found out about the Tomato Fight and I joined. It was really a different and interesting day. People took out their guns; tomatoes, and started to throw to each other everywhere. When I went to the hotel, I researched on the history of this weird fight. The origin of the tomato fight in the city of Buñol in Spain is not known well. But, the most popular one is that: one day there was a civil disturbance in the city. When the police broke it down, people started to throw tomatoes towards

them. And they continue to do this activity on every last Wednesday of August in the city of Buñol.

b Circle the contextual meaning of the phrasal verbs according to the text above.

1	Put on	a b	to put clothes or shoes onto your body. to add something.
2	Take off	a b	Suddenly start to be successful. When an aircraft leaves the ground and begins to fly.
3	Take out	a b	to remove something from somewhere to get money from a bank account

С	dictionary and use them in your own sentences.				

d Answer the questions according to the text.

- 1. Can we understand culture from traditions?
- 2. Did Umay fly to Spain with her best friend?
- **3.** When and where do people have Tomato Fight?
- **4.** Is the origin of the Tomato Fight clear?
- **5.** Did the police break down the civil disturbance?

2 WRITING

Find an old, strange custom, or tradition of your country and write about its origin and other details in a paragraph between 150 and 200 words.

3 PRONUNCIATION (Track 3)

a Listen and repeat the sounds below.

 $/\theta$ /: theatre, bath, everything... $/\delta$ /: these, another, breathe...

b Listen and tick the sound you hear.

(Track 4) **)**

	a. /θ/	b. /ð/
1. think		
2. rather		
3. brother		
4. health		
5. weather		
6. teeth		
7. earth		
8. smooth		
9. thanks		
10. their		

c Work in pairs. Check the sound of the words. Read the rhyme in the box below to class.

 $/\theta$ /: thought, thirty, earth, Thursday.

/ð/: those, mother, together, without, father, another, with, cloth, leather, brother, other.

Those thirty thoughtless brothers

Thought an earth without others

Another brother with his father on Thursday

Thought clothes like leather for his mother

4 GAME

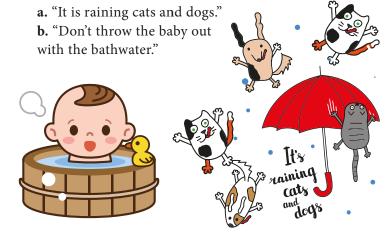
"Broken Telephone"

Sit u-shaped. The teacher whispers a rhyme or a sentence to the first student. The student says it to the other student sitting next and it goes on like this until the last student tells the rhyme out loud.



5 READING

a Where do these idioms come from? Read the texts and match the idioms with the texts.



Once upon a time, every family in England used to have a bath in a huge barrel. Once they filled the barrel with water, they used to have baths by taking turns. Father used to have a bath first, then mother, and then children, oldest to youngest. The baby used to be the last to have a bath. That's to say, they didn't use to renew the water. They used to have a bath in the same water. How awful! It was really possible to lose something in it.

2

Once upon a time, there didn't use to be concrete roofs. People used to build their roofs out of reeds. A great deal of animal kinds, from cats and dogs to insects, used to live there to keep themselves warm. When it was rainy, animals used to slide down. When people looked at the rain from their windows, they sometimes used to see that it was pouring animals. I guess they didn't use to be puzzled by this. Luckily there weren't cows on the roofs.

b Answer the following questions.

- 1. What are the figurative meanings of these idioms?
- 2. Do you know any idioms or proverbs in your mother tongue, which has a story as the idioms above? If so, can you explain their background story?

6 VOCABULARY

Match the words or phrases with the pictures.

◆ Hand-wash ◆ Sweep the floor ◆ Dishes ◆ Fire up the stove ◆ Laundry











1.	2.	3.	4.	5.
			·	

7 READING

a	Read and	l match	the	paragraphs	with	their	ending
•	Iteau ant		LIIC	paragrapho	** 1 511	CIICII	CIIGIII

Long time ago, people used to meet their relatives face to face. They used to travel for a long distance just to visit an old friend. They used to have regular gatherings with family members and friends. They used to have a lot of fixed activities in a day such as work, family, and friends. But now...

2. ____

In old times, education didn't used to be based on science. Girls didn't use to receive education. Arabic alphabet would be used. Young people used to learn a job from their parents, but now...

3.

The women of old times used to have many household chores every day at home. They used to hand-wash, sweep the floor with a broom and fire up the stove. There wasn't a water heater, so they used to light a fire to heat water for laundry or dishes. Moreover, people used to build a room to use as a refrigerator. That room didn't have any windows. But now...

- **A.** thanks to the development in technology, useful technological household items help people with the domestic works. For example, we only put the clothes into the washing machine. That's all. But, there isn't a device doing the ironing yet.
- **B.** people have a dynamic life with a lot of surprises and changes. People can interact with their relatives on the Internet. They can text to their friends. There is no need for gathering. You can communicate with your friends. People have a lot of unreal friends on the Internet. This makes people's life easier, but less social with low level of communication in real life.
- **C.** they get diploma from an educational institution. Girls have the same rights with the boys to receive education. Latin alphabet is used everywhere. The education is based on science.

- b Find a heading for each paragraph.
- c Find differences between the lifestyles and customs of old times and the ones in the 21st century from the paragraphs above.

7	7	

8 DISCUSSION TIME *****

- 1. Are we more social today than the past? Why? Why not?
- 2. Have social media tools made our lives easier or harder? Why?

LEAD IN

- 1 Match the names of the ancient civilizations in Anatolia with the pictures.
 - Hittite → Phrygia → Urartu → Ionia → Lydia





2. _____





3. ______ 4. ____



5.

2 Answer the questions below.

- 1. Are you passionate about history? Why? Why not?
- 2. Which civilizations do you know around the world?
- 3. Would you like to have lived in an ancient civilization? Why? Why not?
- 4. Are we the ancient civilization of the future? What do you think?
- 5. Show Asia Minor on the map in the classroom?

LISTENING & SPEAKING



1 VOCABULARY

Match the words with their meanings. Use your dictionary.

- **1.** productive _ **a.** able to produce a lot of plants, fertile
- 2. settle __ b. obtaining coal or other minerals from a mine
- 3. weaving __ c. legal arrangement between parties
- **4.** agreement __ **d.** written works
- **5.** legend __ **e.** making fabric
- **6.** literature __ **f.** a traditional story
- 7 mining __ **g.** start to live in somewhere

REMEMBER THIS!

Umay: I visited my grandma yesterday, so I didn't come with you.

Laura: It doesn't matter.

Umay: How did you go there? By car? Laura: No, I went there on foot.

2 LISTENING (Track 5)))

a Listen and find where the civilizations were settled.

1 HITTITES	SETTLED AROUND	A. the Sakarya River		
2 PHRYGIANS		B. Aegean Region		
3LYDIANS		C. the Kızılırmak River		
4 IONIANS		D. Lake Van		
5 URARTIANS		E. the Gediz & Menderes Rivers		

4.	IONIANS		D. Lake Van					
5.	URARTIANS		E. the Gediz & I	Mender	es Rivers	}		
Ь	civilization. WHO DID WHAT 1. Mining was thei 2. Their capital was 3. Tawananna was 4. They signed the 5. They built Arten 6. They were the fi 7. "Iliad and Odyss 8. They were famous 9. They progressed	r profession. s Gordium. their queen. first written agreement, Kad misia Temple in Ephesus. rst to use money. sey" was a part of their literat us for their castles and canal	ture. s.	Hittites	Phrygians		onians Ionians	Urartians
3		nd prepare a spoken	4 GAME Write a wo learned in starts a sto with two s wrote.	this u	nit. Afte ntinue th	r your t e story	eacher in turns	
1	THE RESERVE OF THE PARTY OF THE	The state of the s	NAME AND ADDRESS OF TAXABLE PARTY.	THE RESERVE	THE PERSON NAMED IN	THE PERSON NAMED IN	1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1	STREET, SQUARE

READING & WRITING



What do these pictures remind you of? Share your thoughts with class.



- Answer the following questions. Share your answers with class.
 - 1. Are you interested in ancient civilizations settled around Aegean Sea?
 - 2. Would you like to be a queen or king in ancient times? Why? Why not?
 - 3. Do you think the lifestyle of the ancient times was more enjoyable than of today? Why? Why not?
 - 4. Would you like to be a warrior in ancient times? Why? Why not?

3 READING

Scan the article below. Then tick () the items mentioned in the article.

Pandora's Box	Sparta
Agamemnon	Trojan Horse
Romans	☐ Iliad and Odyssey
Socrates	Zeus

ANCESTORS OF WESTERN CULTURES

A The ideas and achievements of Ancient Greece still affect us today. Democracy, philosophy, dramatic tragedies, the Olympic Games, and sculptures have their origins in Ancient Greece. Western culture was mostly shaped by the ideas of Ancient Greece.

- B The most important thought was the human itself. Even their gods were described as human. The Greek gods had human emotions. For example, the Greeks believed that when it thundered, Zeus, the king of the gods and goddesses, was expressing his anger.
- Geography played an important role in the development of Ancient Greek civilization. As the Greeks had easy access to water resources, they became explorers and traders. Besides, high mountains made it difficult to communicate and this led to the development of the polis. Because of the limited communication, each polis developed differently from each other. The best examples were Athens and Sparta. They were poles apart; still, they fought throughout their history. Athens was the think tank of the ancient Greece whereas Sparta gave importance to military might.
- The polytheistic belief was adopted by the Greeks. There were more than 15 gods or goddesses and each had a different role. They always had an argument among themselves.
- Have you ever heard about Pandora's Box? In a myth, Zeus created an unbelievably beautiful and perfect woman named Pandora, but she had one weakness: she was very curious. What she needed was a short sharp shock, so Zeus sent her a golden box and warned her not to open it. Despite the warning, Pandora opened the box. Many bad evils causing trouble to humanity such as drought, poverty, and sadness flew out of the box. The only thing remained in the box was hope. The moral message of the myth is the danger of curiosity.
- In addition, theatres were popular in ancient Greek culture. The Greeks built huge, flawless amphitheatres and put on a mask during their performances. The most known work of art was Homer's epic poems "Iliad and Odyssey".
- G The most well-known philosophers also lived in ancient Greek such as Socrates, Aristotle, and Plato. Aristotle and Plato were Socrates' students and followers.

- Read the article on "Ancestors of Western Cultures". Then write the number of each paragraph next to its main idea.
 - 1. ___ Curiosity is dangerous.
 - 2. ___ Geography had a great role in shaping the people and civilizations.
 - 3. ___ Ancient Greeks were polytheist.
 - **4.** ___ Many important philosophers grew up in ancient Greece.
 - 5. ___ Ancient Greek gave importance to art such as theatre.
 - **6.** ____ Today's Western culture has its origins in ancient Greece.
 - 7. ___ For ancient Greeks, the most important thing was the human itself.

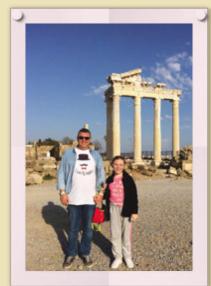
- Answer the questions according to the article.
 - 1. Which cultural elements of the West have their origins in ancient Greece?
 - 2. Who was Zeus?
 - **3.** What made ancient Greeks traders?
 - **4.** Why were Athens and Sparta poles apart?
 - 5. What did Zeus send Pandora?
 - **6.** What was Pandora's only weakness?
 - 7. When did ancient Greeks use masks?
 - 8. Guess the meaning of the underlined idiom in the article.

4 PROJECT TIME



Prepare a poster describing the ancient Anatolian Civilization you presented in class. You can use your own photos if you have visitied any of these places.





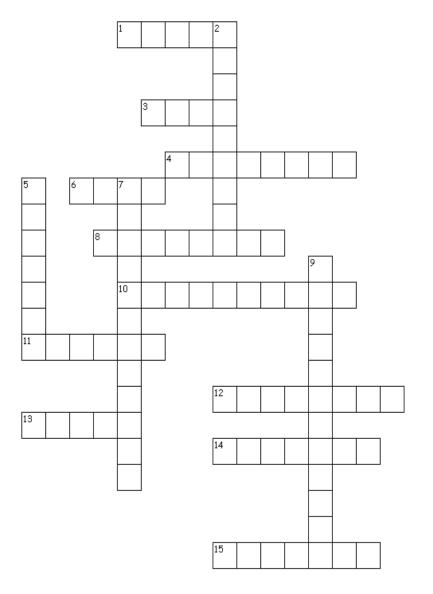
MY DAD AND I IN SİDE



5 VOCABULARY

Do the crossword puzzle below by writing the words in the box and with the help of the given hints.

- ◆ sculpture ◆ goddess ◆ explorer ◆ trader ◆ polis ◆ think tank ◆ might ◆ polytheistic ◆ unfavourable
- evil drought poverty hope flawless ultimate.



ACROSS

- 1. city-state
- 3. something that is very bad
- **4.** more important than everything
- **6.** to want something to happen
- 8. perfect
- 10. thinkers
- **11.** a person who buys and sells things
- 12. traveller to unknown places
- 13. power
- 14. being extremely poor
- 15. female god

DOWN

- **2.** art of forming concrete objects
- 5. lack of rain
- 7. belief in many different gods
- **9.** unfriendly

6 WRITING

Work in groups. The masks below were used in theatrical performances in ancient Greek. Write roles for each. Create a short scenario of a theatrical performance in ancient Greek.









7 SPEAKING

Act out the scenario you wrote in Exercise 6.

- 8 LISTENING (Track 6))
- a Listen to the song "Man Gave Names to All the Animals" by Bob Dylan. Fill in the blanks while listening.



Man gave names to all the animals In the beginning, in the beginning Man gave names to all the animals In the beginning, long time ago.

He saw an animal that ¹______ to growl Big furry paws and he liked to howl Great big furry back and furry ²_____ "Ah, think I'll call it a bear".

Man gave names to all the animals In the beginning, in the beginning Man gave names to all the animals In the beginning, long time ago.

He saw an animal up on a ³______Chewing up so much grass until she was filled He saw ⁴_____coming out but he didn't know how

"Ah, think I'll call it a ⁵_____."

b

Man gave names to all the animals In the beginning, in the beginning Man gave names to all the animals In the beginning, long time ago.

Horns on his head and they weren't too short
It ⁷ like there wasn't nothing that he couldn't pull
"Ah, I'll think I'll call it a ⁸ ".
Man gave names to all the animals
In the beginning, in the beginning
Man gave names to all the animals
In the beginning, long time ago.
0 0 0
He saw an animal leaving a 9 trail
Real dirty face and a curly tail
He wasn't too ¹⁰ and he wasn't too big
"Ah, think I'll call it a 11".
Man gave names to all the animals
In the beginning, in the beginning
Man gave names to all the animals
In the beginning, long time ago.
Next animal that he did meet
had wool on his back and 12 on his feet
Eating grass on a mountainside so steep
"Ah, think I'll call it a ¹³ ".
Man gave names to all the animals
In the beginning, in the beginning
Man gave names to all the animals
In the beginning, long time ago.
He saw an animal as 14 as glass
Slithering his way through the 15
Saw him disappear by a tree near a ¹⁶
What can be the last animal referred to in
the last line?
Write one more line for this song.

LEAD IN

Answer the following questions.

- 1. Do you like visiting historic places? Why? Why not?
- 2. What is the historic place you would like to visit most?
- 3. Which historic place you visited is your favourite?
- **4.** Describe a historic place that you know about.
- 5. What do you think of the future trend for historic places?

LISTENING & SPEAKING



1 VOCABULARY

Match the words with their meanings. Use your dictionary.

- 1. abandoned ___ **a.** broken parts that are left from an old building
- **b.** to be unsuccessful **2.** fire away ____
- **3.** track ___ c. a place used to worship God
- **4.** fail **d.** telling someone they may begin
- **5.** ruin ___ e. heaven, a perfect place
- **6.** paradise ___ f. left behind
- 7. temple ___ g. a type of a path or road

2 LISTENING (Track 7)))

Listen and circle the correct one.

- 1. This must be grandma/ grandpa as she said she would call us.
- 2. We're about to eat a hamburger/ pizza.
- 3. I know you can't/ can be at home.
- 4. This might be a *pyramid*/ dynamite.
- 5. Then you must be in *Egypt/* Aegean.
- 6. This *may/ might* be the ruins of an ancient civilization.
- 7. Are you in Miami/ Dubai?
- 8. This is your last change/ chance.



CHECK THIS OUT!

DEDUCTION

We use may/might/must/can't to say how sure we are about something.

When we feel sure that something is true, we use "must".

e.g. You must be sad as you're crying.

We use "may, might, could" to say that we think it is possible.

e.g. She isn't at school; she may/ might be at home.

We use "can't" when we feel something is not true.

e.g. She can't be with you, she is with me now.



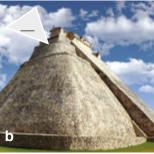




JASON and EDWARD

b Listen again and number the pictures in the order you hear.









c Circle the correct option.

- 1. Who is Sophie?
 - a. Jason's grandma
 - **b.** Edward's grandma
- 2. Is Edward sure that Sophie is not at home?
 - a. He is not sure that she is at home.
 - **b.** He is sure that she is not at home.
- **3.** Is Edward sure that the building in the picture is a pyramid?
 - a. He is sure.
 - **b.** He is not sure.
- **4.** Is Jason sure that his grandma is in Egypt?
 - a. He feels sure.
 - **b.** He doesn't feel sure.
- **5.** Is Sophie in Egypt?
 - a. Yes, she is.
 - **b.** No, she isn't.
- **6.** What did Jason say about the second picture?
 - **a.** This may be the ruins of an ancient civilization.
 - **b.** This might be an abandoned house in a village.
- 7. Where is Sophie?
 - a. In Morocco
 - **b.** In Mexico
- d Listen again and write four sentences expressing 'negative' or 'positive' deduction from the conversation.

3 SPEAKING

Work in pairs. Look at the pictures and talk about them using the hints given.



e.g.

- On the right of the picture there is a luggage. They might be tourists.
- Probably they are students.
- They can't be bad friends as they are happy together.
- They may be a newly-wed couple on honeymoon.



• This city must/ may/ might/ could/ can't be...



- In the middle of the picture there is ...
- At the top of the picture, ...
- On the left/ right of the picture,...
- Maybe,...
- This city must/ may/ might/ could/ can't be...

READING & WRITING



VOCABULARY

Fill in the blanks with the given words in the box. Use your dictionary.

- ◆ Open-air ◆ Fresco ◆ Cave ◆ Colleague ◆ Native ◆ Wonderland ◆ Hot-air balloon
- 1. "______" is used to describe a place that does not have a roof.
- 2. "_____" is a member of a group of people who work together.
- 3. "______" is an aircraft whose bag is filled with gas and it has a basket to carry people.
- **4.** "______" is a place that is attractive and beautiful.
- 5. "_____" is a large hole on the side of a hill.
- **6.** "______" is an adjective relating to first people to live in an area.
- 7. "_____" is a painting on a wall or ceiling.

GAME

Find the words you have learned in Exercise 1 in 40 seconds by scanning the text below.

3 **READING**

Read the paragraph and say whether Sophie liked Göreme or not.

ONE DAY FROM SOPHIE'S DIARY

Today I visited Göreme Open-Air Museum in Turkey on my colleague's suggestion. The formations were so close to the Göreme village that it took us only 15 minutes to get there on foot. I had once heard about Cappadocia and the hot-air balloons, but I didn't know how amazed I would be. I thought that there were only geographical formations. There is a fascinating history beyond the formations. Göreme was like a fabulous wonderland. There were plenty of caves. As soon as I entered one of them, a different, but a nice smell welcomed me. It smelled like a fruit-flavoured candy. After I stepped in, I felt like I was a native of that cave. On my right there was a huge colourful drawing of an animal. When I looked up to the ceiling, I admired the frescoes. They were still colourful. The cave was silent, but it sounded as if there were children singing a song silently. The caves gave me an idea about the



- Read the paragraph again and write true (T) or false (F). Correct the false ones.
 - 1. Sophie's colleague didn't know about Göreme. ___
 - 2. Sophie saw that Göreme was only famous for its geographical shapes. ____
 - 3. Sophie and her colleague walked just a little to Göreme Open-Air Museum. ____
 - 4. The smell was fine inside the caves. ____
 - 5. There were children singing in the cave. ____
- Answer the following questions according to the paragraph.
 - 1. How did she feel when she first visited Göreme?
 - 2. What kind of smell welcomed her when she entered a cave?
 - **3**. What were there on the ceiling of the cave?

CHECK THIS OUT!

A Descriptive Paragraph Includes:

- · Sensory details
- · Analogies
- Adjectives
- Order of the events
- Look at the CHECK THIS OUT! box. Study the paragraph "One Day from Sophie's Diary" considering the criterias included in a descriptive paragraph. Find examples in the paragraph and write them in the correct row below.

	Examples From The Paragraph
Sensory Details	
Analogies	
Adjectives	
Order of Events	

PROJECT TIME

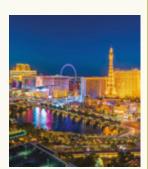


Prepare a short presentation on a historic place in your city. Share it in class.

- 1. What is the location of the historic place?
- **2.** Is it a favourite tourist attraction? Why?
- 3. What is its architecture like?
- **4.** What is the history of the place?
- 5. Which empire or ancient civilization built it?

DO YOU KNOW THIS?

World's 3 Most Visited Attractions



1. Las Vegas Strip



2. Times Square, New York City

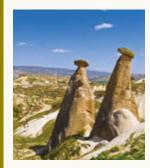


3. Central Park, New York City

Turkey's 3 Most Visited Attractions



1. Hagia Sophia



2. Goreme Fairy Chimneys



3. Library of Celsus

5 Read the dialogue below and fill in the blanks with the phrases in the box.

- ◆ are close to each other ◆ must be other
- can't be within walking distance
- ◆ could make a plan ◆ must be very attractive

Sophie and her son Edward are trying to decide which historical place to visit tomorrow as they are in Istanbul for a week.

Sophie: I think the Blue mosque

1 _____ as nearly five million people visit it in one year.

Edward: You are right. As I see on the map, Hagia Sophia and the Blue Mosque

2 _____.

Sophie: Then we may walk.

Edward: I think so.

Sophie: I see Basilica Cistern is around there. We might visit there after the Blue Mosque.

Edward: Great idea!

Sophie: How about Galata Tower?

Edward: I'm really curious about it, too. But I think it 3_____ from

Sultan Ahmet.

Sophie: A friend of me advised to walk.

Edward: Then there ⁴______ must-see places on our way to Galata Tower.

Sophie: I think so.

Edward: We might eat grilled fish sandwich in

Eminönü.

Sophie: This trip will be enough

for one day. Maybe we

for the night.

Edward: Good idea!

We can eat dinner in

Üsküdar. May be, you want to see the Maiden's Tower.

It is really beautiful and has a

great legend.

Sophie: I once heard about it.

I think this is a great idea

to eat dinner there.

Edward: Let's execute

our plan!

6 WRITING

Write a descriptive paragraph about a historic place you visited with minimum 150 maximum 250 words. Your paragraph should include sensory details, analogies, adjectives, and event order.

	MOU

7 Choose the correct option. Give one point for each true answer.

ARE YOU A HISTORY BUFF?

- 1. What was the capital of Urartu?
 - a. Gordium
 - b. Hattusa
 - c. Tushpa
 - d. Sardes
- **2.** Which of the following ancient civilizations earned their living by trade?
 - a. The Lydians
 - **b.** The Urartians
 - c. The Hittites
 - d. The Ionians
- **3.** Which of the following ancient civilization gave importance to women?
 - a. The Lydians
 - **b.** The Phrygians
 - c. The Hittites
 - d. The Ionians
- **4.** Which ancient civilization's capital city was the city Ephesus?
 - a. The Lydians
 - b. The Urartians
 - c. The Phrygians
 - d. The Ionians
- 5. What was the Hittites famous for?
 - a. Being first to use money
 - b. Castles and canals
 - c. Treaty of Kadesh
 - d. Iliad and Odyssey
- **6.** What was the capital city of the Phrygians?
 - a. Sard
 - b. Tushpa
 - c. Gordium
 - d. Miletus
- 7. What was the Lydians famous for?
 - a. Castles and canals
 - b. Weaving
 - c. Being the first to use money
 - d. Kadesh Agreement

- 8. Who was Tavananna?
 - a. Queen of the Hittites
 - b. Queen of the Lydians
 - c. Queen of the Phrygians
 - d. Queen of the Urartians
- **9.** Which of the following ancient civilization settled around Lake Van?
 - a. The Lydians
 - **b.** The Ionians
 - c. The Phrygians
 - d. The Urartians
- 10. Which sentence is true?
 - **a.** Pandora is the princess of ancient Greece.
 - **b.** Pandora didn't open the box.
 - c. Zeus created Pandora.
 - d. Pandora is Zeus's daughter.
- **11.** What was the ancient Greeks' main profession?
 - a. Trading
 - b. Fishing
 - c. Farming
 - d. Mining
- **12.** Where did the ancient Greeks settle around?
 - a. Black Sea
 - b. Mediterranean Sea
 - c. Aegean Sea
 - d. Adriatic Sea
- **13.** What was the most known literary work in ancient Greek times?
 - a. Works and Days
 - b. Illiad and Odyssey
 - c. Defence of Socrates
 - d. Symposion

LET'S SEE!

- **9 and more points:** Excellent! You're a real history buff.
- **4-9 points:** Well! You're about to be a history buff.
- 4 or less points: You should study more.





LEAD IN

Answer the following questions.

- 1. How do you come to school? How long does it take?
- 2. Do you like travelling? Which is your favourite way of travelling?
- 3. Do you and your family go on a holiday? How do you travel? Where do you stay?
- 4. Read what Elbert Hubbard said about holiday. Do you agree with him? Have you ever felt such a "need"?

No man needs a vacation so much as the person who just had one.

Elbert Hubbard

LISTENING & SPEAKING



1 VOCABULARY

a Underline the means of transport in the dialogue below.

Gram: Hi, Mike. Are you ready to set off? You are leaving tomorrow, aren't you?

Mike: Yes, tomorrow. I am a bit worried about driving that far. Do you think it is a good idea to go by car?

Gram: Going by train takes much longer. It won't be a better option. Have you thought about going by plane?

Mike: Unfortunately, I couldn't find any plane tickets suitable to my schedule.

Gram: I prefer taking a tour by coach for my holiday. You can watch the view while travelling and you don't get stressed out. This is holiday.

Mike: Sounds better, but too late for me for this summer.

b Listen and write the names of the means of transport. (Track 1)

Number 1 is a _____

Number 2 is a _____

Number 3 is a _____

Number 4 is a _____

Number 5 is a _____

Number 6 is a _____

Number 7 is a _____

Number 8 is a _____

c Unscramble the letters and find the means of transport.

1. ntair _____

2. cohca _____

3. bswyua _____

4. rtoscoe _____

5. peje _____

REMEMBER THIS!

- You go **by** car or you drive, but you go **in** Mike's car.
- + You go by bike, bus, train, etc.
- You take or you catch a bus, train, plane, etc.
- You go on foot or you walk.

2 READING

- a Match the types of the holiday with the pictures.
 - ◆ Camping holiday ◆ Beach holiday
 - ◆ Skiing holiday ◆ Safari holiday
 - Sightseeing holiday







1. _____ 2. ___

2.

3. _____





4. _____ 5. ____

b Read the phone call between Alison and Kenzy and then the blog. Decide if the sentences about Kenzy are true (T) or false (F). Correct the false ones.

Kenzy: Hi, Alison. This is Kenzy.

Alison: Hi, Kenzy. You haven't been around for so long. How are you doing?

Kenzy: Not bad. I am working on my blog, you know. I haven't added the photos yet, but can you do

me a favour and have a look at what I have done so far?

Alison: Surely I can. Just e-mail it to me.

Kenzy: Thanks, Alison. I am sending right now.



- Kenzy has taken a tour bus in London.
- **2.** It was the spring time when Kenzy went to London.
- **3.** There isn't a childhood photo of Kenzy on the blog. ____
- **4.** Kane broke his ankle while swimming. ____
- **5.** She has a lot of photos from the winter holiday. ____

- c Read the dialogues below and discuss what kind of holiday they might be going to.
 - 1. Shop assistant: How can I help you?

Customer: I need binoculars with a wide angle, please. I am going to Africa on a holiday and I don't want to miss a single thing in the wild.

2. Wife: We must buy hiking boots for Jack and a sleeping bag to keep him warm at nights.

Husband: It is just for one night. Let's not buy a sleeping bag.

3. Son: Mum, have you put my waterproof gloves in the bag?

Mother: Yes, they are in the same bag with your skis.

3 SPEAKING

Talk to your friends about the type of holiday you prefer, where you would like to stay, and things you would like to see.

e.g. I'd like to go on a beach holiday with my sister. Since I love water very much, I'd prefer a holiday village with a huge aqua park...

Type of a holiday?

Who/ with?

What activities?

Place to stay in?

Which places?

4 LISTENING)) (Track 2)

a Listen and fill in the blanks and complete the missing parts of the dialogue.

(At home)

Mr. Mill: We haven't talked about our holiday this year yet.

Mrs. Mill: Yes. We should start planning. What type? Where?

Mr. Mill: Well, I haven't thought about it. Have you?

Mrs. Mill: Neither have I. How about going to a travel agency and seeing what they offer?

Mr. Mill: It sounds good.

(At the travel agent's)

Mr. and Mrs. Mill: Hi, we are Mr. and Mrs. Mill and we want to plan a ¹______

Travel agent: Hi, Mr. and Mrs. Mill. What type of holiday are you planning?

Mrs. Mill: We both like the sun, sea, and swimming. We want a beach holiday. And some ²_____ as well.

Travel agent: I suggest that you go to Turkey if you haven't been there. It is a perfect place for you.

Mr. Mill: No, we haven't. ³______ does the flight take from here to Turkey?

Travel agent: A bit long, about 13 hours - direct flight- but it is worth it.

Mr. Mill: Sure. I have heard of it before. And the ⁴_____?

Travel agent: There are hotels, holiday resorts, and all the other ways of accommodation. Here are some brochures about Turkey.

Mr. Mill: OK. We will have a look and then get in touch ⁵______ you again.



b Cover the dialogue, listen again, and answer the following questions.

- **1.** How long will Mr. and Mrs. Mill be on holiday?
- **2.** Why did the travel agent suggest them going to Turkey?
- **3.** Does it take a long time to travel to Turkey from the USA?
- **4.** Are there many chances to find a good place to stay in?
- **5.** Have Mr. and Mrs. Mill decided where to go vet?

5 SPEAKING

a Role play:

Student A: You want to go on a holiday, and you go to a travel agent.

Student B: You are a travel agent.

talk about:		
city/country	accommodation	travel
natural beauty	facilities	ways to get
to see		there
locations	rooms	length of
		travel
sights to see/	price	direct or
activities to do		stopover

b Give a short presentation to your class.

- **1.** How do you and your family usually spend your holidays?
- 2. When and where did you go on a holiday last? What was it like?

READING & WRITING



PRONUNCIATION))

Listen to the rising and falling intonations of the questions. (Track 3)



- Complete the sentences to write the rule for intonation of question tags.
 - Tag questions are fun, aren't they?

A question tag with ¹____intonation means

'I know what I am saying is correct'.

• Sophia's made the cake, hasn't she?

A question tag with 2_____ intonation means

'I'm not sure if this is true, please answer'.

- Listen to the intonations and decide if they are "real" questions or just to "confirm". (Track 4)
 - 1. You said you are hungry, didn't you?
 - 2. Samuel lives in an apartment, doesn't he?
 - 3. Your son is in my class, isn't he?
 - 4. I am not late, am I?
 - 5. Your teacher can drive, can't he?
- Write five sentences that you think are true about your friend. Ask them to your friend to see how well you know him or her. Use tag questions with falling intonation.
- e.g. Your favourite colour is red, isn't it?



REMEMBER THIS!

We use tag questions to ask real questions or just to receive confirmation.

They are formed with the auxiliary verb but with the main verb (to be)

- You are happy, aren't you?
- We aren't tired, are we?
- + I am not young, am I?
- + I am young, aren't I?
- She gets up early, doesn't she?
- + Tom didn't call you, did he?



2 READING

- a You are going to read Sarah's letter to a friend. Look at the list of words taken from her letter and guess what the letter is about.
 - book vacation half board ticket check in
 journey

Hi Emily,

It's been a long time since we last got together. How are things?

For me it was a great summer and I had a very good vacation in the USA. This is what they call a holiday. You know, I had a business trip to the USA two years ago, so I wanted to be there again. On the trip, it was a half board stay because there were meetings out for lunch. I stayed full board this summer because I didn't want to miss any meals of the day. 1_____

The journey from London to Miami took a bit long, but it was comfortable and cheap because I had bought my return ticket, not one way ticket and in advance. I would come back anyway. ²______

I had already booked the hotel online, phoned and confirmed the reservation, and guess what? I checked-in on time, no delay in my flight. 3_____

Staying at a hotel was good, but I learnt that there were many types of accommodation there, such as apartments, guesthouses, and backpacking hostels. Self-catering apartments cost less, but I don't like to spend my time cooking on holiday. 4_____

The only problem was that, while checking-out I realised that I had forgotten my credit card back in London. ⁵

I'll write the rest of my story later. I have to go now.

Hope to see you soon,

Love,

Sarah

- b Read the letter above and put the following sentences into the correct place in the letter.
 - A. What a shock!
 - B. You know how much I am into it.
 - C. This is lucky these days.
 - **D.** I already have enough of it here.
 - **E.** They say "There is no place like home." you know.

1.	
	place to another
2.	A room or building in which someone may live or stay.
3.	A holiday
4.	Arrive and register at a hotel of airport.
5.	A ticket for a journey that can only be used to travel in one direction and not for returnin
6.	The price for a room in a hote which includes breakfast and dinner.
7.	A journey in which you visit a place for a short time and comback again
8.	Reserve accommodation, buy advance
E:1	ll in the sentences below with
th	e correct words among the ghlighted words in the letter.
the	ghlighted words in the letter.
the hig 1. W	ghlighted words in the letter. A: Hey Susan, it is nice to see yo
the hig 1. W B:	ghlighted words in the letter. A: Hey Susan, it is nice to see you here have you been for so long? I have been on a holiday and pursome weight, look at me!
the high 1. W. B: on A: 2.	chlighted words in the letter. A: Hey Susan, it is nice to see you here have you been for so long? I have been on a holiday and pursome weight, look at me! It was a stay, I gues
the his 1. W. B: on A: 2. on B:	chlighted words in the letter. A: Hey Susan, it is nice to see you here have you been for so long? I have been on a holiday and pursome weight, look at me! It was a stay, I guess A: Dad, what is this RTN writted my ticket?
the his 1. W. B: on A: 2. on B: an 3.	chlighted words in the letter. A: Hey Susan, it is nice to see you here have you been for so long? I have been on a holiday and put some weight, look at me! It was a stay, I guest with this RTN writter my ticket? It is a ticket; you do dome back with this ticket. A: My stay is over. I am
the his 1. W. B: on A: on B: an 3. He	chlighted words in the letter. A: Hey Susan, it is nice to see you here have you been for so long? I have been on a holiday and pursome weight, look at me! It was a stay, I guest was a stay, I guest with this RTN writter my ticket? It is a ticket; you do come back with this ticket. A: My stay is over. I am tree is your room key.
the his 1. W. B: on A: 2. on B: an He	chlighted words in the letter. A: Hey Susan, it is nice to see you here have you been for so long? I have been on a holiday and put some weight, look at me! It was a stay, I guest with this RTN writter my ticket? It is a ticket; you do dome back with this ticket. A: My stay is over. I am

e Work in pairs. Talk about your best holiday by taking turns.

for you for 23rd September.

B: Yes, Mr. Mills. Let me check...

Yes, a single room has been booked

3 LISTENING (Track 5))

Listen to the phone call and fill in the blanks below.

Hotel staff: Happily Stay Hotel. This is Mike speaking. How can I help you?

Guest: I'd like to make a ¹_____, please.

Hotel staff: Certainly, sir. When would you like to check-in?

Guest: Well, It is an urgent business trip. I'll be there tomorrow. Do you have rooms available ²______ tomorrow night?

Hotel staff: Yes, sir. We do. Would you like a ³_____ or a double room and how long will you be staying?

Guest: A single room for two ⁴_____, please.

Hotel staff: A single room, and you will be checking-in on 13th and out on 15th, ⁵______you, sir?

Guest: That's correct.

Hotel staff: OK. For two nights from 13th to 15th.

Guest: I'd like a room with the city-view if possible. ⁶_____ how much is it for one night?

Hotel staff: That's 150 \$ per night.

Guest: That's all right for a ⁷_____ room.

Hotel staff: OK, sir. May I have your name, please?

Guest: Alfred Bakowska.

Hotel staff: Alfred Bakowsko. You said Bakowsko, ⁸______you?

Guest: No. That's Bakowska. B-A-K-O-W-S-K-A

Hotel staff: Thank you sir, and how will you be

paying? By 9_____ or in cash?

Guest: I'll be paying in cash while checking- out if that's OK.

Hotel staff: That's no problem, sir. Your single room with the city view has been ¹⁰_____ for tomorrow for two nights. Anything else I can do for you?

Guest: No, thanks. Oh, one more thing! Do I need to call ¹¹______ to confirm the reservation?

Hotel staff: No, sir. We are just looking ¹²_____to seeing you here tomorrow.

Guest: Thanks then, bye.

Hotel staff: Thanks, sir. Have a nice day.

4 WRITING

Work in pairs. Write a dialogue to make a reservation similar to the one above.

Receptionist: Centre Hotel. Can I help you?

Guest: Hi! I'd like to make a reservation, please.

5 SPEAKING 🖼

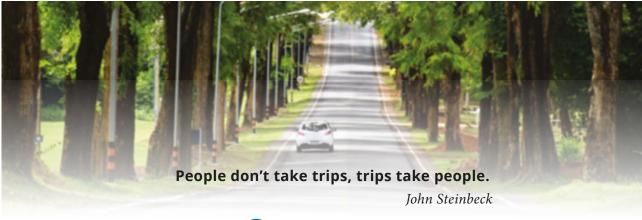
Act out the dialogue you have written in Exercise 4.

LEAD IN



Answer the following questions.

- 1. What does John Steinbeck mean in his quote below? Do you like this quote? Discuss. Why, why not?
- 2. What do you think of travelling?
- 3. Write your own quote about travelling.



LISTENING & SPEAKING 4



VOCABULARY

Read the dialogue and guess the meanings of the highlighted words or phrases from the context. Then, match the words with the definitions. Write them next to the definition

Mike: How was your flight? It was a 2 hourjourney, wasn't it?

Jack: Almost. The plane was scheduled to leave at 8:30 a.m., but it didn't take off until 8:55 a.m. The flight was delayed about 25 minutes.

Mike: Last month I flew to Rome. Unfortunately, the return flight back was cancelled.

Jack: Why? Was it because of the weather conditions?

Mike: Yes. There was a heavy snow. You didn't have any problems with the luggage, did you?

Jack: In fact, I did. When I arrived at the gate, the people had already boarded. I had overslept at the departure lounge. I was the last person to get onto the plane. There was no space left in the overhead locker to put my bag in. So, I had to put it under my seat. The cabin crew were very nice as always and helped me. And the pilot managed a smooth landing.

2 LISTENING) (Track 6)

a Listen and fill in the registration form A.



b Work in pairs. Role-play a dialogue to fill in the registration form B. One of you is the receptionist and the other is the guest.

A			
Comfort Hotel Registration Form			
Last name			
First name			
Home address Alvaro Ruiz Luna, 28300 Madrid SPAIN		na, 28300 Madrid SPAIN	
Nationality			
Occupation			
Date of arrival			
Date of departure			
Way of payment	card	cash	
Signature			

Comfort Hotel Registration Form				
Last name				
First name				
Home address				
Nationality				
Occupation				
Date of arrival				
Date of departure				
Way of payment	card		cash	
Signature				

3 READING

a Read what Judi tells about her neighbour. Underline the sentences in 'present perfect' form.

My next door neighbour is never at home. She is a real traveller! She has been to at least 30 countries so far. When she comes back, she tells us everything about her visits and brings lots of souvenirs.

On her travels, she has met some famous people as well. She once has met my favourite actor Bruce Willis on the plane. She was on the plane going to Italy last year and Bruce Willis was sitting next to her seat. This is so unfair!

She is not only a traveller but also an adventurer. She has done many different activities including some extreme ones like bungee jumping or cave diving. Five months ago she had a very bad accident and

stayed in a hospital for a month, but has anything changed? Is she at home now? Of course not! She has gone to Africa!

b Read the text again and answer the following questions.

- 1. How many countries has she been to?
- **2.** Does she usually share Judi's neighbour experiences with others?
- 3. Has she ever met someone famous?
- **4.** Has anything changed in her life after the accident?
- 5. Is she at home now? Where has she gone?

CHECK THIS OUT!

We use present perfect tense to talk about experiences at an unspecified time, changes, and news.

David: Jill, you look great!

Jill: Thanks, I've been on holiday. This must

be the reason.

David: And you have changed your hair colour.

Jill: Hey, you are very careful.

4 SPEAKING 🖼

- a Below is the seventh week score table of two teams from the premier league of Planet Zodia. Look at the table and talk about the teams as in the example.
- **e.g.** Zodiapower has played 9 matches. They have won 7 of them.

	matches		goals		
	won	drawn	lost	for	against
Zodiapower	7	0	2	25	6
Zodiastar	6	1	2	11	7

b Talk about your favourite team's matches.



CHECK THIS OUT!

She has **gone** to Italy = She is not here now, she is still there.

She has **been** to Italy = She went to Italy, but now she is back home.

- 5 Study the CHECK THIS OUT! box and complete the conversations with *been* or *gone*.
 - 1. A: Hello, Mr. Blake. Can I speak to Julia?
 - **B:** I am afraid she is not here. She has _____ out.
 - 2. A: You look tired.
 - **B:** I have _____ to the gym.
 - 3. A: Dad, where is mum?
 - **B:** She has _____ to the market to buy some milk.
 - **4. A:** Hey, you look tanned.
 - **B:** Yeah, I have _____ on holiday.

"

TODAY'S IDIOM

Have itchy feet

If you have itchy feet, it is difficult for you to stay in a place because you like travelling and discovering.

e.g. Chris has itchy feet, but he has to wait for the summer holiday.

- **6** Are the underlined verbs true or false? Tick the true ones, correct the false ones.
 - 1. I don't know that cafe. I haven't <u>been</u> there before.
 - 2. Why don't we ask Mike about Miami? He has gone there several times. ____
 - 3. You are very late. Where have you \underline{gone} ?
 - 4. Have you been to Turkey before, Tim? ____
 - 5. Hey, Deren! It is nice to see you again.
 Where have you gone? _____
 - 6. My teacher has <u>been</u> at this school for 10 year. ____

7 SPEAKING

Ask your friend which cities/ countries she or he has been to.

e.g.

Have you been to Antalya before?

Yes, I have.

No, I haven't.

READING & WRITING

1 READING

- a Answer the following questions.
 - 1. Why do you think travelling is so popular all around the world?
 - 2. What are your personal reasons for wanting to travel?
 - 3. A proverb says "Don't listen to what they say. Go and see." Do you agree? Why, why not?
- b Read the text and write the reasons of travelling from the box below into the blanks in the text. There is one extra.
 - ◆ Work ◆ Health ◆ Religious purpose ◆ Developing new perspectives ◆ Challenging oneself
 - ◆ Learning ◆ Rejuvenate ◆ Making new friends

Travelling is, in fact has been, a popular activity among people all around the world. It doesn't matter if it is within one's own country or to foreign countries, travelling is always appealing to a lot of people. There have been famous travellers such as Roald Amundsen, Marco Polo, Evliya Çelebi, and Ibn Battuta throughout the history. But the question is that why do people travel? Are the reasons same for everyone? The answer is "No." People travel usually for different reasons. The most common reason - excluding the necessary ones- is the idea of seeing, exploring, and experiencing new things, people, and places.

Like many other things, travelling is easy now when it is compared to the past. This means you can travel because of very personal reasons like wishing to have different meals in different cities- even countries.

because of very personal reasons like wishing to have different meals in different cities- even countries
Here are some reasons why so many people leave the comforts of their home and set off:
1
People travel to learn new languages, try new and interesting foods, meet other cultures and custom
they've never seen before.
2
People travel to other places to find a cure which is cheaper or better.
3
People travel because of their beliefs. The largest one is the
Hajj pilgrimage to Mecca.

People travel to see the world from different perspectives. They aim to understand other people.

People travel to find out how far one can go and to find

out their limits.

People travel depending on the job requirements. It is one of the most common reasons.

People travel just to relax body and mind, escape from the stress of daily life.

Which of the reasons in Exercise b are more motivating for the people in your country? Give examples as you discuss your answer to the question.



2 SPEAKING 🖼

Polly: Look at this photo. I am in front of the Topkapı Palace.

Sally: Oh yeah, you have been to

Turkey, haven't you? I couldn't remember that. When did you go?

Polly: I went there three years ago. Here, the 15th July Martyrs Bridge. A bridge between the two continents.

Sally: I think it is amazing. Have you seen the Golden Horn, too?

Polly: Yeah here, look. We have taken a boat trip there.

Sally: Very nice view! I am green with envy. I've only been to Cappadocia in Turkey. Have you been there? I went there with my family last summer. It was breathtaking.

Polly: No, unfortunately I haven't. I want to go there soon. I have read many things about it. Where did you stay when you went there?

Sally: We stayed in a highly recommended cave hotel.

Polly: Did you like it?

Sally: I did. And I bet that Cappadocia is the most picturesque place in the world.

a Read the dialogue and find the names of the places. Write them under the pictures. Have you ever been to any of these places? Share your answers with your friends.









3. ______ 4. _____

b Read the dialogue again. Write true (T), false (F) or doesn't say (DS).

- **1.** Polly has taken some photos in İstanbul. ____
 - **2.** Polly went there with her family. ____
 - **3.** Sally has been to Turkey. ____
 - **4.** Polly has been to Cappadocia.
- **5.** Sally didn't like Cappadocia. ____
- **6.** Both Polly and Sally have stayed in a cave hotel. ____
- c Who might have said these? Write 'Sally' or 'Polly'.
 - **1.** I know lots of things about the place. ____
 - **2.** A tourist was almost falling off the boat while taking photos. ____
 - **3.** It was cold inside. We asked for some extra blankets at night. ____
 - **4.** I have seen the room of Süleyman the Magnificent. ____
 - **5.** The view from the hot air balloon was fascinating. ____
- d Work in pairs. Say where you have been to, what you have done there, and give other details in simple past.
- **e.g. Bobby:** Have you been to Adana when you were in Turkey?

Kelly: Yes, I have.

Bobby: When did you go there?

Kelly: I went there in August.

Bobby: August? The weather was boiling

hot, wasn't it?

Kelly: You're telling me! We haven't done much because of the weather. I haven't been to a restaurant or eaten Adana Kebab.

Student A: You have been to France;

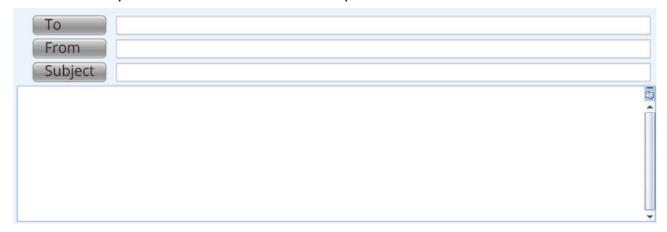
See the Eiffel Tower- sit and eat by the River Seine- visit Versailles Palace-get on a roller coaster in Disneyland

Student B: You have been to Spain;

See running of the bulls- go to Ibiza Islandvisit La Sagrada Familia church- see Real Madrid/Barcelona match

3	WRITING
a	Answer the following questions.
	1. Do you send postcards, text messages, or e-mails when you are on holiday?
	2. Do you use a formal or informal language?
	3. What do you write on your e-mail? Put a tick
	next to them and add your ideas.
	food weather people
	friends places plans plans
b	Read the following e-mail from Henry who has been in
	Japan since last month. Answer the questions below.
	TO dady35@tohmail.com
	From Henry
	Subject
	Dear mum and dad,
	This is a very nice evening and I'm sitting on the balcony of my flat.
	I've been here for a month and everything is so good. The school hasn't started yet, but I've already made some friends. They're all exchange students like me.
	Good news! I've finally been to the Mount Fuji. Yesterday my new friends and I went on a tour there. It was fantastic.
	And I've just been to Hanami in the afternoon. Mum, you must see the trees here. They're OSM!
	Tomorrow we're going to see KABUKI- a Japanese performing art form.
	That's all for now.
	Missed you,
	Love,
	Henry XXX
	1 M/h et did he go to the Mount Euii with?

- **1.** What did Henry mention in his e-mail?
- 2. How long has he been in Japan?
- 3. Has he been to the Mount Fuji yet?
- **4.** Who did he go to the Mount Fuji with?
- **5.** What are they going to do tomorrow?
- **6.** Did he use an acronym or short form in his e-mail?
- c Choose a city and write an e-mail from there to your friend.



LEAD IN



Answer the following questions.

- 1. Do you buy your travel tickets online or from the ticket office?
- 2. Have you ever got on a wrong bus/ train/ plane?
- **3.** What is your worst travel experience?

LISTENING & SPEAKING



1 LISTENING (Track 7)))

Listen to the dialogues and answer the following questions.

Diaolgue I

- 1. Which train is the speaker asking about?
- 2. Which platform is it arriving at?

Diaolgue II

- 1. What time is the first direct train to Oxford?
- **2.** Does the speaker want a single or return ticket?
- 3. Which platform does the train to Oxford leave from?

Diaolgue III

- 1. Where does the tourist want to go?
- **2.** How often does the train come around that time of the day?
- **3.** Where must the tourist get off the train?

READING 2

Read the dialogue and fill in the table below with the flight options for Tim and Clare.

Clare: Now that our hotel reservation is OK, let's buy the ticket, shall we?

Tim: OK. Let's have a look. Hmm, there is only one direct flight from San Francisco to İstanbul. It is at 6:00 a.m. I think it is too early. Can we make it?

Clare: Is it departing from SFO Airport?

Tim: Yes, arriving at İstanbul Atatürk Airport. It takes about 13 hours. Flight number TK80 and aircraft type 77W are the other details here.

Clare: Actually sitting on the plane for so long may not be a good idea. Let's look at the layover flights.

Tim: OK. Here is one. Departing at 07:00 here with A300, the flight number AC 725, arriving at Toronto YYZ airport within 5 hours. Then flying to İstanbul at 16:00 with an A312 with AC 758 flight number. It takes 10 hours. Does it sound any better?

Clare: Not much. Look! Are there any stopover flights? We can spend a night in Barcelona with your sister and then fly to İstanbul?

Tim: Let me check. Yes there is one. Departing at 07.30 a.m. from SFO Airport. Arriving at

> Barcelona Airport at 21.30 with the flight number AA66. It is 123B aircraft. And the next day departing at 7.30 a.m. arriving at İstanbul Sabiha Gökçen Airport at 11.05 with flight number TK 1287 on 32B. You know these planes are very comfortable.

Clare: This is the best option for us. Let's buy the tickets.

- Flight information Departure Arrival Time Time Duration Flight Airport Airport Aircraft No. type San 7:00 Toronto 16:00 AC A300 Francisco YZZ 16 hours 725 Airport Airport 12:00 02:00 A312 Toronto İstanbul AC YYZ Atatürk 758 Airport Airport
- b Put a tick () next to the flight option they choose in the table.
- Check the meaning of 'layover flights' and 'stopover flights' from your dictionary.

3 SPEAKING

What are the pros and cons of travelling by plane? Discuss with your friends.

e.g.

Travelling by plane is comfortable, but expensive.

CHECK THIS OUT!

already earlier than expectedjust a very short time ago

yet before now - in negative and

questions

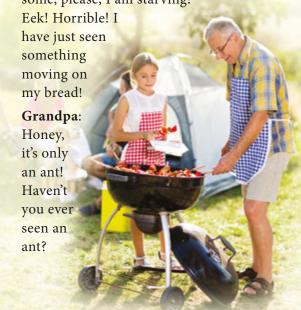
ever at any time

- 4 Read the dialogue below between Lisa and her grandpa. Underline words related to 'time'.
- **e.g.** She has <u>already</u> done the ironing.

Lisa: Grandpa, have you cooked the sausages yet?

Grandpa: Yes, I have just finished cooking them. Are you ready to eat? Have you cleaned your hands yet? Have you set the table?

Lisa: No, we haven't set the table yet, but I have already washed my hands. Give me some, please, I am starving!



5 Look at the pictures below and write what has *just* happened under each picture.



1



•	2



3. _____

6 Lin is going abroad on a holiday. She has done some preparations, but not finished all. Write sentences with *yet* and *already*.

LIN'S TO DO LIST

1. Change money
2. Buy a guide book 🗸
3. Organise care for the pet ✓
4. Buy a plane ticket
5. Book a hotel 🗸
6. Apply for the passport ✓
7. Prepare an itinerary

7 Circle the correct word.

8. Asked for some advice

- 1. I only arrived here yesterday, but I have already/ just visited three museums.
- **2.** I've **just**/ **yet** come back from my holiday, but I have **already**/ **yet** started to plan next one.
- **3.** Are you still ill? Haven't you been to the doctor's **yet**/ **ever**?
- 4. "Have you written to Tom?" "Yes, I've yet/ already finished, but I haven't posted yet/ iust."
- **5.** "Is the report ready?" "No, I have **just**/ **already** arrived."
- 8 What time is it now? Say what you have already/just done, and you haven't done yet up to this time of the day.
- **e.g.** I haven't had dinner yet./ I have read 40 pages up to now.

READING & WRITING



READING 1

- Answer the following questions.
 - 1. Do you think experiences are valuable? Why, why not?
 - 2. A Latin proverb says "Believe him who speaks from experience." Do you agree? Why, why not?
- Read the pieces of advice from some experienced travellers and find a topic for each from the list below.





- Electronics
- Money
- ◆ Local research
- ◆ Things to take
- Luggage and packing



Have a photocopy of your passport in case it gets lost or stolen.

Clare, England



Be sure that you have all the necessary vaccinations and prescriptions.

Jack, Canada



Always have some local cash as not every place accept credit cards.

Liz, France



Countries might have different voltages and plugs. Be prepared for it. Sezin, Turkey



Have extra clothing in your carry-on bag in case there is a problem with your luggage.

Aika, Japan



Get a guidebook of the country you are visiting.

Carl, Germany



Take a top on board as it is always cold at 35.000 feet.

Mahmud, Egypt

- Which texts are the following sentences taken from? Write the name of the person who is giving related advice next to the sentences.
 - **1.** Activate your mobile's international capacity.
 - **2.** Adding overseas cover to your medical insurance for emergency is a good idea. _____
 - 3. You can go to the embassy and prove your citizenship with it.
 - **4.** Having the name tags on your bags helps much. _
 - **5.** Check the dates of the celebrations or festivals of the country you are visiting.
 - **6.** Prefer ATMs to avoid rip offs. _
 - 7. You might need your ear plugs to sleep in the train or plane. _____

- 2 Mary wants to take a gap year and has some questions to Susan who took a gap year before starting university. Do the following tasks.
- a Find Mary's missing sentences from the box below and complete the dialogue.
 - **A.** Did you like it? That's where I am planning to go. I am going to work for a conservation project.
 - **B.** OK. Susan, thank you very much for all these. I am afraid I'll ask more questions another time again.
 - **C.** Yes, it is. You have been to Kenya, haven't you?
 - **D.** Hi Susan. Do you have some time? I need to talk to you.
 - **E.** In which month were you there? What was the weather like? Where did you stay? I have hundreds of questions in my mind.
 - **F.** So, I'd better take sun cream and insect repellent, then. How about the food?

Susan: Hello Mary. Surely I do. Is it about your gap year plans?

Mary: ²____

Susan: That's correct. I was there for 6 months, and I did some voluntary work two years ago.

Mary: ³_____

Susan: I liked it very much indeed. Kenya is the most exciting place I have ever been to. I have had lots of new skills and experiences there.

Mary: 4_____

Susan: Hey! Slow down. I'll ease your mind. I went there in June and the weather was terribly hot. We worked at a zoo all day long. We had a kind of student hostel, but we slept in tents most of the time.

Mary: 5_____

Susan: We worked so hard and got very hungry that we could eat anything. It wasn't a problem. But taking some biscuits with you would be a good idea until you get used to Kenyan food.

Mary: 6_____

Susan: No problem Mary. Feel free.

b What other questions would you ask Susan?

Work in pairs. Imagine you are planning to go on holiday in a foreign country and your partner has been there before. Prepare a dialogue asking about his or her experiences. Role-play it in the classroom.

4 SPEAKING 🖼

a Which adjectives do you use to describe a place? Make a list as a class.

Modern		
Lively		

- b Match the adjectives with the pictures and then write sentences as in the example to describe the places in the pictures.
 - colourful → dirty → peaceful → unspoiled
 - amusing





1	,
1.	- 4





	4	
٠.	T.	

		Y
	西	

e.g. This is the most crowded place I have ever seen.

2

3. _____

4. _____

5. _____

c The Thompsons are trying to make arrangements for the weekend. Read their dialogue and write if the sentences below are true (T) or false (F).



Dad: Well, here comes the weekend. What are we doing at the weekend? I am myself dreaming of having a quiet and peaceful hiking in the mountains. Who is in?

Daughter: In the mountains? No, dad. I don't feel like doing that. There is a pop music festival in Greenwille. Lots of free concerts. And we can do some shopping, too.

Son: Pop music and shopping! No way! I'm in, dad. We can catch fish there, too. The biggest ever! If not, there is a football game I wanna see with my friends.

Mum: Like father like son. The weather isn't warm enough to be in the mountains. I think music and shopping sounds good.

Dad: Okay then. Girls you are hanging out together in Greenwille, and son, we are in the mountains.

Son: Hooray!

- 1. The family have already planned their weekend. ___
- **2.** Dad wants some action at the weekend. ___
- **3.** Daughter is interested in music. ___
- **4.** Son likes fishing. ___
- **5.** Everybody in the family is happy with the plan. ___
- d Work in groups of four. Imagine that you are in your school's Travel Club and trying to organise a school trip. Each of you has different ideas about the place(s) to go. Discuss and choose a place to go.

5 LISTENING)) (Track 8)

a Listen and fill in the blanks below.

Girl: Can you read me one more, mum, please.

Mum: OK. But this is the last.

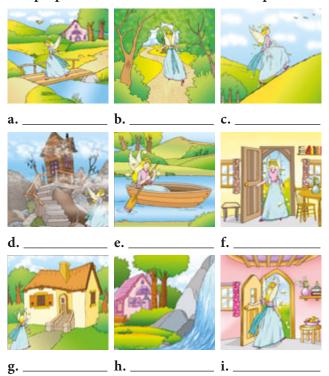
Girl: OK. Last.

Mum: In a land far, far away, there is a pretty girl who doesn't want to sleep. Her mother decides to solve this problem and calls the sleep fairy, Nicy, to the little girl's room.

Nicy's house is far away from theirs, so she sets off early in the morning.

Nicy walks 1___ her house. There is a river flowing 2__ the hill in front of her house. She walks 3__ the bridge into the forest. She walks 4__ the forest and then she reaches the river. She sails 5__ the river, climbs 6__ the hill, and goes 7__ the witch's house. She walks 8__ the little girl's house, gets 9__ the house, climbs up the stairs, and finds the little girl in her bed. She touches the little girl with her magical cane and the little girl goes into a very comforting sleep.

b Read the story and write the correct preposition of movement under the pictures.



c Put the pictures in the correct order according to the story and retell the story.

1. ____ 2. ___ 3. ___ 4. ___ 5. ___

6. _____ 7. ____ 8. ____ 9. ____

6 WRITING

a What do you know about New Zealand? Where is the country? Write the names of the months in New Zealand in the table.

Spring	Summer	Autumn	Winter

b Look at the holiday brochure of New Zealand and fill in the table below.



New Zealand is "THE" country to offer you the most of anything!

It is located in the continent of Oceania with the fantastic weather to visit yearround.

With the choices from wilderness campsites to luxury yachts, accommodation is a joy itself.

Worried about travelling? Self-drive is a popular way to explore New Zealand if you prefer. Buses, trains, and ferries are other options to travel. There are frequent flights from city to city and no flight takes longer than two hours.

Among the things tourists can do, exploring New Zealand's breathtaking wilderness and coastline is the top in the list. Cycling or walking from north to south, sailing, kayaking, diving; which one is you? If you are the person of adventure, activity, and extreme sports, you have many options to choose among. For adrenaline lovers, going bungee jumping, rafting, jet boating, sky diving, and zip lining are all in New

Zealand waiting for you to give you the highest rush.

Kia ora! Don't you know Mãori? No problem!
English and Maori are the official languages of the country; English is the predominant language spoken. The unit of currency is the New Zealand dollar.



W	eather	Accommodation	Travelling within the country	Activities to do	Currency	Official language(s)

c Prepare a travel guide for your country.

Mention; places to go

things to do/to see/to eat/to experience

travel within the country/city

accommodation languages spoken currency etc.





UNIT 15

SPORTS

15A Are You into Sports?15B I Believe in Myself!15C Sports Can Change Life!

In this unit you will be...

- talking about events that began in the past and are still in progress.
- exchanging ideas.
- gaining time in a conversation.
- talking about sports.
- expressing purpose.

ARE YOU INTO SPORTS?

LEAD IN

Answer the following questions.

- 1. What are the most popular sports in your country and in your school?
- **2.** Have you ever taken part in a sports competition? If "no", would you like to take part in one? Why, why not?
- 3. Which types of sports do you prefer, individual sports or team sports? Why?

LISTENING & SPEAKING



1 LISTENING (Track 1))

a Match the pictures with the names of the sports.



a. Swimming	b. Athletics
c. Football	d. Weight lifting
e. Water polo	f. Cycling
g. Archery	h. Golf
i. Kayaking	j. Volleyball
k. Table tennis	1. Baseball
m. Gymnastics	n. Tennis
o. Ice skating	p. Skiing

- b Listen and check your answers.
- c Look at the names of sports stated in part "a" and write three examples for each category.

 One sport type may fit in more than one category.

Indoor sports	
Outdoor sports	
Individual sports	
Team sports	

d Find out the correct verbs. Fill in the blanks with *do*, *play*, or *go*.

1 taekwondo	4. badminton
2 weightlifting	5. fishing
3 boxing	6. soccer

e Fill in the blanks with do, play, or go.

1.	We use the verb	with team
	sports and sports playe	ed with a ball.

- 2. We use the verb _____ with individual sports with -ing ending.
- 3. We use the verb _____ with combat sports and individual sports without-ing ending.

2 SPEAKING 🖼

Work in pairs. Ask and answer questions about the 'indoor/ outdoor sports' you have done so far.



CHECK THIS OUT!

FOR or SINCE

- We use **for** if we talk about duration of the action
- e.g. I have been here for a few years.
- We use **since** if we talk about the starting point of the action.
- e.g. I have been here since 2014.

3 LISTENING (Track 2)))

Three teenagers are talking about their favorite sport. Listen to their dialogue. Complete the chart below with the correct information and guess which sport each person is talking about.

	Team sport or individual sport?	Indoor or outdoor sport?	Where do you do it?	What equipment do you use?	What is the name of the sport?
Sam					
Özlem					
Ashley					

4 SPEAKING 🖼

Think of a sport and describe it to your classmates without telling its name. They will try to find out what sport it is.

5 GAME

Work with a group. Try to find out as many sports as possible for each place given below. The group who has the highest number of sports will be the winner.

→	on a court?	
Which sport can you play	on a track?	
	on a field?	

READING & WRITING



READING 1

- In your opinion, who is the most successful sportsperson? Explain why you believe this person is the most successful one.
- Read the text and find the title of each paragraph.
 - **a.** Not the smartest, but the greatest
 - **b.** To be successful, the first step is to work.
 - c. Getting over depression days
 - **d.** Being old is not an obstacle.
 - e. Many medals at a young age

THEY ARE EXCELLENT!

Everybody knows that the first rule of success is to work hard in all areas of life. When you take a look at the short history of sports, you can easily find out many success stories which make you feel encouraged. It is very easy to get discouraged in real life, but the key to success is not to give up working hard even in failure. You have to keep on working in order to be successful. Let's take a look at some famous success stories of popular sportspeople in the world.

Semih Saygıner, a professional billiard player,

was born in 1964 in Adapazari, Turkey. When he was just 14 years old, he lost his parents in a traffic accident.

Moreover, he had to quit high school in spite of being a successful student. What changed his life was his meeting with billiard

> sport. At the age of just 18, he participated at İstanbul Championship and became the Turkish champion. He won not only Turkish titles but also international ones. In addition to many medals that he won internationally, he became the world champion at the UMB World Championship with his teammate Tayfun Taşdemir in 2003. He stopped taking part in tournaments at the climax of his career in 2006. He has been playing billiard just in special tournaments. He has also taken part in some TV

> > Muhammad Ali, who was one of the greatest boxers of the world, was born

series in Turkey.

in 1942 in Louisville. His original name was Cassius Marcellus Clay, but he changed his name after being a Muslim. He met boxing when he was 12 and soon after that, at the

age of 18, he won his first gold medal at the 1960 Olympics in Rome and started to be famous. What makes him a star was his being the champion of "the World Heavyweight Championship" in 1964. He was a great boxer and in his wonderful career, he took part in 61 professional fights and won 56 of them. He was also very popular with his

knockouts and won 37 matches with it. Once he described himself with these sentences; "I never said I was the smartest. I said I was the greatest". He said this because it was difficult for him to graduate from high school as he had some problems with reading due to dyslexia. Later on, he and his wife worked hard for helping the children with dyslexia.

On the other hand, Cliff Young, a marathon runner, started his career very late. He started running at the age of 61 in 1983 and his coach was his 81 year-old-mother. He spent many hours training so that he could get ready for the race and never gave up believing in his skills. His way of working was also different from the other marathon runners. While the others were spending a lot of money and getting sponsors for the preparation, Cliff worked with his sheep in the village where he was living. He believed that if he was able to run with his sheep, he could also beat other runners in the race. What is more, he decided to join an ultramarathon race which normally lasted 5 days to complete. In the end, he won the

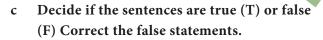
Ayşe Begüm Onbaşı is a Turkish gymnast who got "World Champion" title in Aerobic Gymnastics World Championship held in South Korea in June 2016. She was just 15 when she won the award. She explained her secret of success with these sentences: "I am my sole competitor. I worked with devotion, discipline and enthusiasm. I competed to get

marathon and broke the world record by 9 hours! Although his financial situation

was not very bright, he gave his prize

money to the other runners in the race.

beyond myself and I succeeded."
Although she is very young, she
has won 35 gold medals so far
most of which are international
ones.



- 1. Muhammad Ali won a gold medal in 1955. ___
- 2. Muhammad Ali lost 5 matches in total during his career. ___
- 3. Semih Saygıner is still a professional player. ___
- 4. Semih Saygıner became a world champion alone in 2003 at the UMB World Championship. ___
- 5. Cliff Young spent all the money he won from the marathon for his mother. ___
- 6. Cliff Young had a lot of sponsors for the marathon. ___
- 7. The medals of Ayşe Begüm Onbaşı are generally international ones. ___

d Match the words in the reading text with the definitions given below.

1. When you feel it, you feel courageous and heartened.

_____ (Paragraph 1)

2. When you feel it, it means that you lost your courage and hope; disheartened.

____ (Paragraph 1)

- **3.** A disorder which causes problems in reading.
 - _____(Paragraph 3)
- 4. It means the highest point, the peak.

____(Paragraph 3)

5. It means to defeat someone in a race.

_____(Paragraph 4)

- Read the text again and tell the past events and experiences of the sportspeople in the text.
- f Look at the expressions written in bold in the passage. Which of the following sentence is true about them?
 - 1. They express contrast.
 - 2. They express purpose.
 - 3. They express time.

2 WRITING

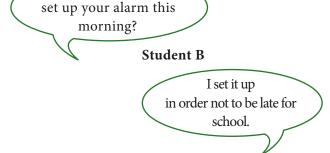
First, write three of your own purposes in life and then write what you are doing to achieve your purpose to the relevant rows in the table. Finally make sentences as in the example.

My purpose	What I do/did for my purpose?	My sentence expressing purpose
e.g. To be accepted to a good university.	I came to this school.	I came to this school in order to be accepted to a good university.

3 SPEAKING

a Answer the questions by using "expressions of purpose" stated in CHECK THIS OUT! box.

Student A



1. Why did you turn on the TV?

Why did you

- **2.** Why did he work hard last year in high school?
- 3. Why do you exercise every day?
- Now write three questions to learn purpose.

 Then ask them to your classmates.

CHECK THIS OUT!

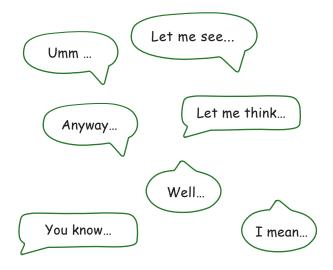
Expressing Purpose

- She wakes up very early to/ so as to catch the bus.
- She wakes up early in order not to miss the bus.
- The students in this school study regularly in order to be successful in university exam.
- I got a printer so that I can print my documents at home.
- We use this writing pad **for** digital drawings.
- c Explain the quotation in the picture.



4 EVERYDAY ENGLISH

a When do we use the following sounds or expressions in our speech? Share your ideas with your classmates.



b Listen and write the expressions Magda and Jim use among the ones above. (Track 3)

Magda	Well
Jim	

- c Listen again and answer the following questions.
 - 1. What made Magda feel stressed?
 - 2. Are Magda and Jim close friends?
 - **3.** What is the topic of Magda's homework?
 - **4.** What is Jim's suggestion on Magda's homework?
 - 5. Who is Michael Jordan?

- d Work in pairs and give answers to the questions below. Gain some time while you are giving your answers. Take turns in your answers.
 - 1. What would you like to do for a living in the future?
 - 2. Why didn't you complete your project work yesterday?
 - 3. What are your chores at home? Do you help your parents with the housework?
 - 4. How many hours a day do you spend using social media?
 - 5. Do you believe you are productive enough?

5 WRITING

Choose an indoor or outdoor sports activity. Write a paragraph with 100-120 words. Give answers of the questions below in your paragraph.

- Is it an outdoor/ indoor sport? Is it a team sport or an individual sport?
- What equipment do you need to do it?
- Give information about a famous sportsperson in that field. Give short information about his/her life.

LEAD IN



Answer the following questions.

- 1. What is the relation between sports and success?
- 2. What are your secrets of being successful? Make a list of your secrets and share them with your friends.

eigi i ieurii iroini iriy irriotumeo.	e.g.	I	learn	from	my	mistakes.
---------------------------------------	------	---	-------	------	----	-----------

LISTENING & SPEAKING



VOCABULARY

- Choose the correct option.
 - 1. Did your school team win/ earn the gold medal last year?
 - 2. He earned/won a lot of money with his previous project.
 - 3. I didn't see/ watch him cheating in the
 - 4. I really don't prefer to see/ watch horror films as they affect my psychology.

CHECK THIS OUT!

Earn/ win

- I earned a lot of money in my previous job.
- Our team could not win the game yesterday.

Watch/ See

- I can easily see the fire from here.
- Have you ever watched a bowling match before?

- Read the quotations of some famous sports people below and fill in the blanks with the words in the box.
 - ◆ earn ◆ watch ◆ see ◆ win

1. "I really think a champion is defined not by their wins but by how they can recover when they fall."



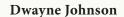
Serena Williams

2. "Dreams are not what you ____ in your sleep, dreams are things which do not let you sleep."



Cristiano Ronaldo

3. "Blood, sweat, and respect. The first two you give, the last one you ____."





4. "If you are losing faith in human nature, go out and _____ a marathon."

Kathrine Switzer



5. "There is no "I" in a team, but there is in

Micheal Jordan



2 LISTENING)

a What do you know about the football player in the picture?



- b Listen and match the sports with the sportspeople in the list below. (Track 4)
 - 1. Cristiano Ronaldo ___
 - 2. Dwayne Johnson ___
 - 3. Serena Williams ___
 - **4.** Kathrine Switzer ___
 - 5. Micheal Jordan ___
- a. a wrestler
- **b.** an athlete
- c. a football player
- **d.** a basketball player
- e. a tennis player
- c Listen again and complete the information about these sportspeople.

1. Ronaldo trusts himself about his	1.	Ronaldo	trusts	himself	about	his
-------------------------------------	----	---------	--------	---------	-------	-----

2. In Dwayne Johnson's family, not only

_____ but also ____ were wrestlers.

3. Serena Williams has been playing tennis for

4. Kathrine Switzer is the first woman who has run a marathon _____.

5. Micheal Jordan learned a lot from _____

3 SPEAKING 🖼

Answer the following questions.

- Have you heard the names of the sportspeople in the listening activity before?
- What else do you know about their lives or careers?

4 Answer the following questions about sports.

- **1.** What are the gold medals given in the Olympics made of?
 - a. Totally gold
 - **b.** %50 gold and % 50 silver and copper
 - c. % 93 silver and copper and %1 gold
- 2. What was a golf ball originally made from?
 - a. Plastic
 - b. Dried cow eyeballs
 - c. Leather
- **3.** What is the most followed sport in the world?
 - a. Tennis
 - b. Golf
 - c. Football
- **4.** What is the only sport played on the moon?
 - a. Baseball
 - **b.** Football
 - c. Golf
- **5.** What is the official distance of a marathon?
 - a. 42.19 kilometers
 - **b.** 12.32 kilometers
 - c. 24.71 kilometers
- **6.** How old should a person be in order to compete in Olympics?
 - **a.** 12
 - **b.** 18
 - **c.** 16



READING & WRITING



Look at the pictures 1, 2, and 3. Find out a suitable sport for these people according to their qualities such as age, weight, gender, physical condition, etc.







2 **READING**

Read the information about four people and write which sport is suitable for each person from the box below according to their qualities.

Running ◆ Walking ◆ Horse Riding ◆ Pilates

Mustafa used to play football, but he had a surgery on his right knee a year ago. Since then, he has been suffering from knee pain when he runs. He had to quit not only the football club of his university but also exercising. Recently, he has been looking for a new sport for himself. He has no financial problems.

Elena is in her late seventies and as a result of her age, she has some problems with her movements. She hasn't been feeling as energetic as she used to be for the last two years. However, she has recently read an article about exercising and found out that exercising is useful for body regardless of the age. Thus, she decided to do some exercise.

Eniko is a middle aged woman who gave a birth last year. In all her life, she always has the habit of doing sports but recently, she has been taking care of her baby at home. As her son is just 2 months old, she doesn't prefer to leave the house very often without her son. Temporarily, she needs to find a way to exercise at home.

Isabella has been working out at the gym for a month. However, recently she has been experiencing some financial problems because she quit her work 3 months ago. She wants to go on doing exercising all her life, but she has to find a cheaper option. Doing combat sports is not her cup of tea. She doesn't like staying at home.

b	Write sentences about the people in 2a as in
	the example.

1. e.g. For Mustafa, the most suitable option is doing horse riding because there won't be any pressure to his knee when he does this sport.

2. For Elena,			
3. For Eniko,			

4. For Isabella,	

c Look at the highlighted expressions in the texts. Find where we use this tense.

- **a.** We use it for past events.
- **b.** We use it for talking about experiences.
- **c.** We use it for the actions that started in the past and still going on.

d Answer the following questions about the texts

- 1. How long has Mustafa been suffering from a knee pain?
- **2.** Why did Mustafa have to quit the school football team?
- 3. How long has Elena been feeling inactive?
- **4.** Why did Elena decide to do exercise?
- **5.** How long has Eniko been taking care of her baby at home?
- **6.** How long has Isabella been experiencing financial problems?

CHECK THIS OUT!

- I have been doing yoga for a few weeks.
- She has been taking care of her baby at home.
- I have been working as a teacher since 2009.

e Fill in the blanks with "for" and "since".

- **1.** I have been exercising ____ a few hours.
- **2.** My brother has been playing football ______ 5 p.m.
- 3. He has been at the gym ____ an hour.
- I have been feeling more energetic ______
 I started walking regulary.
- **5.** A friend of mine has been doing karate her childhood.

3 SPEAKING

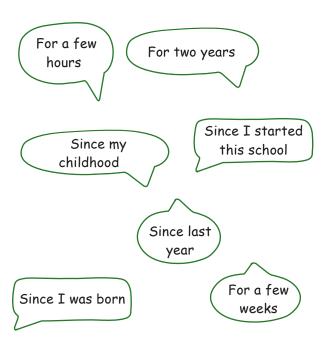
Work with your partner. Use the time expressions below and ask questions with "how long" and "how often".

Student A: How long have you been doing gymnastics?

Student B: I have been doing it for two years.

Student A: How often do you do it?

Student B: I go training at the weekends.



4 WRITING

Answer the following questions given as in the example. Use "for" and "since" in your sentences



1. Why do you look tired?

e.g. Because I have been doing exercise for 2 hours.



2. Why do you look exhausted?

Because _



3. Why does he look angry?

Because _



4. Why does she look so proud of herself?

Because _____

5 READING

Read the message of Tom to his friend Maya and her reply to Tom. Then answer the questions.

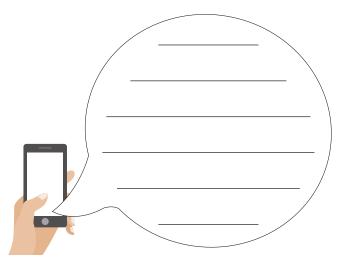
Hi Maya! What's up? Sorry, I haven't written to you for a while because I was so busy because of my job. As you know, I travel a lot. Can you believe that I have been to eight countries since last summer! Also, we are about to finalize the project which means extra work. I have been working more than 10 hours a day for two weeks. I hope it is going to end soon. What about you? What have you been doing lately?

Hi, Tom! That's OK. I can understand what you feel as I have been so busy for a couple of weeks because of my final exams. I hope to pass all of them and graduate soon. What's more, I have been looking for a job and I have applied to a few companies so far, but nobody called me back: (My final week is going to end on Friday. Call me if you have some time for a coffee. I need your advice about the job applications. Bye!

- 1. Why has Tom been very busy lately?
- **2**. How long has he been working more than 10 hours a day?
- 3. Why is Maya very busy lately?
- **4**. What makes Maya get stressed?
- **5**. Why does Maya want to see Tom?

6 WRITING

Imagine that you found an old friend of yours via social media. Write a message to him/ her about what you have been doing lately.



7 LISTENING)

a Look at the people in the picture below. Guess where they are and how they feel.



b Match the words with their definitons.

- ◆ against ◆ push limits ◆ defeat ◆ beat
- compete in ◆ score ◆ miss

1.	to	take	part ir	ı a	contest	
----	----	------	---------	-----	---------	--

- 2. losing a match _____
- 3. to do better than _____
- 4. to make a point in a match _____
- **5.** counter to _____
- **6.** not to be able to take advantage of opponent

7. perform	better	than	ever	

c Listen to the spectators in the stadium whose favorite team has just lost the match. Fill in the blanks with the correct words. (Track 5)

Speaker	1
---------	---

Hey, I'm really sorry for this	1, but
I believe this is the fault of the	he team, OK!
They gave up in the first hal	f. Oh, I still can't
believe that we ²	the penalty! We
were unlucky but we didn't ³	
!	

Speaker 2

Hey, they were playi	ng ⁴ a
weaker team for sur	e! When the opposing
team 5th	e goal at the 2nd minute,
our team just threw	in the towel!

Speaker 3

Yes, they °	us this ti	me. However,		
in the prepar	ration match we o	drew 3 to 3		
with the same team. I think our team is				
not aware th	at they are 7	the		
Championsh	nip! We couldn't e	even score a		
goal. The far	ns were waiting fo	or a win, but we		
couldn't see	the score we expe	ected.		



TODAY'S IDIOM

Throw the towel means "to admit the defeat, to quit, to give up".

e.g. Whenever he encounters a difficulty, he throws the towel.

8 SPEAKING 🖼

Work with your partner and ask the questions below to him/her. Take notes and then share it with your classmates.

- Have you ever been to a sports competition? If your answer is yes, where and when did you go? If your answer is "no", which sports match would you like to go and why?
- ◆ How do you feel when your favorite football team loses a match?

C SPORTS CAN CHANGE LIFE!

LEAD IN

Answer the following questions.

- **1.** Who are the worldwide popular Turkish sportspeople you know? Give information about them.
- 2. How useful is doing sports for your body? Give examples.

LISTENING & SPEAKING



VOCABULARY

Fill in the blanks with the words from the box. Use the correct forms of the verbs if necessary.

- depend on ◆ run ◆ ranked ◆ benefit ◆ registration ◆ lessen
- **1.** You can observe the _____ of doing sports in a short time.
- **2.** His success in volleyball _____ regular training.
- **3.** This TV program _____ a street contest about sports every week.
- **4.** I had a full _____ to this sports center so I can go whenever I want.
- **5.** Walking regularly _____ the risk of heart attack.
- **6.** This movie is _____ as one of the best films ever.

2 LISTENING (Track 6)))

Listen to the speaker and fill in the blanks according to the text.

1. Rafael Nadal started playing tennis at the age of	of
--	----

2.	His	 were	also	sportsmen.

3. He played both _____ and ____ when

he was a child.

4. His family _____ the invitation of the Spanish Tennis Federation as they wanted him to go on his education.

5. He is known as the . .

b Listen to the text again and choose the correct option.

- 1. He isn't/ is the only person in his family who is very successful in sports.
- 2. His family wasn't/ didn't accept this request.
- **3.** They did so because they **didn't/ doesn't** want him to leave his education.
- 4. Didn't/ Did it make him feel discouraged?

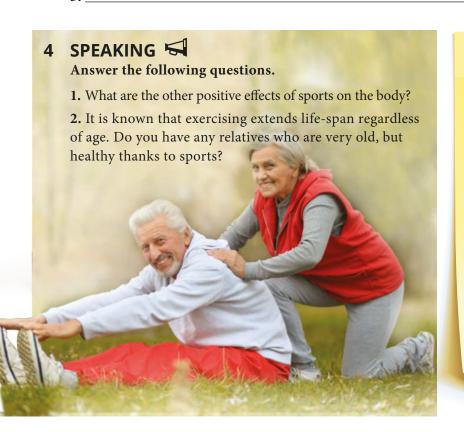


a Look at the table below and answer the questions according to the recording. (Track 7)

Contestant 2				
a. What are they talking about?	c. What are his answers?			
	1.			
b. What are the questions of the contest?	2.			
1.	3.			
2.	d. Are his answers correct?			
	1. YES/ NO			
3.	2. YES/ NO			
3.	3. YES/ NO			
e. Did he win the contest?				

b Listen to the recording again. You are going to hear 3 important effects of sports on the body. Write down the positive effects of sports that you hear in the recording.

1		
2.		
_		



DO YOU KNOW THIS?

- 1. Phyllis Rowley got her black belt in karate at the age of 78. She broke the World record with this success.
- 2. Dr. Charles Eugster started doing fitness at the age of 85. Then at the age of 94, he started racing as a sprinter. He is now 97 and he has won more than forty medals so far.
- 3. Yuichiro Miura broke the world record as the oldest person who can climb the summit of Everest at the age of 80.

READING & WRITING



READING 1

- Look at the title of the reading text below and guess what the text is about.
- b Read the text carefully and answer the following questions.

BORN TO BE SUCCESSFUL

We all know that exercising is incredibly beneficial to our health both physically and psychologically. It has quite a healing impact on illnesses even on depression. But do you think that sport has the power to change lives? The examples show us that it certainly does. Kieran Behan is one of the examples for those whose lives have changed after doing sports.

Kieran Behan is a 27-year-old young Irish athlete whose story is completely different from the other athletes because his story is full of difficulties. When he was a child, his only dream was to join Olympics as he was fond of gymnastics. However, at the age of 10, a tumor was diagnosed in his leg and he had an operation for the removal of tumor but his nerves got severely damaged in the operation. What is worse, the doctors told him that he would never walk again! He was confined to wheelchair, but he never gave up his hope. During that period, he went on exercising and with the help of sport, he started walking again just after 15 months. However, bad luck didn't stop chasing him...



Just a few months after he started to walk, he fell over from the high bar while he was training. He got such a terrible head injury that he had to leave school for a year due to that accident.

Against all odds, he returned to school after a year, but this time he was using walking sticks. After three years in pain, he was still strongly determined to join European Championship. Just after he was chosen for this championship, his knee got badly injured this time. But he didn't give up again. In spite of these setbacks, he didn't think of giving up even for a second. Throughout his career, he won many medals and he managed to take part in the summer 2016 Olympics. Moreover, he became just the second Irish athlete who took part in the Olympics. Athletics changed his life completely because if there had been no sports in his life, he might be a person using a wheelchair now.

- 1. Is exercise useful for our body or mind?
 - **a.** Body
 - **b.** Mind
 - c. Both
- 2. How long did it take Kieran Behan to recover after his operation?
 - a. A year
 - **b.** Three months
 - **c.** More than one year
- **3.** Did Kieran win a gold medal in summer 2016 Olympics?
 - a. Yes, he did.
 - **b.** No, he didn't.
 - c. Not mentioned
- 4. Which adjective best describes Kieran as a person?
 - a. Ambitious
 - **b.** Pessimistic
 - **c.** Lethargic

c What can you conclude from Kieran's story? Write your opinions about Kieran Behan with 4-6 sentences.

d Match the highlighted words in the text with their synonyms below.

a. awfully	1.
b. totally	2.
c. astonishingly	3.
d. very	4.
e. firmly	5.
f. seriously	6.



TODAY'S IDIOM

Against all odds

It means in spite of all difficulties.

e.g. She is always in a positive mood against all odds.

CHECK THIS OUT!

Adverbs of Degree

• The weather was cold yesterday when compared to today.

The weather was **quite** cold yesterday compared to yesterday.

You are walking slowly.

You are walking incredibly slowly.

• The earthquake damaged the house.

The earthquake severely damaged the house.

- e Rewrite the sentences by using the adverbs given in the brackets.
- **e.g.** We all believe that he has the capacity to beat his opponents. (strongly)

We all strongly believe that he has the capacity to beat his opponents.

- 1. As a result of the accident in the stadium this morning, several people got injured. (seriously)
- **2.** He has always been a cyclist who is devoted to his job. **(completely)**
- **3.** I got really shocked in the exam because different from other exams, this one was easy. (incredibly)
- **4.** As your trainer, I recommend you not to exercise that much so that you won't lessen your endurance before the final match. (**strongly**)
- **5.** As his sponsorship for the race was cancelled, he was in need of money. (**badly**)

2 EVERYDAY ENGLISH

a Put the dialogue into the correct order. Underline the expressions for asking and giving advice.

a. Trying to be fine. Thanks. I have been trying hard to finish my English homework for a while but I can't complete it. I don't know what to do. What do you suggest?
b. Yes, I have. First you are just talking about yourself. You work with a group on this project. You had better work with your group for the order of your magazine. Don't you have a plan for this stuff?
c. OK then. Looking forward to your good news Kim. Take care! Good-bye!
d. Well, Of course. I prepared all the articles with my friends. But I don't know how to put them together. Do you have any advice now?
e. No, we don't have a plan
f. Kim, what's up? <u>1</u>
g. Yes, I got it. Don't worry. I'll do my best for this plan and let you know
h. Sorry, I don't have any suggestion because I can't understand the problem. Why don't you give me more details about your problem?
i. Well, then I think you should make a plan and determine the responsibilities of your group members. You can't work alone. You understand me, don't you?

REMEMBER THIS!

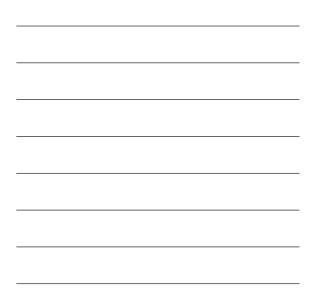
Asking for advice

- What do you suggest?
- What should I do?
- What's your advice?
- If you were in my shoes, what would you do?

Giving advice

- Why don't you call the police?
- ◆ If I were you, I would tell the teacher.
- ◆ I think you should let him know.
- You had better do more exercise.
- Have you thought about going to an English course?

b	Imagine that you have a problem about your study plan. Every week, you do a new program
	but you can't follow it as strict as you desire. You know that a friend of yours is very good at
	studying regularly. Write a similar dialogue in 10-15 sentences and ask the opinions of your
	friend. Use the expressions in the REMEMBER THIS! in your dialogue.





PROJECT TIME 3

- Read the titles of some sports news below and match the titles with the pictures.
 - Struggle To Reach The Summit
 - Minutes Underneath the Sea
 - The Fastest Sprinter Ever







Read the article of a national newspaper and find a suitable title for it.

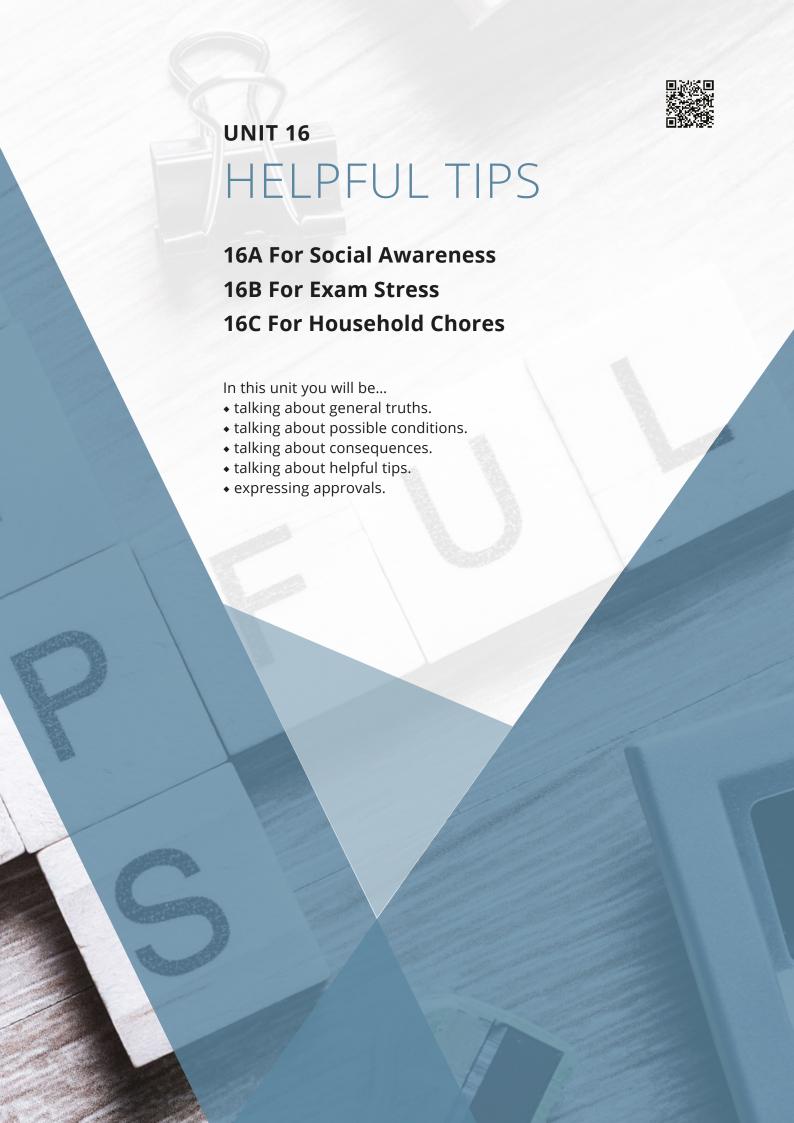
sports news

Turkey won three gold medals on the first day of the European Weightlifting Championships. Turkish weightlifter Hurşit Atak, competing in the 62-kilogram weight class, won two gold medals in jerk. Bünyamin Sezer, competing also in the 62-kilogram weight class, won one gold medal in snatch and a silver medal in total category. The European Weightlifting Championships 2017 was organized in Split, Croatia between 2-8 April.*



- Work with a group. Prepare a sports magazine with your group. Follow the steps below while you are working on your project.
 - Choose a theme for your magazine: Decide what it is going to be about. It can be about sportspeople, popular sports, extreme sports, etc.
 - 2. Decide on the contents of your magazine: How many pages will it have? What will be on each page, etc?
 - 3. **Prepare a plan:** Decide on the day which you are going to finish everything about the magazine and write a plan of what to do according to your deadline. You should also add the names of the people in charge.
 - 4. Write articles for your magazine: There must be at least 5 articles and they must include at least 150 words. Don't forget to put titles for your articles.
 - 5. Design a cover for your magazine: Your cover must be related to your topic.





FOR SOCIAL AWARENESS

LEAD IN



Look at the photograph below and answer the questions.



- 1. Do you think being busy with a technological device instead of having a talk with your friends is a good manner? Why, why not?
- **2.** Are you just like the people in the photograph when you are with your friends?
- 3. How much time can you stay without even touching your phone?
- 4. What are the qualities of a polite person? Give some examples.

Answer the questions below. (Track 1)

1. Which word is a *verb* and which one is a noun? Listen and repeat the words. Then fill in the blanks with "advise" or "advice". Advise /ədˈvaɪs/

Advice /əd'vaiz/

a. _____: suggestion about what you think someone should do.

b. _____: to make a suggestion about what you think someone should do.

2. Do you often ask for advice? Why, why not?

LISTENING & SPEAKING



- LISTENING (Track 2)))
- Listen to people talking about social manners and number the related pictures.









Listen again and write the advice people gave in their speeches.

Speaker 1	
Speaker 2	
Speaker 3.	
Speaker 4.	

- Answer the following questions. c
 - 1. Why did the man on the train annoy Kanye?
 - 2. What was Edie's plan for the weekend?
 - 3. What made Leo so happy?
 - **4.** What was the most difficult movement for the old woman?
- Write some good manners under the titles. You can add more titles. Share them with class.

What should/ shouldn't we do...

in a public transport?

in a cinema/ theatre?
on a picnic?
in the school?

3 SPEAKING 🖼

Answer the questions below according to yourself and share your answers with class.

- 1. What makes you annoyed the most when it comes to bad manners?
- 2. Talk about a manner which is good for you, but bad for other people. Why do you think it is a good manner?
- 3. What would you do in the situation below? You're late for the plane; you must check in, but there is a long line.

REMEMBER THIS!

ASKING FOR ADVICE

- What do you suggest?
- What should I do?
- What's your advice?
- + If you were me, what would you do?

GIVING ADVICE

- I think you should/ ought to/ had better...
- + How about...?
- Why don't you...?
- You could try...
- If I were you, I would...
- · You should perhaps...

4 WRITING

Work in pairs. Write an e-mail to ask for some advice about a situation you are in nowadays. Then, reply your friend's e-mail to give some advice.

To From	info@theveryverybestadvice.com	
Subject		
Tr.		
From	reply@theveryverybestadvice.com	
Subject		5

5 EVERYDAY ENGLISH

Complete the dialogue using suitable expressions from the box below and then act it out.



Useful Expressions

Declining To Give Advice

- I don't know what to advise.
- I wish I could help.
- I'm afraid I can't help you.

Accepting the Advice

- That's true.
- OK. I can do that.
- Yes, you're right. I will do that.

Hesitating

- I'm not sure if this is the best thing.
- → I'm not sure. Maybe I could...

Henry: Tomorrow is my best friend's birthday,
but I don't know what to do. What's your advice?
Isla: 1 because I don't know
your friend. I'm sorry.
Henry: Thanks anyway. I'll ask Lily as she
knows my best friend.
Henry: Tomorrow is my best friend's
birthday. What do you suggest me to do?
Lily: How about taking her out for dinner?
Henry: ² I want to
prepare a lively night for her.
Lily: You should perhaps prepare a surprise
party for her.
Henry: ³ This idea sounds
great. What should I buy her as a gift?
Lily: If you want to make her surprised, you
can buy a white hamster. She might like it.
She likes animals.
Henry: Yes, you're right. 4

6 DISCUSSION TIME

Work in pairs. Answer the questions below. Share your answers with class.

- 1. What are some good manners?
- 2. Do you say "hi" to people even if they are strangers? Why, why not?
- 3. Why do we have manners?

7 SPEAKING 🖼

Work in groups of three. Read the hints below and write a conversation. Use the expressions you learned about advice.

You've just started to work in Germany. Ask your friend (Student B) for advice about German manners and what to do in Germany.

Student A

Decline to give advice to him or her with a justification

Student B

Thank anyway and ask your other friend (Student C) for advice.

Student A

Give him or her advice. Use the hints below.

- Keep your hands on the table at meal times.
- Be punctual.
- Don't chew gum while talking to people.
- Visit the Pergamon Museum.

Accept the advice and thank.

Student C

Student A

8 PRONUNCIATON))

- a Listen and repeat the words. Find the difference between the pronunciations of these two words. (Track 3)
 - Hit /hɪt/ Heat /hiːt/
 Lip /lɪp/ Leap /liːp/
 - 3. Ship /ʃip/ Sheep /ʃiːp/
 - **4.** His /hiz/ He's /hi:s/
- **b** Listen and tick the sound you hear. (Track 4)

/ı/ short vowel	/ i:/ long vowel	
	A. /I/	B. /i:/
1. sea		
2. will		
3. machine		
4. feet		
5. fit		
6. minute		
7. wheel		

- c Listen to the short story and write true (T) or false (F). (Track 5)
 - 1. He was shipping sheep on the ship. ___
 - 2. Slim sheep had been slimmed badly. _
 - **3.** A kite passed by him. ___
 - **4.** The kite fell into the sea. ___
 - 5. He got on the ship. ___

9 LISTENING (Track 6)))

a Two teenagers are calling a radio programme and talking about their problems. Listen and complete the chart.



Problem Advice

Max	
Millie	

- b Listen again and guess the meaning of the phrases below.
 - 1. At peace with oneself
 - 2. Make fun of oneself
 - 3. Be at odds

10 SPEAKING 🖼

Work in pairs. Suppose that one of you is an advisor on a radio and the other is calling to ask for advice. Write a dialogue and act it out.

11 WRITING

Write a short advice letter considering the question below.

• What advice would you give to a foreigner who visits your country and what would you do to show good manners to him or her?

CHECK THIS OUT!

Talking About Possible Conditions

If I find her address, I will send her an invitation.

There might be a gas leak if you smell a rotten egg like odour.

If you feel sick, you should see a doctor.

 When it is referred to the present or future where the situation is real, we use type 1 conditional.

12 Match the clauses to form a meaningful sentences.

- **1.** If you want to ask for something, __
- **2.** If you receive something, __
- **3.** If you need to take turn in a conversation, __
- **4.** If you need something belonging to someone, __
- **5.** If someone makes a mistake, __
- **6.** If you want to get on a train, __
- 7. If you want to enter a room, __
- **8.** If you cough or sneeze, __

- **a.** you should say "thank you".
- **b.** you shouldn't make fun of him or her.
- **c.** first you should wait for the outgoing passengers.
- **d.** you should say "sorry to interrupt you".
- **e.** you should knock the door.
- **f.** you should say "please".
- **g.** you should cover your mouth.
- **h.** you should ask for permission.

13 SPEAKING 🖼

a Complete the sentences as in the example. You can use the useful expressions for advice such as 'should', 'ought to' and 'had better.'

IF PEOPLE...

- 1. talk on the phone and drive,
- **e.g.** If people talk on the phone and drive, they can have a terrible accident. They had better not use their phones while driving.
 - 2. throw litter on the ground,
 - 3. use mobile phones in the cinema,
 - **4.** park their cars in front of the wheelchair ramp,
 - 5. watch television all day,
 - 6. jump queues,
 - 7. don't show respect to disabled people,
- b Discuss your answers with your partner.

14 READING

- a Read the article below and answer the questions.
 - 1. Who was Murphy?
 - **2.** Do you have any experiences as an example for Murphy's Laws?

If Anyting Can Go Wrong, It Will!

If you change your traffic lane when there is a traffic jam, the lane you were in will move faster then the one you are in now. Haven't you ever experienced that it didn't rain the day you took your umbrella with you? Of course, yes! Welcome to the aggravating world of Murphy.

Then who is Murphy? Captain Edward Murphy was an aerospace engineer, who tried to improve safety systems for pilots working for military. He always thought the worst possibility to find the best. The laws spread to many fields.

Through literature, today we use the idiom "Murphy's Law" as a generalised version of Captain Edward Murphy's real laws.

- b Complete the examples of Murphy's Law? Share yours with the class.
 - 1. If you dial a wrong number,
 - **2.** If you go out with pyjamas for a quick shopping from a grocery,
 - **3.** You study for a long time in your room, but when you pick up your phone,
 - **4.** You find what you don't seek, but if you need it...

READING & WRITING



1 **READING**

Look at the signs. What do they remind you of?









Do you know how life is like for a disabled person? In order to understand disabled people, we should put ourselves into their shoes.

- A We cannot understand a visually impaired person by closing our eyes for one minute. Imagine that our mum reads us "the little red riding hood", but we have never seen the colour red. We don't know what it looks like. Are colours understood by touching them or smelling? We can only understand a colour by seeing it. What is darkness? Is it only a period of time? I don't think so. Darkness is colourless.
- B Imagine that you can't hear the alarm clock or the knock on the door. You miss out on social interactions. That is what life is like for a hearing impaired person. Being a hearing impaired person may not seem like a big problem. However, learning a language starts with hearing it. They can't hear, so they can't learn. They even don't know their own voice. I think they really want to listen to music. They don't know what it sounds like. They don't know what it feels like. Is silence a kind of relaxing atmosphere? I think silence must be more deadly than we all experience. No sound, no music, no gurgle...
- There are quite a lot of kids with CP (cerebral palsy). It is a kind of permanent movement disorder. They are very young to understand why they cannot go to the parks while the others can. Even if they go to the park, they sometimes have difficulties because parks are not built for people with wheelchairs. The parks should be for everybody. Children who have this disorder sometimes can't go out for dinner with their families because most of the restaurants don't have a ramp for their wheelchairs. If there isn't a ramp for their wheelchair, they try to sit on a high chair but it is dangerous for them because they might slide out.
- People with disabilities should be able to go to schools easily. There should be wheelchair ramps everywhere. People should be more respectful and understanding towards them. All of us ought to help visually impaired people and we should give way to them. We shouldn't be impatient with a person who can't speak. Don't forget that we are a candidate for being disabled.

b Scar	n the article an	d tick (🗸)	the words	you see.
--------	------------------	------------	-----------	----------

\square disabled	smell	☐ impaired	
\square blind	\Box interaction	device	
\square deaf	\square sound	\square found	
\square gurgle	\square wheelchair		
Matak tha baadinaa siith tha manasanaha			

Match the headings with the paragraphs.

- 1. ___ Colours for the Visually Impaired
- 2. ___ Social Awareness
- 3. ___ Being Obliged to Wheelchairs
- **4.** ___ The Silence for Hearing Impaired People

d Answer the questions.

- 1. What does the writer think about darkness?
- 2. What is CP?
- 3. What are the advices given in the article for us?
- **4.** What is the meaning of the underlined idiom "put yourself into someone's shoes"?

2 WRITING

a What should we do to build a better environment for people with disabilities? Write a paragraph between 100-150 words. Be careful about basic capitalization, spelling, and punctuation rules.

REMEMBER THIS!

Where We Use Capital Letters

- The first word of a sentence
- ◆ The pronoun "I"
- Proper nouns

Spelling

- -ing endings
- -ed endings
- Forming plural nouns
- * Adverbs ending in -ly

Punctuation

	Periods		ellipsis
,	Commas	į	exclamation point
;	Semi-colons	w <i>11</i>	quotation marks
:	Colons	()	parentheses
?	Question mark	'	apostrophe

b Work in pairs. Check your partner's paragraph written *in* Exercise 2a according to the criteria given in REMEMBER THIS! box.

NAME:	Very well	ок	A little
Applies capitalization rules			
Applies spelling rules			
Applies punctuation rules			

3 LISTENING (Track 7))

a The radio programmer Ellie is talking about disabled celebrities today. Listen and take notes about the titles given below.

Name	Job	Disability	Success



- b Listen again. Answer the questions.
 - **1.** What is the topic of the day in the radio programme?
 - 2. Was Beethoven born deaf?
 - 3. Who wrote the book "A Brief History of Time"?
 - **4.** Complete the sentence Ellie said.

 "Unless we overcome obstacles, _____
 - **5.** Can you give an example of a disabled person who has a success story? Can you tell his or her story?

DO YOU KNOW THIS?

Read the manners around the world. Find the manners that are the same in your country and the unusual ones.

INDIA

 When entering a residence, you should remove your shoes outside.

NEW ZEALAND

 You should keep the conversation at a minimum during meals.

JAPAN

 Do not openly display money, use an envelope.



FRANCE

• It is common to leave the office for a lunch lasting two hours or more.



LEAD IN



Look at the photograph and answer the questions.



- 1. What's he doing?
- 2. How does he feel?
- **3.** Have you ever had such an experience?
- 4. What makes you stressed?
- 5. How do you manage stress?

2 READING

Answer the questions and see if you are stressed.

3: always 2: usually 1: sometimes 0: almost never

	3	2	1	0
1. It is difficult for me to take the first step to do something.				
2. I always think of whether I do something foolish.				
3. Unimportant things make me unhappy.				
4. I have troubles with sleeping.				
5. I easily feel agitated.				
6. I tend to overreact to situations.				
7. I feel depressed.				
8. I no longer enjoy the things I used to enjoy.				

* This is not a real test. Do not take the results into consideration.

4 points or less: This level of stress is normal for everybody. This is what life is like.

4-6 points: Your stress level might be getting more serious.

6-8 points: You might be suffering from a serious stress level.

8 and more points: Your level of stress might have reached a critical stage. You might need help. You could speak with your school counsellor.

LISTENING & SPEAKING 4 🌛



READING

Read the article "Fight or Flight". Answer the questions.

- 1. What is stress?
- 2. What happens in our body when we are under stress?
- 3. When should we receive professional help? Why?

FIGHT OR FLIGHT!

Stress affects all of us in everywhere. While a little stress is beneficial, too much stress can wear you down both emotionally and physically. Then what is stress?

Stress is our body's reaction to harmful situations in order to protect our body. If we are under stress, our heart rate increases, breathing quickens, muscles tighten, and blood pressure rises. By this way, our body gets ready to prevent a harmful situtation. This is named as "fight or flight"

What causes much stress in one person may not cause any stress in another person. Also, some people are better at handling stress.

Our bodies are designed to overcome small doses of stress. However, we are not equipped to overcome long term and chronic stress.

DISCUSSION TIME



Read the quote. Answer the questions. Share your thoughts with class.

> "Stress should be a powerful driving force, not an obstacle."

Bill Phillips

What is intended to be explained by this quote?



3 VOCABULARY

- a Match the words with their meanings. You can use your dictionary.
 - **1.** Temporary ___ **a.** to become less
 - **2.** Get rid of ___ **b.** unhappy and without

hope

3. Decrease ___ **c.** to remove something

unwanted.

4. Depressed ___ **d.** to talk or think about

something again.

5. Anxiety ___ **e.** the act of pausing before

doing something.

- **6.** Hesitation ___ **f.** Not lasting.
- 7. Review ___ g. something that causes a

feeling of fear and worry.

b Fill in the blanks with the words above.

- **1.** After a short ______, I started to talk to my boss.
- **2**. He seemed a bit _____ about his exams results.
- 3. I regularly do exercise to ____stress.
- **4.** There is a steady _____ in the exam anxiety of our students thanks to the counsellor.
- 5. Students normally feel a lot of ______ throughout the exam weeks.
- **6**. Let's _____ what we have learned today.
- 7. Don't worry. Your depression is only ______. It'll pass soon.

4 LISTENING (Track 8)))

- a Look at the pictures on the right and answer the questions below.
 - 1. Who are they?
 - 2. Where are they?

b Listen and complete the sentences.

- **1.** If you read a book, _____.
- **2.** If you do some exercise before going to bed,
- **3.** If you have any questions, _____.
- **4.** If you have trouble in preparing an individual study schedule,_____.
- **5.** If you want to be successful, _____

c Listen and write the students' problems and the counsellor's advice in the speech bubbles. There can be more than one problem and advice.







d Answer the questions.

- 1. Do you have days like Jessica, Lucy, or Toby?
- 2. What do you do when you are under stress?
- e Work in pairs. Suppose that one of you is a counsellor of the school and the other asks for help. Write a similar dialogue. Act it out in class.

5 READING

Read the text below and write the given advice to manage exam stress.

1	2
3	4
5	

GENERAL EXAM STRESS-BUSTING TIPS

Stress is inevitable. It affects our lives on a regular basis. Unless we take action, it can easily overwhelm us. Especially students suffer from stress related to school or exams. Fortunately, there are many things we can do to reduce or cope with stress. First of all, if we want to solve the problem completely, we should figure out where the stress is coming from. The second most important thing to do is that we should consider what we can control and work on it. The rest will come easily. Here are five helpful tips to get rid of exam stress.

If you prepare for the exams, you should keep in your mind that there is no need to worry



excessively. Unless you believe in yourself, you can't reach your goal.

If you think that
"anything less
than 90 means
bad mark" then
you are creating
unnecessary
stress for yourself.



If you don't understand some of your school subjects, take action. You should address



the problem directly by talking to someone who can help you.

If you have too little time, yet too many subjects to study, you get stressed. In order to overwhelm this,



you should divide your study sessions into 50 minutes long parts. If you have trouble in planning your study, you should get advice from the school counsellor.

Anxiety increases when one feels tired, run-down and overwhelmed. Physical and mental health



can be strengtened by enough exercise, balanced school-life, positive thoughts, replenishing nutrition, and regular/ adequate sleep.

6 LISTENING (Track 9)))

a Evie and Ollie are talking about exams. Listen to the conversation. Tick the expressions of approval you hear.

1. Me, too.	7. So do I.
2. So did they.	8. We did, too.
3. Neither should she.	9. I didn't like, either.
4. So is she.	10. Neither could I.
5. Neither must they.	11. My mum didn't like,
6. She can, too.	either.

CHECK THIS OUT!

To express that a statement is the same for us(or somebody), we use 'so' or neither'.

We use 'so' in positive sentences.

Tim: I am a quite determined person.

Bill: So am I. (I am a quite determined

person, too.)

Susan: I easly get stressed out.

Jill: So do I. (I am easily get stressd out,

too.)

Sam: Clare went to the concert last night. Linda: So did Mary. (Mary went to the

concert last night, too.)

We use 'neither' in negative sentences.

Liz: I am not hungry.

Pamela: Neither am I. (I am not hungry,

either.)

Walter: I don't need help.

Tobby: Neither does Paul. (Paul doesn't need

help, either.)

Carry: I didn't buy any food.

Peter: Neither did I. (I didn't buy, either)

b Listen again. Write true (T) or false (F). Next to the statements.

- **1.** Evie thinks that the Geography exam was the easiest. ____
- **2.** Evie was able to answer only two of the five questions in the physics exam. ____
- **3.** Ollie could remember some formulas. ____
- **4.** Evie has troubles in remembering formulas but Ollie has no trouble. ____
- **5.** Both Evie and Ollie's mothers didn't like stickers on the walls. ___

7 SPEAKING 🖼

- a Answer the questions below and share them with class.
 - **1.** What steps do you take to avoid being stressed before exams?
 - **2.** How can you relax in the middle of a stressful time such as an exam?
 - **3.** How do you feel emotionally/physically when you get stressed?
- Work in pairs. Produce some other tips to manage stress and discuss them with your partner. Share your way of managing stress.
 Use expressions of approval in your speech.

8 WRITING

- a Write some of your problems that make you stressed.
- b Work in pairs. Imagine you are an advice columnist and you have received a letter from your classmate. Read your partner's problems. Write helpful tips for him or her to overcome his or her problem.

Prep-Classes Kicked the Stress Out

A LETTER			STRI
		_	

9 SPEAKING 🖼

Work in pairs. Talk about 'possible conditions'.

e.g.	If I don't pass my ex	am, my	mother	will	get
	angry with me.				

1. If it rains tomorrow,	
2. If the school bell doesn't work,	
3. If the teacher makes a mistake,	
or if the teacher makes a mistake,	

4. If my trousers tear,	
,	

5. If I	get home	late,	
	O	,	

6.	It I	get	angry	with	someone,	
		U	0 1			

7.	II II	teel	depressed,	
			1 '	

•			
9. If I hurt my	v best friend's	feelings.	

8. If I lose my mobile phone, ___

READING & WRITING



1 **READING**

- Answer the questions. Share your answers with the class.
 - 1. What study practices, strategies, or tips have been suggested over the years by your parents and teachers?
 - 2. Has any advice about studying effectively worked for you? If so, give examples and tell why they were effective.

LEARN TO STUDY SMARTER

The key to become a successful student is to learn how to study smart. It isn't possible to get all the studies in a day due to the limited time unless you know how to study smarter. Majority of successful students achieve their success by developing and applying effective study habits. If you want to be a successful student, don't get discouraged. Don't give up, just try to develop the study habits below. If you apply them, your grades can go up and your knowledge can increase.

First of all, if you look at studying as a necessary task, not an enjoyment or opportunity to learn, you will fail motivating yourself. If you want to motivate yourself, you should think that studying is sometimes an enjoyment and sometimes a superb opportunity to learn new things.

In order to motivate yourself, you ought to find an ideal place to study. A lot of students make the mistake of studying in a place where it is difficult to concentrate. A place with a lot of distractions such as the living room prevents you from concentrating on your studies.

In order to make progress with your studies, it is great if you set mini goals for yourself. In fact, by following a weekly study schedule, you reach your mini goals automatically. If you set mini goals for each of your subjects, you won't suffer from over studying or studying less. Good time

> management enables you to be organized. If you have a weekly study schedule, you can use your time efficiently.

> > As the last but not the least tip is that revising your notes, schoolwork, and other class materials over the weekend

> > > regularly helps you to continue learning. The new things to be learned are built upon the previously learned ones.

CHECK THIS OUT!

• If she doesn't listen to you, she can't understand your feelings.

Unless she listens to you, she can't understand your feelings.

• If you don't eat nutritious food, you get sick.

Unless you eat nutritious food, you get sick.

b Read the text and complete the sentences.

- 1. Unless you approach studying as an enjoyment or opportunity to learn,
- 2. Unless you choose an ideal place to study, ___
- 3. Unless you set mini goals,
- **4.** Unless you revise your notes over the weekend, _____
- 5. Unless you manage your time,

Read the text again and answer the c questions.

- 1. What is the key for becoming a successful student?
- 2. How can you reach your goals automatically?
- 3. What happens if you look studying as a necessary thing?
- **4.** What is the importance of an ideal place while studying?

Answer the questions below. Share your answers with the whole class.

- 1. What are your strategies for studying?
- 2. What makes you motivated for studying?

2 **WRITING**

Prepare a notice board in your class together by adding helpful tips on studying more effectively.

3 SPEAKING 🖼

- a Look at the list of characteristics of successful and unsuccessful people. Then tick the characteristics of successful people from the list.
 - ☐ Prepared ☐ Self-Disciplined
 - ☐ Never Set Goals ☐ Read Everyday
 - ☐ Irresponsible ☐ Talk About Ideas ☐ Determined ☐ Active Participant
 - ☐ Manage the Time ☐ Talk About People
- b Work in pairs. Look at the items on the list above. Produce helpful tips to be a successful student. Discuss them with your partner.
- **e.g.** If you want to be a successful student, you should be responsible.

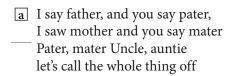
4 LISTENING)

a Radio programmers James and Ellie are talking about teens and their parents. Listen and answer the questions. (Track 10)



- **1.** Why will everything that you cry about now make you laugh in about five years?
- 2. When will you settle into who you are?
- **3.** What do they mean by personality shopping?

b Listen to the song on the radio. Order the lyrics. (Track 11)



- Things have come to a pretty pass
 Our romance is growing flat,
 For you like this and the other
 While I go for this and that,
- You say laughter and I say larfter
 You say after and I say arfter
 Laughter, larfter after arfter
 Let's call the whole thing off
- So if you like pyjamas and I like pyjahmas,
 I'll wear pyjamas and give up pyajahmas
 For we know we need each other so we
 Better call the whole thing off
 Let's call the whole thing off
- You like potato and I like potahto
 You like tomato and I like tomahto
 Potato, potahto, Tomato, tomahto.
 Let's call the whole thing off
- You say either and I say either
 You say neither and I say neither
 Either, either Neither, neither
 Let's call the whole thing off
- You like vanilla and I like vanella
 You saspiralla, and I saspirella
 Vanilla vanella chocolate strawberry
 Let's call the whole thing off
- So if you go for oysters and I go for ersters
 I'll order oysters and cancel the ersters
 For we know we need each other so we
 Better call the calling off off,
 Let's call the whole thing off
- So if I go for scallops and you go for lobsters,
 So all right no contest we'll order lobster
 For we know we need each other so we
 Better call the calling off off,
 Let's call the whole thing off
- But oh if we call the whole thing of
 then we must part
- k And oh, if we ever part, then that might break my heart
- Goodness knows what the end will be
 Oh I don't know where I'm at
 It looks as if we two will never be one
 Something must be done
- I like bananas and you like banahnahs
 I say Havana and I get Havahnah
 Bananas, banahnahs Havana, Havahnah
 Go your way, I'll go mine

FOR HOUSEHOLD CHORES

LEAD IN



- Answer the questions. Share your answers with the whole class.
 - 1. Who does most of the chores in your house?
 - 2. Which chores do you dislike most?
 - **3.** Are there any chores that you enjoy doing?
- Mop the floor
- Vacuum the floor
- Dust the shelves
- Hang out the laundry
- Fold the clothes
- Iron the clothes
- Wipe the window

◆ Take out the garbage

• Empty/ Load the dishwasher



Label the kinds of household chores.















5.







9. _

Categorise the household chores.

- ◆ Vacuuming ◆ Dusting ◆ Mowing the lawn ◆ Dish washing ◆ Laundry ◆ Raking the leaves
- Shovelling the sidewalk Preparing a meal Cleaning the bathroom/ toilet Watering plants
- Washing the car Washing beddings Weeding the garden

Inside Chores	
Outside Chores	

LISTENING & SPEAKING



1 VOCABULARY

Read the sentences and match the words in bold with the definitions below.

- 1. As I talked to my mum on the phone, I began to feel more and more homesick. ___
- **2.** Housekeeping department is **responsible** for keeping the hotel clean.
- **3.** She has little time for household chores and she is tired. Try to be a bit thoughtful and **lend a hand** to her. ____
- **4.** I don't like doing the **laundry**, especially folding the clothes is really tiring. ___
- **5.** He thought that the burglary joke was real and he was **about to** call the police. ___
- **6.** A: I hear you've got a new job, **congrats**! ____ B: Same to you!
- 7. If you make an **effort** to keep your room tidier,

it will help. ___

- **a**. short way of saying congratulations
- **b**. physical or mental activity needed to achieve something
- **c**. a modal expression used to refer to something that will happen very soon
- **d**. having control and authority over something or someone and the duty of taking care of it, him or her
- **e**. feeling unhappy because of being away from home for a long time
- f. helping someone
- **g**. the dirty clothes that need to be washed.

2 LISTENING)

a Work in pairs. Read the beginning of the conversation below. Guess what the conversation is about.

Sam: Hi Mum! How are you?

Emily: Good. I've missed you so much.

Sam: So have I. I feel homesick. I will visit you just

after the exam week is over.

Emily: Did you get use to living in a student house?

Sam: Oh, mom! It is a bit hard.

b Listen to the conversation. Fill in the chart about the sharing of the household chores in Sam's student house. (Track 12)

	Jack	Sam	Alex	Daniel	
1. Vacuuming and Mopping					
2. Taking out the Garbage					
3. Cooking					
4. Loading/ Emptying Dishwasher					
5. Folding and Ironing the Clothes					
6. Doing the Laundry					
7. Cleaning the Bathroom					
8. Dusting					
9. Setting/ Cleaning the Table					
Answer the following questions. 1. When will Sam go to his mother's house? 2. What does Sam think about living in a student					
house? 3. How often is Sam's student house vacuumed?					
4. How many times a week do they do	lust?				
5. What is Emily's advice for Sam?					
6. What is the intended message behind the idiom "men make houses, women make homes"?					

3 SPEAKING 🖼

- a Work in pairs. Ask the questions below to your partner.
 - 1. Which household chores are you responsible for?
 - 2. What are some of the helpful tips you know about loading the dishwasher/mopping the floor etc.?

S

b Interview your classmates.

Name:	Always Usually Often Sometime Rarely Never
Clean up the bathroom	
Hang out the laundry	
Fold the clothes	
Vacuum the carpets	
Mop the floors	
Dust the furniture	
Take out the garbage	
Empty the dishwasher	
Do the shopping	
Help with the cooking	

c Turn this interview into a written report.

e.g. A: How often do you clean up the bathroom? B: I rarely clean up the bathroom.

CHECK THIS OUT!

Talking About General Truths

- If/when you mix blue and yellow, you get green.
- Water boils, if/ when it is heated up to $100^{\circ}C$.
- Plants die; if/ when they don't get enough water.

We use zero conditional when the result of a condition is always the same such as scientific facts. The tense in both parts of the sentence is simple present.

4 READING

a Read the article and identify the main idea.

Your Family Makes a Great Team!

If you feel like your mum or father has many chores to do and doesn't have time to spend with you, let's help them with the household chores. Actually, you have some responsibilities at home such as making your bed and putting your dirty clothes into the laundry basket. Supposing that you all carry out your responsibilities, you should also lend your parents a hand with chores. Unless you carry out your responsibilities, your family can't be a great team. Also, you will learn how the real world works if you help your family because in life we always cooperate with others. So what can you do at home to make the chores go into high gear?

Cooking with parents is the best and the most enjoyable. You can dance, sing a song, or talk about the day with your parents while helping the cooking.

If you have a garden, there are many attractive and kinaesthetic tasks. While you are raking the leaves, trimming the bushes or if it is winter, shovelling the sidewalk, you are also doing physical exercise.

Setting the table will make your mum happy. Moreover, you can gain more spare time for your family.

It will be extremely helpful if you tidy the living room. You can also organize the bookshelves or drawers and clean the surfaces. If you like walking, you may like picking up some grocery items from the store.

The more you lend a hand to do household chores to your family, the more you have spare time to spend with them. If your family makes a great team, you always finish the chores quickly and easily.

- b Find the meanings of the highlighted chores.Write how often you do these chores at your home.
- c Answer the questions. Share your answers with class.
 - **1.** What are your responsibilities at home?
 - **2.** Do you like helping your parents with the chores? Why? Why not?
- d Guess the meanings of the following idioms from the article.

	Lend	someon	e a hand	l with	somethir	ng:	
(Go ir	nto high	gear:				

e Underline the general truth sentences in the text.

READING & WRITING



1 **READING**

Scan the text quickly and underline the word groups related to household chores.

A BUSY WEEKEND OF THE BERNARD **FAMILY**

This weekend probably will be the worst and the most tiring of all. We've been so busy for the last two weeks that we even haven't eaten dinner as a family all together. My wife, Laura, has a seminar upstate, so she had been getting ready for it and this Friday she will be home back. I have worked overtime almost every day. My teenage son, Jack and daughter, Lily had been preparing for the exam week. The house is in a mess.

If we don't do all the chores together, no one will be able to finish cleaning alone in time. So, we all will share responsibilities. The kids will have to tidy up their bedrooms and change their beddings. I for myself will vacuum the carpets, clean the windows, and I mustn't forget to water all the plants. I have to change the cat's litter, too. Poor CoCo! My wife will clean the kitchen, cook dinner, and do the laundry. I like ironing the clothes so I will do it. She will hang out the clean clothes, and fold the dried ones. I will take out the garbage as I do every day. My daughter always helps her mum dusting the shelves. I suppose she will do it again. Also, my son likes mopping the floors. I think he will do it, too. We have a little backyard. I will mow the lawn and sweep the pathways. My son will help me as always.

We always share the household chores. Every day we all have some responsibilities. Our children are aware of their responsibilities and they carry out what they should do. They make their beds every morning before they leave for school and they help setting the table. If Laura does the cooking, I always wash the dishes and our children always help setting the table. We are a family living in the same house, so my wife is not the only person responsible for the household chores. We should all pitch in together.

Read the text and find the names of the family members from the text.



- Read the text and answer the questions.
 - 1. Why will this weekend probably be the worst and the most tiring one for Bernard family?
 - 2. When will Laura be at home?
 - **3.** Who likes ironing the clothes?
 - **4.** What are the chores of the family members?
 - 5. What does Oliver think about their responsibilities about household chores?

2 WRITING

- Suppose that your house is in a mess and you should clean your house this weekend. Plan the chore sharing among your family members. Write a paragraph between 100 and 150 words.
- Prepare your family's "to do list" for this weekend.

To Do	List	
M E	ŕ	MY FAMILY
-		

3 LISTENING))

a Match the words with their meanings. You can use a dictionary.

1. spot	a. to cause the flow of a liquid from a container
2. rinse	b . a small area which is different coloured, especially because of dirt
3. wipe	c. lasting forever
4. pour	d. to use water to clean
5. permanent	e. to slide something to

Radio programmers Ellie and James are talking about household chores on the radio today. They have a guest today, Assoc. Prof.
 Dr. Pure. Listen and complete the sentences. (Track 13)

remove dirt

1. If you have spots on somewhere,

2.	If x	VO11	have	a spc	ot.		
)	, ou	murc	u opc	, · · · —		

- **3.** If you take fresh walnuts in your hand without rubber gloves,
- **4.** If you pour sugared tea and it dries,
- 5. If your spot is new and tea is sugar free,
- c Decide which sentences above are 'general truth' or 'possible condition'.
- d Listen again and write solutions for the problems given.

PROBLEM	SOLUTION
Ink spot on sweater	
Fresh walnut blackens hands	
Tea spot	

e Listen to the song "If you go away by Terry Jacks". While listening, complete the song. (Track 14)

If you go away				
On a summer day				
Then you might as well				
1				
All the birds that flew				
In the summer sky				
2				
And our hearts were high				
And the days were young				
And the nights were long				
3				
With the night birds song				
With the night birds song If you go away				
•				
If you go away				
If you go away				
If you go away 4 I'll make you a day				
If you go away 4 I'll make you a day Like no day has been				
If you go away 4 I'll make you a day Like no day has been				



In the world you know Just an empty moon

Well fly with the wind

But if you go away

And I love you so

8

Like an empty look I see on your face If you go away

8____

I'll make you a day Like no day has been

9.

Well sail the suns
Well ride on the rain

10

Well fly with the wind

f Work in groups. Change the lyrics of the song according to the topic "spots" and do karaoke.

4 READING

a Read the text and underline the general truths mentioned in the text.

WHAT IF IT HAPPENS TO YOU!

Our houses seem a safe place for us, but unfortunately our houses are the places where accidents are most likely to happen. We should be aware of the possible accidents and be careful about them. Let's read and see also what we should do if we have a home accident.

FOOD POISONING

- If you have an upset stomach, diarrhea, and vomit, you probably might have got poisoned.
- In case of poisoning, you should let your stomach settle and eat gentle foods.
- If the symptoms continue, you should call an ambulance.

GAS LEAK

• If you smell a rotten egg like odour in the house, there might be a gas leak.



- Don't tweet about it.
- If you suspect there is a leak, first open the windows and go out.
- ◆ When you are out, you can tweet about it then. <a>(€)
- If someone inhales much gas, she or he feels worn out and a chest pain.

ELECTRICAL SHOCK

- If you repair an electrical appliance, you had better use your right hand. In case of an electrical shock, alternative current causes a heart attack if you use your left hand.
- If one gets an electric shock, skin burns
- If you see a person getting an electric shock, use a non-conductive material to save him or her.

b Read the short paragraphs about home accidents again. Complete the dialogue between Sam and his mother, Emily.

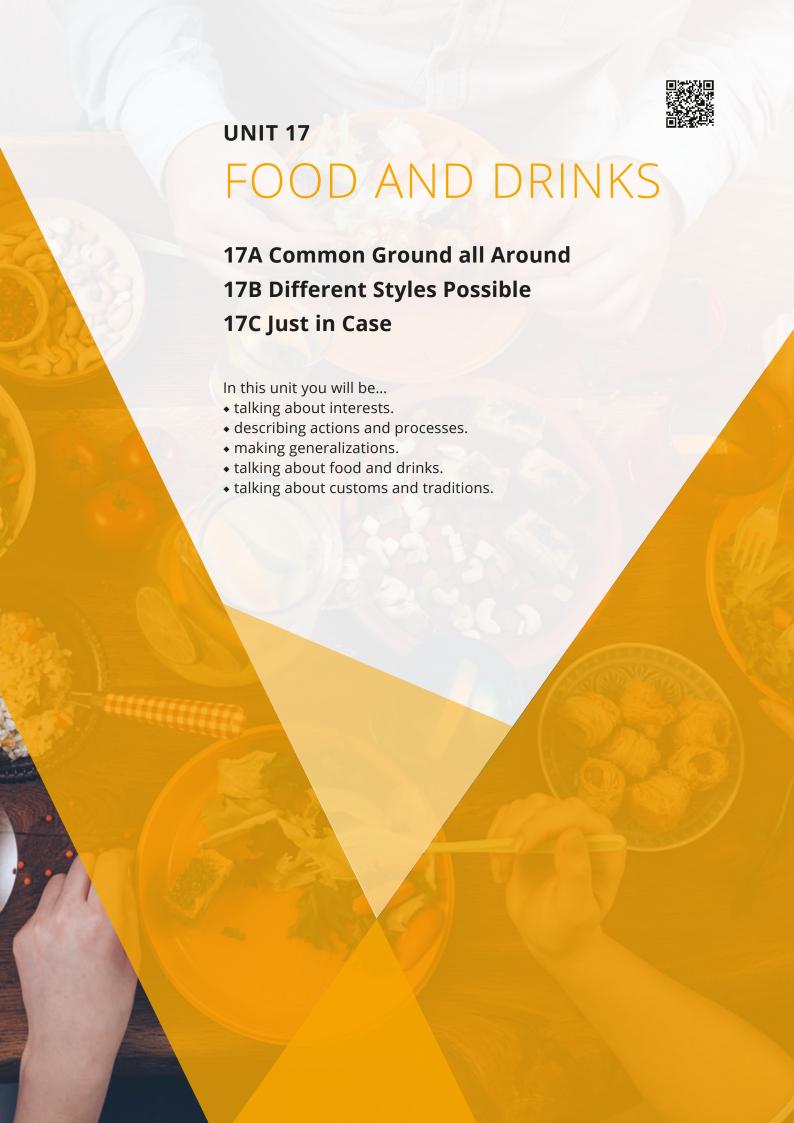
Sam is a university student. He lives in a student house. He calls his mum. Sam: Hi Mum! How are you today? Emily: Fine. I'm cleaning the house. And you? Sam: More power to you! I'm trying to bandage Alex's hand. He has just cut himself. By the way, I am also worried about how we can understand if there is a gas leak. In case of a gas leak what should we do? Emily: 1___ Sam: I'm very surprised about the odour. Also, I really fear about electrical shock. Emily: Just a word of advice! If you repair an electrical appliance, you had better use your ²_____ hand. **Sam:** That's really interesting, but why? Emily: Because if you use your left hand, Sam: Ouch! I have an upset stomach. Emily: If you have upset stomach, diarrhea, and vomit, you probably 4_____ Sam: What should I do? Emily: 5_____ ____. However,

if the symptoms continue, 6_

Sam: OK, mum. See you.

I am worried about you. Call me back.





LEAD IN

Answer the following questions.

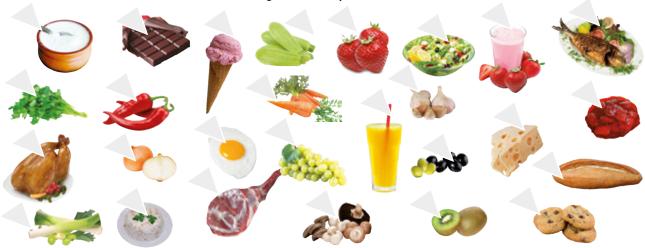
- 1. What are some human commonalities that are true to all people anywhere and anytime?
- 2. In what ways is 'food' a common ground among people?
- **3.** "One cannot think well, love well, sleep well, If one has not dined well," says Virginia Woolf. What does she mean? Discuss with your friends.

LISTENING & SPEAKING



1 LISTENING)

a Write the correct number next to the pictures as you listen. (Track 1)



b List the food and drinks in Exercise a.

Food and drinks: ◆ mushroom ◆ olive ◆ bread

- chocolate → leek → jam → rice → egg → carrot
- ◆ grape ◆ salad ◆ kiwi ◆ meat ◆ ice cream
- cheese → milk shake → onion → garlic → cookie
- ◆ fish ◆ strawberry ◆ pepper ◆ chicken
- ◆ yogurt ◆ parsley ◆ orange juice ◆ marrow

/ 08 min	41010) 0141180)4	11011011
1	10	19
2	11	20
3	12	21
4	13	22
5	14	23
6	15	24
7	16	25
8	17	26
9	18	27

- Listen to Alice and Oliver at the supermarket. Tick the food and drinks they mentioned in Exercise a. (Track 2)
- d Put the words in Exercise a in the correct category. Add two more to each category.

Dairy Products	
Vegetables	
Fruit	
Meat	
Sweets/Desserts	
Drinks	
Others	

2 **READING**

- Look at the pictures and answer the questions below.
 - 1. Which food is more appealing to you? Why?
 - 2. Can you guess the ingredients of each food?
 - 3. How do you think they taste or smell?
 - 4. Which do you think is the most and the least delicious? Compare and contrast the dishes.
 - 5. Have you ever tried a traditional food of another country or speciality of another city in your country? What is its name? How do you like it? Do you know how it is prepared?













- Read the descriptions of the foods in the pictures. Write the names of the foods and countries in the blanks.
 - Mexico
- ◆ Taco
- England
- Fish and Chips
- ◆ Malaysia
- Mantı
- Scotland • Italy
- Lasagne

- Curry mee
- Turkey
- Haggis

A. ¹_____ is a wide, flat-shaped pasta. To make the most delicious one, it is better to use homemade ingredients.

It is a must to have a great Bolognese sauce which is made of meat. Bolognese sauce is put between the pasta sheets and béchamel sauce is poured over. It is from 2_

B. ¹ is a traditional food. A corn
wheat tortilla is folded or rolled around
a filling. The filling can be beef, chicken,
seafood, vegetables, or cheese. It is usually
served with salsa, chili pepper, or avocado
sauces and generally eaten without a knife or
fork. It is from ²

C. 1_____ is a spicy curry soup with thin yellow noodles and coconut milk. Other ingredients are dried tofu, prawns, chicken, or egg optionally. It is from 2_

D. 1_____ is a savoury food made with sheep's internal organs such as heart, liver, and lungs. They are minced with onion, spices, and salt to have a kind of filling. It is stuffed into the animal's stomach and boiled for 3 hours. It is from ².

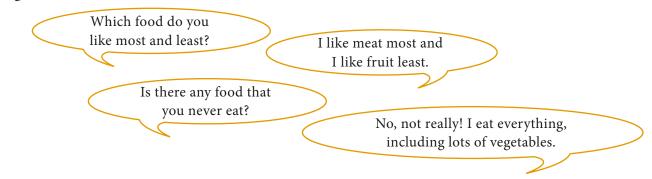
E. 1 is a dish made of small
dumplings. Typical filling of dumplings
is a spiced meat mixture. Small pieces of
homemade drough is filled with the mixture
and wrapped. They are boiled and usually
served with yogurt with garlic and tomato
paste sauce. ²

F. ¹_____ is a hot dish. The ingredients are fried battered fish and hot chips. It is a common take-away food. It is from 2_

3 SPEAKING 🖼

a Work in pairs. Ask and answer questions about your favourite food and drinks as in the example.

e.g.



b Use your dictionary and check the meanings of the adjectives in the table below. What does each category describe? Write a heading from the box.

1	2	3	4
Creamy Crispy Crunchy Dry Flaky Hard Oily Soft	Bitter Hot Salty Savoury Sour Spicy Sweet Tasteless	Appetizing Awful Delicious Disgusting Finger licking good Horrible Yummy	Devine Fragrant Odourless Rotten Smelly Smoky Stinking

c Talk about some food or drinks you like or dislike and state the reasons with the adjectives in Exercise b.

e.g.

I don't like garlic because it smells awful.

I like Adana Kebab because it is a hot dish.

- d Tell three food items or drinks.
 - 1. To take to a picnic
 - 2. Delicious, but not good for health
 - 3. You used to love, but not any more
 - 4. Smell really good

- 5. Good to have in summer/ winter
- **6.** Difficult to cook or prepare
- 7. Most popular in your hometown
- 8. Your mother cooks or prepares best
- e Think of a food. Describe it to your friends without telling its name. Use the texture, smell, and flavour adjectives in your description. Let your friends guess the food.

READING & WRITING



1 **READING**

- Answer the questions below.
 - 1. Do you prefer homemade food or fast food? Why?
 - 2. Do you sometimes cook? What are some dishes you can cook?
- Read the dialogue and underline the verbs about cooking.

(On the phone)

Emily: Hi, mum. It's me. How is everything?

Mum: Hi, sweetie! We are all fine. How are you doing? Are you happy there in your own house?

Emily: Mostly yes, but I have an issue here now and I need your help mum. I have a couple of friends coming over and I'll offer them something to eat. How can I prepare a chicken salad?

Mum: Oh, dear. It is easy if you have eggs, lettuce, cheese, chicken, cucumber, and tomato at home.

Emily: Yes, I do. Please be quick, I don't have much time. Am I slicing the cucumber first?

Mum: Boil the eggs first. They are boiled for 10 minutes. And then leaves of lettuce are removed and washed carefully. After washing, they are put into a big salad bowl.

Emily: Wait a minute. I am taking notes... yes, then?

Mum: Cucumber is sliced and tomato is cut and added to the bowl. The shells of eggs are removed, sliced and put on the top of the salad.

Emily: What about the chicken and cheese?

Mum: Oh, sorry! They are cut into small pieces and added to the bowl before the cucumber and tomato. If you like, a dressing is also made for this salad.

Emily: How is it made? Is it difficult?

Mum: No, not at all. Mayonnaise, ketchup, olive oil are put in a small bowl and mixed. Salt and pepper are added. It is poured over the salad. The salad is usually served with fresh bread, but I prefer French fries myself.

Emily: I'll serve with bread because I don't know how the French fries are made. Love you mum. Thanks, bye.

Look at the pictures and write the verbs about cooking from the text. There are two more verbs which are not included in the text.





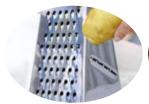
2.













7. 8.





10.



11. _

CHECK THIS OUT!

How is it made?

- 1. A design is drawn on the pumpkin.
- 2. The pumpkin is hollowed out.
- 3. Eyes are carved out.
- 4. Mouth and teeth are carved out.
- 5. A sharp knife is used and skin is peeled off to have teeth.

We use a passive verb to tell something is/was/has been/will be/is being made.

Passive form of a verb is **be** and **past participle** form of the main verb.

see - be seen follow - be followed eat - be eaten clean - be cleaned

2	Study the CHECK THIS OUT! box and use the correct
	passive verbs to fill in the blanks.

- e.g. Some forest fires are caused (cause) by the people.
 - 1. 35 percent of the forest _____ (destroy) by the fire five years ago.
 - 2. New trees _____ (plant) yet.
 - **3.** The government says trees _____ (plant) next year.
 - **4.** A new campaign _____ (organise) by the locals now.

DO YOU KNOW THIS?

The animal agriculture sector is responsible for 18% of the total release of greenhouse gases world-wide, which is more than the whole transportation sector.

3 Match the parts to see how the greenhouse effect happens and its result.

1. Too much carbon dioxide	are cut down	by the green house effect.
2. Carbon dioxide	is trapped near the soil	by the plants through the leaves.
3. Forests	is released into the atmosphere	by the greenhouse gases.
4. Heat	are caused	by the human activities.
5. Serious climate changes	is absorbed	for different reasons.

Choose the suitable verb from the list below and fill in the blanks with the correct form of the verbs.

take ◆ give ◆ destroy ◆ build

What has been happening to people?

A lot of damage ¹______ to the environment by people for a long time. We all have this planet to live on, nowhere else. Don't the people see that?

Last year, hundreds square kilometre of forest ²

even in this small city of Mayaka. They say a new holiday

Very urgent precautions must ⁴_____ or we will

resort ³ next summer on that land.

face many more problems in the future.



5	Answer the following questions and test you	ur general knowledge.		
	1. Mickey Mouse was created by	6. A lot of rice is eaten in		
	a. Morris	a. Peru		
	b. Walt Disneyc. Chuck Jones	b. China		
		c. Egypt		
	2. Four Seasons was composed by	7. Guernica was painted by		
	a. Antonio Vivaldib. Ludwig van Beethoven	a. Pablo Picassob. Salvador Dalic. Claude Monet		
	c. Wolfgang Amadeus Mozart			
	3. Cotton is grown in in Turkey.	8. Blood in human body is filtered by		
	a. Black Sea Region	a. the lungs		
	b. Central Anatolia Region	b. the kidneys		
	c. Mediterranean Region	c. the heart		
	4. Hababam Sınıfı was directed by	9. The first animal that was sent to space was		
	a. Metin Erksanb. Nuri Bilge Ceylan	a. a dog b. a monkey		
	c. Ertem Eğilmez	c. a parrot		
	5. Cricket is mostly played in	10. The sport that is played at Wimbledon is		
	a. the USA	a. tennis		
	b. the UK	b. curling		
	c. Spain	c. archery		
6	Write two more questions by using 'passive'	and ask them to your friends.		
	1	2		
	a	a		
	b	b		
	c	c		
7	WRITING			
•	Write how the banana milkshake is prepare	d by using the pictures and verbs given.		
	A Tasty Milkshake by			
	1. First, a banana	(peel)		
	2. Then, it is	(slice)		
	3. After that, they	(put/ blend)		
	4. Later, ice and milk	(add)		
	5. Everything	(blend)		
	6. Finally, it	(pour)		
		4 - 4 -		
	1 2 3	5 6		
-				

LEAD IN



Answer the following questions.

- 1. Are you open minded to new ideas and experiences?
- **2.** There are some very unusual foods that some people prefer. Can you name any? Would you like to try them?
- 3. See the pictures below and discuss what you think about different types of foods and eating styles.









LISTENING & SPEAKING



1 LISTENING)

a Listen to Linda giving a cake's recipe to her friend. Fill in the ingredients list while you are listening. (Track 3)

WHITE CAKE
INGREDIENTS
+
*
*
*
*
*
•
*

- b Listen again and answer the following questions.
 - 1. Who does Betty want to surprise?
 - 2. Why can't Betty get the picture of the recipe?

2 Fill in the blanks with the idioms from the box.

- piece of cake
- apple of his eye
- hard nut to crack
- pie in the sky
- spilled the beans
- walking on the eggshells

1. He loves his granddaughter very much. She
is the
2. The new manager is a difficult person. He is
a real
3. The English exam wasn't difficult at all. It
was a

- **4.** Her dream to be famous is a _____
- 5. How on earth do they know? Someone _____ about his transfer to the other team.
- **6.** When my mother-in-law stays with us, I feel like I am _____

3 READING

- a Answer the following questions.
 - 1. Do you watch cooking shows on TV?
 - 2. What can be the pros and cons of being a chef?
- b Kemal, a student from culinary school, is interviewing the famous chef Mike Bellow. Read the interview and answer the questions.

Kemal: Thank you for taking the time to talk. What I want to ask first is this: Why and when did you decide to become a chef?

Mike: I have always been interested in cooking since my childhood. I can say that I decided to become a cook at a very early age.

Kemal: Where and how were you trained?

Mike: I was trained at Michael Gougard's Culinary School in France. Then, I gained lots of experience with some big chefs.

Kemal: Is there a chef you admire most?

Mike: Roger Verge has always been my idol. I draw inspiration from him. I think he is the best all around the world.

Kemal: You have worked in many different countries and now you have been working in Turkey for five years. Which cuisine in the world do you find the most exciting?

Mike: I am keen on cooking. That's why I admire all.

Kemal: Have you ever thought of throwing down the pots and pans and head for another career?

Mike: No, never. Cooking is not only a job for me, it is my life.

Kemal: What is Chef Bellow's favourite food in Turkish cuisine?

Mike: There are lots of wonderful dishes in Turkish cuisine. It is hard to choose. Let me think... Kavun Dolması, a dish from the Ottoman Palace, is my favourite.

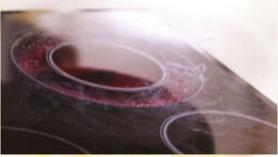
Kemal: And the last question. What advice do you have for amateur cooks?

Mike: Loving what you do is the core element of success. Put your love into the food.

Kemal: Thanks for the interview, Chef Bellow.

Mike: Thank you for having me.



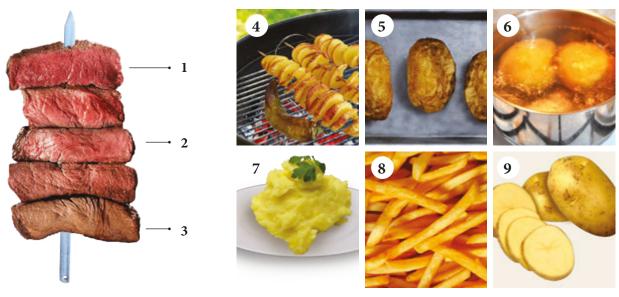


- 1. When did Mike decide to be a chef?
- 2. Did he go to a school to be a cook?
- 3. Who does he draw inspiration from?
- **4.** How long has he been working in Turkey?
- 5. Does he have a favourite cuisine?
- **6.** Has he ever got bored and thought to change his job?
- 7. What does he think about Turkish cuisine?

4 VOCABULARY

a How do you like your food? Look at the list of adjectives and find the correct picture for each.

Raw	Baked	Boiled	Rare	Grilled	Fried	Well done	Mashed	Medium



- b Fill in the blanks with the correct adjective from Exercise 4a.
 - **1.** Japanese people generally eat _____ fish.
 - **2.** My steak is always served first because I like it cooked _____
 - **3.** The smell of freshly ______ bread in the morning always reminds me of my mother.
 - **4.** He wiped the ______ potatoes around his lips with a napkin.
 - **5.** Avoid ______ food for your health.
 - **6.** I ordered my fish _____ __ __ not burnt. I won't eat this!
- c Ask your friends about their preferences on food by using the adjectives in Exercise 4a.

How do you like your fish?

I always prefer well-done. What about you?

5 SPEAKING

- a Add two more questions about cooking to the ones below, and ask and answer by taking turns.
 - 1. How interested are you in cooking?
 - 2. Have you ever cooked anything?
 - 3. Who cooks in your family?
 - 4. How much cooking should a person know?

5.			

Work in pairs. Prepare some questions to interview with a chef and role-play it in class.

Delicious

We all enjoy delicious food,
Makes us happy, fixes our mood.
It's all about the juicy taste,
Doesn't matter, where the food is placed.
We should consider, nutritional support,
We shall need it if we engage in a sport.
Energy; food provides - plenty
Need a bit more if we're over twenty.
A great dish, we should all savor,
Eat slowly, as we taste the flavor.

Eat slowly, as we taste the flavor. Choose our very favorite cuisine, Is it red? Or is it green? E

N

J O

Υ

т

н

Ē

P

0

READING & WRITING



1 **READING**

- Answer the following questions.
 - 1. What does "food" mean to you?
 - 2. Do you prepare special food on special occasions?
- Read the text, choose the correct heading, and write in the blank.
 - **a.** More than feeding
- c. Unhealthy feeding
- **b.** Facts about feeding

Taking the necessary substances to the body is called feeding, but is this what we humans do? No. Humans don't feed. We eat.

Feeding and eating are different. We don't only gather or hunt for food to survive, but also we produce food. Agriculture has changed many things about food. It makes food available for us at any time. Choosing foods to combine with other foods prompts some customs and regulations in a society. And this isn't something separate from the geography.

There are different foods and different customs all around the world. They can be appealing or disgusting for others. An old saying is that "One man's meat is another man's poison." We might like or not, we should respect the differences.



Another aspect of eating is joy. By looking at all those snacks, it can be said that they have nothing to do with feeding. Chocolates, biscuits, crisps are there just to make people feel good.

Because eating is more than feeding, some special foods are prepared on some special occasions or celebrations, too.

For example, on Hidirellez celebrations in some regions of Turkey, an animal is sacrificed, braised meat and rice is prepared and eaten all together with joy.

On Good Friday -the day of Jesus Christ's deathin Germany only fish is eaten, not the other kinds of meat.

On Shab-e Yalda celebrations in Iran -the birthday of the sun-saffron and carrot halva is prepared.

In the USA, Christmas celebrations can't be imagined without cookies. Mostly, gingerbread cookies are prepared for Christmas.

As a final word, we can say that food means more than nutrition to human beings.

- Read the text again and find how many examples of special occasions were given in the text? What are they?
- Match the special occasions, countries, and special foods.

1. Braised meat and rice	Iran	Christmas
2. Cookies	Germany	Good Friday
3. Saffron and carrot halva	The USA	Hıdırellez
4. Fish	Turkey	Shab-e Yalda

- Match the highlighted words in the text with the definitions.
 - 1. _____ one part of a situation, problem, or subject
 - 2. ______ being cooked slowly within a covered dish in a little fat and liquid
 - **3.** _____ an important event or ceremony
 - 4. _____ to cause something
 - **5.** _____ material



2 SPEAKING 🖼

Do you know different celebrations of some other countries? What is prepared for these celebrations? Talk about Ramadan or Feast of Sacrifice celebrated in Muslim world, Christmas or Easter celebrations in Christian world etc.

e.g.

Henna is put on the ram and the ram is sacrificed in Feast of Sacrifice.

Easter eggs are specially decorated. People give them out to celebrate the Easter festival.

3 PRONUNCIATION (Track 4))

Some words are difficult to pronounce for the learners of English as a second language. Listen and repeat ten of the commonly mispronounced words.

- **1. Career** He has a successful career in marketing.
- **2. Examine** She examined it carefully.
- **3. Answer** I called her, but she didn't answer.
- **4. Foreign** Do you know any foreign languages?
- **5. Ourselves** We promised ourselves not to go there again.
- **6. Mountain** The highest mountain in the world is Everest.
- **7. Literature** Literature is my favourite subject at school.
- **8. Purpose** What is the purpose of this study?
- **9. Determine** They still couldn't determine the problem.
- **10. Whole** She spent the whole afternoon sleeping.

4 LISTENING)

a Listen to the Radio LMB giving a recipe. Write the missing words of the ingredients list while listening. (Track 5)



- ◆ 2 large _____ potatoes
- ◆ _____large carrots
- ◆ 2 _____ of chopped rosemary
- ◆ 1 tablespoon of _____ oil
- _____ and pepper
- ◆ 1 tablespoon of balsamic _____
- b How many servings does this dish make?
- c Listen again and put the steps in the correct order.
 - **a.** Before serving, vegetables are mixed with balsamic vinegar. __
 - **b.** All the chopped vegetables are put in a large bowl. __
 - **c.** Vegetables are poured in a large baking pan. __
 - **d.** Then, all the vegetables are washed and chopped. __
 - **e.** They are baked, uncovered, for about 1 hour or until vegetables get soft. __
 - **f.** Chopped rosemary, oil, salt and pepper are added to the bowl and mixed thoroughly. __
 - g. First, the oven is preheated to 180 °C. _
 - **h.** Finally, it is served with fresh lettuce leaves. __
- d Suggest a name for the dish.

CHECK THIS OUT!

Same thing, different ways.

Someone waters the flowers regularly. The flowers are watered regularly.

Someone is knocking on the door.

The door is being knocked.

Mrs. Tupe will look after the baby.

The baby will be looked after by Mrs. Tupe.

You can cook it easily.

It can be cooked easily.

How to decide?

When

- action is more important than the agent,*
- agent is unknown,
- agent is unimportant,
- * agent is obvious from the context,

you can use a passive sentence.

* An **agent** is someone who does the action.

- 5 Study the CHECK THIS OUT! box and write sentences with the same meaning.
 - **1.** They prepare lots of food for the celebrations.
 - **2.** My mum is cooking desserts for Ramadan Bayram.
 - **3.** The Japanese generally eat lots of fish.
 - **4.** People are going to decorate the streets.
 - **5.** They haven't written the invitations.

6 WRITING

- a Read the following dialogue and answer the questions below.
 - 1. Are they organising a picnic?
 - **2**. Is it a surprise birthday party for their brother?
 - **3**. By whom is the cleaning going to be done?
 - **4**. What is going to be done after the cleaning?
 - 5. Who were the songs downloaded by?

Jessie: Let's look over the plan one more time Vanessa. The big day is tomorrow.

Vanessa: OK. The first thing to be done is waiting until they leave the house. If they don't, we can't do anything.

Jessie: They will. Uncle Tom is going to call them out for an hour in the afternoon. As soon as they leave, the cleaning of the house is going to be done quickly. We can spend just 30 minutes for this.

Vanessa: Are we going to do that together?

Jessie: Yes. If we don't do that together, we won't be able to finish it on time.

Vanessa: After cleaning, we are going to decorate the room. You have bought some balloons, haven't you?

Jessie: Yes, but they aren't all going to be blown by me!

Vanessa: OK. We can do that together. Balloons and ribbons. There won't be a party if there are no decorations.

Jessie: Shall we put their wedding photos all around, too?

Vanessa: Well done Jessie. That's a very good idea.

Jessie: How about the food and drinks?

Vanessa: I have bought some things to eat and drink. Kinds of snacks and a big cake. They are going to be organised in the middle of the room on the coffee table.

Jessie: And the music?

Vanessa: And the music what? Don't tell me that you haven't bought a CD!

Jessie: I haven't bought, but I downloaded their first dance tune and some other 80s from the Internet. How is it going to be played?

Vanessa: I can set the player to play automatically. Don't worry.

Jessie: OK. Let's make it an anniversary to remember for them.

How do you celebrate special occasions?
 Write a composition of 100-150 words on your notebook.

LEAD IN

Answer the following questions.

- 1. In what ways do communities differ from each other?
- 2. What is culture?
- 3. What are some differences or similarities in various cultures?
- 4. What is the most unusual manner (food, greeting, leisure, business etc.) you have ever heard of?

LISTENING & SPEAKING



1 LISTENING)

Listen to Edward and Lisa talking about food etiquette around the world and fill in the missing words or phrases. (Track 6)

Edward: Hey sis, what are you doing? Are you reading a 1_____ book again?

Lisa: Ha-ha, very funny. I am reading a book about food and drink culture, 2____ and etiquette around the world. If you yourself read some things in your entire life, you will learn not to eat all those 3____ food.

Edward: Thanks for reminding!

You know what? You 4_ my 5_____. What rules of etiquette are in other countries?

Lisa: There are lots of examples. Let me read a few interesting ones. Here it says "It is good to burp at the dinner table in

China." If you don't 6_____, the host will think that you didn't like the food.

Edward: Burping? That's interesting.

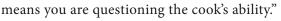
Lisa: Here is another one from China again. "Flipping the fish while cooking is really bad luck. If you flip, the fishermen's boat ⁷_ capsize," they say. Look! This one is good for you bro. "In some parts of Asia, slurping while eating noodle is considered polite."

Edward: Don't mess with me Lis!

Lisa: OK. OK. "If you don't shake the cup of the coffee when you finish, they will 8____ on pouring you more."

Edward: Where on earth does it happen?

Lisa: Bedouins in Middle East. Last piece is from Portugal. "If you ask for salt and pepper on the table, it is considered offensive because it



Edward: And in our country "Bananas should be eaten with fork and knife." Let me go and get one, and eat it traditionally!

- Answer the following questions according to the dialogue.
 - 1. Does Edward like reading books?
 - 2. Does Edward usually slurp while eating?
 - 3. Where is Edward going?
- Fill in the sentences with the correct words or phrases from the box. There is one extra.
 - attention ◆ junk food ◆ salt and pepper
 - keep ◆ burp ◆ draw
 - 1. Why do some people _____ after they eat?
 - 2. I want to _____ your ____ to the weight you've put on recently.
 - 3. Mum is worried about his boys' eating too
 - 4. If they _____ on eating that much, they will become obese.

2 SPEAKING 🖼

- a Discuss the following questions.
 - 1. Why are traditions important?
 - **2.** In which fields of life do people have customs and traditions?
 - 3. Do you know any food customs of other countries?
 - **4.** What are some predominant customs, values, and traditions about food in Turkey?

b	Discuss and match the food etiquettes to the
	countries.

- **1.** It is rude to point anyone with your chopsticks. ___
- **2.** Finishing your plate means you liked the food. ___
- **3.** Don't start eating before the elders arrive at the table. ___
- **4.** Don't eat from your fork. Just use it to push food onto your spoon. ___
- **5.** Accept a dish or glass using both hands.
- **6.** Don't be on time for dinner. ___
- c Prepare a poster showing different countries and some food etiquettes. Display and present it in your class.

3 READING

- a Do you believe in superstitions? Even if we don't, we know many superstitions. Match the superstitious results with the conditions.
 - a. will die.
 - **b.** will suffer.
 - c. will strike you.
 - **d.** will come home
- **e.** will be mischievous and disobedient

a. Thailand

b. China

c. Japan

d. Korea

f. Turkey

e. Philippines

- **f.** will save you from troubles.
- 1. If a baby has more than one hair crown, he ___
- 2. If a dog howls continuously at night, someone ___
- 3. If you grow cactus near your door, it ___
- **4.** If you don't spit three times on your body when you get a compliment, the evil eyes ___
- **5.** If a small child looks through the space between his/ her legs, a guest ___
- **6.** If a bride doesn't wear something old, something new, something borrowed, and something blue, her marriage ___

b Read the dialogue between Lisa, an exchange student in Turkey, and Nazlı. Find the superstition excluding 'knocking on the wood'.

Nazl: Lisa! You've just knocked on the wood?

Lisa: Yeah, I think I have. It is a common superstition in my country, Poland. Haven't you got any here in Turkey?

Nazl: Surely we have. The thing is that, we have the same one. But, we first pull our earlobe and make a sound 'cucuk' and then knock on the wood. Many people do it here.

Lisa: Does it have a story of origin?

Nazl: I don't know even if it does. But I often do it. There are traditions, customs, and superstitions all around. We do most of them without much attention.

Lisa: Yes, we don't know why we do, either. We might not believe in them, but we can't help doing them. Our primary school teacher would tell us a story about the origin of it. Pagans thought that trees were the homes of fairies, spirits, and many other mystical creatures. People would knock on the trees- now woods- to request help or to distract spirits with evil intentions. She said this was the most common superstition all around the world.

Nazlı: Nice story. Look Lisa. I have to go now for the audition. Wish me luck.

Lisa: Good luck! And don't forget to cross your fingers!

c Are the sentences true (T) or false (F) according to the dialogue?

- 1. Lisa has just knocked on the wood. ___
- **2.** There aren't any superstitions in Turkey. ___
- **3.** Knocking on the wood in Turkey and in Poland are exactly the same. ___
- **4.** Nazlı thinks we do rituals of superstitions consciously. ___
- **5.** Someone taught Lisa about the origin of the superstition. ___
- **6.** Nazlı has to go to meet with some friends. ___

REMEMBER THIS!

If you eat a lot of junk food, you will get fat.

"If I go to the cinema, I will buy some popcorn."

going, you'll end up someplace else. (conditional clause) (main clause) Yogi Berra If this condition is met, this is likely to happen. 1. What does Yogi Berra mean with If you don't study, you won't pass the test. this quote? If it rains tomorrow, we won't have our picnic. 2. Do you agree with him? Why, why If he doesn't leave now, will he miss the train? 4 Study the sentences in the REMEMBER THIS! box and complete the rule. We use _____ in the conditional clause and ___ _____in the main clause to talk about real or probable situations in the present or future. 5 Match the conditions to the probable results. a. they will play in the European league. 1. If you come late again, ___ **b.** I will lend you some. 2. If we miss the bus, ___ c. we will order a pizza. **3.** If you need money, ___ **d.** you will lose your job. **4.** If she doesn't cook dinner, ___ e. she won't talk to you. **5.** If they win the cup, ___ **f.** we will take a taxi. **6.** If you don't apologise, ___ 6 Read the probable situations and add a result. e.g. Tim probably won't do his homework. If he doesn't do his homework, his teacher will get angry. **1.** Perhaps I will have time tomorrow. **2.** His father might come home early in the evening. 3. Perhaps Gram will leave Susan. **4.** I might finish the housework before noon. **5.** You probably won't keep my secret. 7 Play the chain game. Start with the sentence "If I have time tomorrow, I will go to the cinema."

TODAY'S QUOTE

If you don't know where you are

8 READING

- a Do you know any festivals around the world? What festivals are there in your country?
- b Read Maria's article for her school magazine introducing a festival in her country, Philippines.
 - A Kadayawan is a weeklong festival which is celebrated every third week of August in the city of Davao, Philippines. I think it is one of the must-see celebrations in the world. It is the celebration of life and culture. And it is a thanksgiving to nature for good harvest. The name of the festival comes from the word 'Madayaw'. It means "good, superior" in local dialect.
 - Preparations start long before the festival. The city is amazingly decorated with ribbons, flags, flowers, lights, and helium balloons. Traditional clothes and symbols are prepared by individual participants or groups. Many brightly-coloured floats are prepared for the parades.
 - C During the festival, everyone has a great time. Streets are filled with happy and noisy crowds. Visitors from all around the world start filling the pavement early in the day before the floating stars. Lots of contests are held, the locals perform their traditional dances and you get into the spirit of celebration. Stunning floats of various eye-catching designs take you to another world.
 - D If you join the festival once, the memory of happy music and colourful costumes will stay with you for the rest of your life. Feel the privilege of being there.
- c In which paragraph is she...
 - 1. giving personal feelings and comments?
 - 2. mentioning the preparations?
 - 3. telling the things during festival?
 - **4.** giving the name, place, date of the festival?



9 WRITING

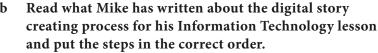
Write about a festival from your country. Divide your writing into paragraphs similar to the ones in Exercise 8c.

READING & WRITING



1 **READING**

- Answer the following questions.
 - 1. Do you like reading stories?
 - 2. What kind of stories do you like reading?
 - 3. Do you prefer printed books or e-books?
 - **4.** Have you ever read a digital story?
 - 5. Do you know how to create a digital story?



a. Record the script
b. Come up with an idea
c. Put it all together
d. Write the script
e. Share
f. Gather/ create images, audios, or videos

Creating a digital story is not a difficult process as it is thought. If you have a story to tell, you can do it in a few easy steps.

- 1 If you want to write a story, you should have a story first. It can be anything you want. You can tell the story of your family, best friend, favourite sportsperson, or even the story of your pet. The characters might be fictional or real.
- Write a draft of your story and ask some people to read it and get feedback.
- When your script is ready, your next step will be to record your story. You need a quiet place for this. It is better to have a good microphone, too.
- 4 Selecting and editing the images is the third step. You can take your images from various sources. You can take photos with a digital camera or find on the Internet. Make a folder and put your images into it. It is a good idea to put your pictures in order according to your story.
- Use a video editing program to combine the sound and the images. Bring your audio clips in order. It is done by placing the cursor on the timeline where you want the audio to be placed. Then, bring the images as the same way; place them on the timeline on the video track.
- 6 Insert background music, titles, and effects. If you want to publish this digital story on the Internet, you should be careful about commercial things because of the copyrights.

Your digital story is ready to be shared in 6 easy steps.



SPEAKING 🖼

- Imagine that you are preparing a digital story on food and drinks. Talk about the process of it.
- Share your thoughts, ideas and/or experiences about creating a digital story with your friends.
- Work in pairs to talk about your favourite story from your childhood. Ask and answer;
 - Which one was your favourite?
 - What is it about?
 - Why was it your favourite?
 - Which character in the story had an impact on you?
 - What conclusions did you draw from the story?

Cinderella was my favourite childhood story. It was about a bad stepmother and stepsisters. Cinderella was so patient and kind that a miracle happened. I've always believed in being good and patient. That's why it is my favourite.

3 WRITING

a Describe the setting in the following picture as in the example. Mention the place, time of the day, weather, people etc.



e.g. It was a cool Sunday afternoon. I was enjoying the rain with a cup of coffee.



Adjectives and adverbs are used to make a story more dramatic. Underline the descriptive adjectives; circle the adverbs of manner in the text below. Tell which nouns/ verbs they describe.

As I got into the house, everybody started to shout loudly. "Happy birthday Tim! We love you so much," they cried in choir. I was in a deep shock. I didn't think that they would organize a surprise party for me. The room was beautifully decorated, and a delicious big cake was on the table. I was as happy as a clam. They gave me nice presents. We sang and danced happily all day long.

c	"Similes" make a story more interesting.
	Complete the sentences with the similes
	from the box.

- live like a king as busy as a bee
- ◆ fly like an arrow ◆ as strong as a bull

1. He can	carry it ea	asily. He is ₋	
	7	7	

- 2. I don't have much time. I am _____
- **3.** Now that he won the lottery, he can _____
- **4.** We should do what we like. Time _____
- Find the simile in the text in Exercise b.

e	Complete the similes with a noun from the
	box below.

- 1. As wise as _____ 3. As sharp as _____
- **2.** As white as ______ **4.** As gentle as _____
- ◆ a knife ◆ a lamb ◆ snow ◆ an owl

Put quotation marks ("") to the people's direct sentences.

- **1.** Marry rushed into the room and Stop doing that! she shouted.
- 2. Who is the man waiting outside? asked Jim.
- **3.** Thank you, he said sincerely.
- **4.** Wake up honey. It is time to leave, whispered my mother

g	Work in groups of four and brainstorm ideas
	to find a topic for a digital story. Write a story
	considering the clues above. Do the other
	necessary steps at home and prepare a digital
	story. Then, share it with your friends in
	alana





UNIT 18

DIGITAL ERA

18A Gadgets of the Era18B Social Media18C Media in Digital Era

In this unit you will be...

- stating personal opinions and preferences in everyday conversations.
- talking about netiquette and Internet security.
- talking about current events.
- talking about technological items.
- stating causes and effects.
- giving detailed information.

LEAD IN

Answer the following questions.

- 1. What comes to your mind when you see the picture on the right?
- 2. Do you use gadgets a lot in your daily life? Can you give some examples?
- 3. What do you think the term "Digital Era" means?



LISTENING & SPEAKING

VOCABULARY

Look at these photos and write the names of these electronic devices in the blanks.



- How often do you use these devices in your daily life? Is there a device that you never use in the pictures?
- Match the two halves of the sentences to identify the devices and their functions.

 - 2. An sat-nav is a device ___
 - 3. A remote control is a device ___
 - **4.** A modem is a device ___
 - **5.** A mouse is a device ___
 - **1.** An external hard disk is a device ___ **a.** which is used for moving the cursor.
 - **b.** which is used for connecting PC to the Internet.
 - c. which is used for operating a device wirelessly from a short distance.
 - **d.** which is used for finding the way.
 - e. which is used for keeping and storing files.

- 2 What can you do with the devices given in the table below? Write down their functions and share it with your friends. Use the phrases given below in your descriptions.
 - Store files
- Play computer games
- ◆ Listening to music → Download music files
- Upload photos
- Check e-mails
- ◆ Take pictures
- Watch movies/ series
- Transfer files from one place to another

DEVICE	FUNCTION
1. Tablet	e.g. I use my tablet for listening to music and surfing on the Internet.
2. Smartphone	
3. Digital camera	
4. 3D TV	
5. Digital MP3 player	
6. Laptop	
7. Games Console	
8. Flash disk	

3 LISTENING))

Look at the picture and describe what you see in the picture. Do you think this person needs technology in his life?



- Listen to the podcast of a teenager who is talking about why we need technology. Complete the sentences. (Track 1)
 - **1.** I believe we need technology **due to** ____
 - 2. Sandra needs her hearing aid all the time as
 - 3. Stephen Hawking; for example, can give lectures to students by typing his words to a keyboard **because** ____
 - **4.** She can go on her education **since** ____
 - 5. We save a lot of time when we use them, so
 - **6.** In school, visual materials are very effective in learning; thus, _
 - 7. Farmers also use technological devices in agriculture owing to _
 - 8. There is an increase in population. As a result,

CHECK THIS OUT!

Expressing Cause

- She decided to move from his hometown because / as / since she couldn't find a job there.
- The flight company cancelled our flight because of/ due to/ owing to weather conditions.

Expressing Effect

- I was feeling tired yesterday, so/; thus, I postponed the meeting.
- Experts have been warning people against the dangers of inorganic food recently. As a result, there is a huge demand for organic food.

SPEAKING 🖼

Are you for or against technology? Do you think we need technology? Why, why not? Explain your reasons using the expressions in bold in Exercise 3b.

5 EVERYDAY ENGLISH

a Look at the photo of two friends and guess what they are talking about.



b Listen to the dialogue of two friends about their preferences in using technological tools and fill in the blanks with the correct words.

(Track 2)

Jim: I am planning to buy a new tablet so the	ıa
I can save my documents easily.	

Katie: I ¹____using a tablet for my documents. ²___ use a PC than a tablet. I believe it is more practical.

Jim: Oh, this is not my cup of tea. 3_

use a tablet for sure because I just want to carry my documents easily everywhere I go. You know I stay in dormitory and I have to carry my stuff at the weekends. Also in my room, there is no table. In my opinion, using a PC is not very comfortable on a bed.

Katie: Oh, I see. So, you can buy a smart phone instead. It will be very handy then.

Jim: I have a smart phone, but it is not very useful for documents. I generally do not prefer mobile phones ⁴______ as the screen is too small to view them.

Katie: Yes, I think buying a tablet is the best option then.

Jim: Yes, it is. So, I am planning to go shopping tomorrow. ⁵______ coming with me or staying at home?

Katie: I'd rather ⁶______. I have a lot of homework. I believe it would be better.

Jim: OK then. See you later!

c Listen again and underline the expressions in the dialogue which state personal opinions.

REMEMBER THIS!

Talking about preferences

- I prefer a mobile phone to/over a tablet.
- I prefer using digital mp3 player.
- I'd prefer to watch a movie at home.
- I'd rather play computer games.

Asking for preferences

- Do you prefer buying a tablet or a PC?
- Would you rather use a mouse or a touchpad?
- Which do you like better, TV or PC?
- We can watch a movie or a TV series.
 What do you say?

6 SPEAKING 🖼

Work in pairs. Ask preference questions about electronic devices as in the example below. State your personal opinions.

A: Do you prefer using a PC or a tablet while doing your homework?

B: Certainly I prefer computers over tablets because I can only work with a big screen.



TODAY'S IDIOM

not one's cup of tea: not one's choice or preference.

e.g. Watching TV is not my cup of tea.

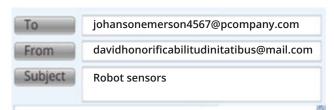


READING & WRITING



1 **READING**

- Read David's e-mail below and answer the questions.
 - 1. Is it a formal or informal e-mail?
 - 2. What is the e-mail about?



Dear Sir/ Madame,

I am writing to get detailed information about robot sensors which I saw on your website. We are designing a robot for an international science competition as the members of our school's science club. We, my teammates and I, need to buy a robot sensor to complete our project. We saw a wide range of robot sensors on the website of your company, but there was no information regarding the prices of the products. Moreover, we could not find detailed information about the qualities of the sensors. Finally, the delivery dates of the products were not stated on the website. I am enclosing you the list of products that we are planning to buy. Could you please send us a product information form which covers accurate information about their prices, qualities, and delivery dates? We have to finalize our project in two months so we would be glad if you could send it as soon as possible.

We are looking forward to hearing from you soon.

Regards.

David Honorificabilitudinitatibus +9067836254416

Answer the questions about the e-mail.

- 1. Why do David and his teammates need to buy a sensor?
- 2. What information do David and his teammates need about the sensors?
- 3. What does David want the company to do?
- 4. When do David's team have to finalize the project?
- 5. David has got a strange surname. Do you think it is a meaningful word in English?

CHECK THIS OUT!

How to write a formal e-mail in English?

- 1. After writing the address of the recipient, write a clear reason for your e-mail in the subject box.
- 2. If you know the name of the recipient, use dear and the surname of the person. If you don't know the name you can start with Dear Sir/ Madame.
- 3. In your e-mail, do not use contractions such as "I'm, he'll".
- 4. Do not use smileys and abbreviations.
- 5. Use a formal tone in your writing. Get to the point of your letter directly.
- 6. Finish with expressions such as regards, yours faithfully, best wishes. Write your full name, title, and your contact information.

WRITING

Imagine you want to buy an electronic				
device from an online electronic shop. Writ				
a formal e-mail to the shop using the rules				
given in the CHECK THIS OUT! box.				
	-			
	_			
	_			

3 READING

- a What kind of technological innovations are you interested in? Discuss in which areas technological items are developed and used.
- b Read the text and find out in which areas the technological items are developed.



Without any doubt, our age is the age of technology. Today's technology is making our lives much easier in most areas from food to cars. In other words, you can find technological advances in a wide range of areas such as education, defense industry, food industry, communication systems, and so on. Technologic improvements have no limits and they are getting more advanced day by day. Sometimes, it is not easy for us to comprehend the dynamic nature of technological improvements.

To illustrate, it is not easy to imagine a car without a driver. However, a well known company has been working on selfdriving cars for 6 years. The company designed it 6 years ago and since then they have been doing some test drives. The name of this new car type is "Waymo" as it is the abbreviated form of "a new way forward in mobility". Certainly, the aim of these cars is to decrease the traffic accidents resulting from human error and also to make the lives of disabled and elderly people easier. In these cars, there won't be any drivers who would run a red light, cut someone off, tailgate, or speed up. Thus, the risk of accidents will be minimized. Until now, it has been driven over 2 million miles on public roads and had only 11 accidents. As you can guess, "Waymo" was not responsible for any of the accidents; the reason was human error again. We are familiar with robots as people have been designing them for a long time. In our age, in some fields and in some countries, robots are used instead of people. For example, they can be used as farmers, pharmacists, and even soldiers! It is estimated that by 2030, one fourth of all USA

combat soldiers will be replaced by robots. Except from military robots, more and more companies all over the world prefer robots to human beings as they are more economical and productive.



Do you have any idea about "virtual reality"? This term is used for computer technology that makes a person feel like they are not in the real world, but somewhere else by using special glasses. For producing those images, sounds, and other sensations; special kind of software is used so that a user can feel as if she or he were in another world. There is also "augmented reality" which makes changes in the real place a person is in. These glasses are not only used in game industry, but also in defense and medical industry.

These technologies may sound like a science fiction film. However, not long ago, people were also shocked by the idea of cell phones. They believed that it was impossible to carry our phones with us. What is more, they were so expensive in the first place that people couldn't afford to buy them. In a short time, using cell-phones became so widespread that it became nearly impossible to see someone who doesn't use cell phones nowadays.



c Read the text again and answer the following questions.

- **1.** What is the aim of the company working on selfdriving cars?
 - a. To decrease accidents
 - **b.** To produce cheaper cars
 - c. To design economical cars
 - **d.** To protect the environment
- 2. Which sentence is not true?
 - a. Today's robots can have occupations.
 - **b.** They can be more hardworking than humans.
 - **c.** By 2030, half of US army will be robots.
 - **d.** Employing robots is more economical.
- **3.** What is the difference between "virtual reality" and "augmented reality"?
 - a. They have no difference at all.
 - **b.** Virtual reality is more real.
 - **c.** Augmented reality has more features than the other.
 - **d.** In virtual reality, you change your place but augmented reality makes changes in your place.
- **4.** What is the main purpose of the writer in writing this text?
 - **a.** To talk about the disadvantages of technology
 - **b.** To describe the preferences of people about gadgets
 - **c.** To shortly present some examples of modern technology
 - **d.** To prove how useful technology is
- 5. What can be the best title for this essay?
 - a. Virtual Reality vs Augmented Reality
 - **b.** Robots in Daily Life
 - c. Driverless Cars
 - d. Technologic Improvements of Our Age

Write what the underlined words in the passage refer to.

1. they (paragraph 1)	
2. It (paragraph 2)	
3. them (paragraph 3)	
4. they (paragraph 3)	
5. them (paragraph 5)	

Look at the text and find in which fields these technological devices are used.

Self driving cars	
Virtual reality glasses	
Robots	

f Fill in the blanks with the highlighted words in the text. Use the correct form of the verb.

1	giving up,	you should work
harder		•

2.	There are many illnesses that cause depression
	, thyroid disorder is one of
	them

- **3.** Yes officer, I was ______ by this driver on that road. He is guilty, not me!
- **4.** Hey folks! This is an easy question. It is not difficult to _______ its solution.
- **5.** Many countries prefer to use robots in _____ industry.



LEAD IN

Answer the following questions.

- 1. What is "social media"? Do you use social media and if your answer is yes, how often do you use it?
- 2. Do you think using social media is useful or not? Why?

LISTENING & SPEAKING



VOCABULARY

- Find the definitions of the words from the box below.
 - ◆ ban◆ upload
- ◆ addiction◆ post
- tag password • hashtag
- 1. a strong need or wish to spend as much time as possible doing a particular activity.
- 2. to send documents or programs from your computer to a larger system using the Internet.
- 3. to label, identify, or recognize with a tag or other identifier.
- 4. a secret word that allows you to do something, such as use your computer.
- 5. officially prevent someone from doing something. . _____
- **6.** used on social media for describing the general subject of a Tweet or other post.
- 7. piece of writing that is published on the Internet.



- Fill in the blanks with the correct words.
 - **1.** Don't __ _ me in this photo please. I really look terrible.
 - **2.** I had to _____ a lot of people from my social media account because of their rude language.
 - 3. Today the ____ __ of our program is #lifeisgood.
 - 4. I don't believe it! I can't remember the _____ of my e-mail address!
 - 5. My father has an _____ coffee. He insists that he has a headache when he doesn't drink it.
 - **6.** I hate those people who ___ the photos of all moments in their life.
 - 7. Before you ______ a message on your account, read it carefully.

2 LISTENING (Track 3)))

Listen to three teenagers talking about social media and find out if they are for or against social media.

	FOR	AGAINST
MARK		
DERYA		
HELEN		

- Whose ideas are they? Write Mark (M), Derya (D) or Helen (H) next to the statements.
 - 1. It is not safe to use social media. ____
 - 2. By means of social media, we keep in touch with our friends. ____
 - **3.** Smileys are not sincere for the expression of feelings. ____
 - **4.** You can easily express your own opinions about everything by means of social media. ____
 - **5.** Face to face communication is much better than communication via social media. ___
- What do you think about their answers? Whose ideas do you agree with the most? Why?

ban someone from my social media ccount when o me, tagging someone on a social media ccount without her permission is assword is used in
ccount without her permission is
ocial media addiction is harmful in many
upload photos to my social media

4 SPEAKING 🖼

Discuss the answers to the following questions with your friends.

As a social media user;

7. Today our hashtag is _____

- **1.** Have you ever unfriended someone? If yes, what was the reason?
- 2. Do you update your status regularly?
- **3.** Do you have a friend who over shares information in his/ her social media accounts? What does she/ he share?
- **4.** How often do you check your accounts?
- **5.** Are you an active user or a silent one? In other words, do you post messages a lot or just follow the people on your account?
- **6.** How do you feel when you post a message but nobody likes it?
- 7. When you notice that a friend of yours unfollows you, will you get angry?

If you are not a social media user;

- 1. Why don't you use social media?
- 2. Did you use to have a social media account?
- **3.** Is there anyone in your family who uses social media a lot?



5 PRONUNCIATION))

a Listen and repeat the words below. Pay attention to the difference between the pronunciation of these words. (Track 4)

/ə/		
1. vegetable	/vedʒtəbl/	
2. daughter	/dɒtər/	
3. cover	/kʌvər/	
4. corner	/kɔːrnər/	
/3:/		
1. learn	/l3:rn/	
2. furniture	/fɜːrnɪtʃər/	
3. early	/ɜːrli/	

b Listen and tick the sounds you hear. (Track 5)

	/ə/	/3:/
1. color		
2. breakfast		
3. circle		
4. purse		
5. melon		
6 world		

READING & WRITING



READING 1

Look at the drawing below and describe what you see in.

Read the essay and find out what it is about. b

In the last decade, there has been a lot of controversy about social media. Some experts believe that it has more negative effects than positive ones while the others claim the opposite. Today in our article, we are going to talk about the pros and cons of using social media.

Let's start with the dark side. Using social media recklessly can be more dangerous than we can imagine. Firstly, sharing too much information without privacy regulations can pose serious threats. Everybody can get your personal information, photos and even learn where you are when they check out your profile. What's worse is that your name can be used in an illegal way with the information taken from your account. Secondly, many people change their way of communication in digital platforms. Rather than real face to face social interactions, people can prefer to have interactions via social media which

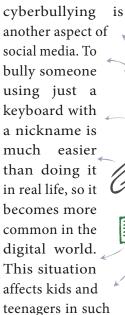
but not the least; it is inevitable for everyone to have a social media account. Even children can be insistent on using social media. Although parents try to ban their social media usage, this cannot be always possible. Social media poses lots of threats to children who can be exposed to inappropriate pictures, news and videos.

The other side of the coin is not that dark. According to a study about the relationship between social media and self - esteem conducted by Gonzales and Hancock in 2011 indicates that "viewing one's own profile on social media enhances self-esteem rather than diminishing it." This is surprising because it is generally thought that using social media lowers self-esteem because people keep on comparing themselves with other people which can make them discouraged. The other good aspect of social media is that it gives the chance of becoming an "online celebrity". A video of an ordinary person can be watched by millions of people and this person can turn into a celebrity. It also has the power to unite people all at once and create social awareness. The rate of information spreading is faster than ever. It enables people to be informed about what is happening in the world. Using social media in education

> also creates opportunities for teachers as they can easily communicate with their

> > students even out of school environment.

To sum up, it is clear that this controversy will continue for a long time as you can never be sure whether social media has more cons or pros. However, we can conclude that when the usage of social media has limitatitons, it seems that we are more likely to



creates "a false sense of

connection". Moreover,



Answer the questions according to the text. 1. What are the possible problems of a social media user regarding privacy?	d Fill in the blanks with the highlighted words in the text. Use the correct forms of the words if necessary.
	 Wearing jeans in such a formal occasion will be
	will be You should prefer more formal clothes.
2. How many negative sides are mentioned in	formal ciotnes.
the second passage of the text?	2. It seems that the
	date will not be solved.
3. What does the writer try to express with the statement "false sense of connection" in Paragraph 2? 4. According to the research done by Gonzales and Hancock in 2011, how do social media affect self-esteem?	3. Using credit card can be dangerous
	for your budget.
	4. I really appreciate his way of teaching. At the end of the lesson, he
	been learned in an effective way.
	5. The EU project which was carried out in school
	a lot of students to visit several countries.
5. Why is social media advantageous for teachers?	e Read the text again and prepare a list of pros and cons of social media according to the text. Share it with your friends.
·	PROS : CONS
6. Find a suitable title for the text.	

c. Still Unanswered

c

- **7.** Which of the following sentence is true about the text?
 - **a.** The writer believes that social media is totally harmful.
 - **b.** The writer believes that if social media is used in a limited way, it can be useful.
 - **c.** The writer believes that using social media has a lot more disadvantages than advantages so he is against using it.



- b Tick the comments which are not appropriate when netiquette rules are considered. Explain the reasons.
- 1. Hey, your video is disgusting. How can you choose such a nonsense topic! _
- 2. FOR ME, IT IS OKAY. ___
- As in all areas of life, the Internet world has some 3. Thank you for sharing such a good video. ____
- rules which people are expected to obey. Today, in my podcast, I will introduce you the basic principles of netiquette which means "the rules of the Internet" in short. As all etiquettes, netiquette is also important because not obeying netiquette can result in misunderstandings.

READING

Read the passage

Internet security.

about "netiquette" and

- First, watch your language. Always use good grammar and spelling. By the way, do not use capital letters because CAPITAL LETTERS MEAN SHOUTING in the world of the Internet.
- Be kind and polite. People can sue you because of your behaviors on the Internet. Don't forget that the Internet is a part of real world in our age.
- Be a fast answerer. Do not postpone replying your messages.
- Don't forget to write titles to your mails. Don't attach very large files without the permission of the receiver. Cite your resources otherwise it is a crime which is called plagiarism.
- Keep in mind that the Internet is not always secure. Cyber crimes are very common in our age so it is very crucial to be protected from fraud and to act safe on the Internet. To use the Internet in a secure way, follow the steps below.
 - Use capital letters and numbers to have a strong password. Do not use passwords that can be easily guessed.
 - Don't share your passwords with anybody.
 - Use Internet security programs. Scan your flash disk first before it is connected to a device.
 - Don't share photos of your friends without safety regulations.

- **4.** Oh I hv never herd that befor. _ **5.** I got a new account. My password is my birthday! ____ **6.** I should upload this funny picture of him immediately and share it in all my accounts! ____ 7. There is no need for a title for this mail. ___
- 8. I read this sentence in a book and I liked it: "And now that you don't have to be perfect, you can be good." ____
- Look at the terms below and use them in your own sentences.
 - 1. PLAGIARISM

2. CYBER CRIME

- d Write (W) for weak and (S) for strong next to the passwords below.
 - 1. 12345 ____
 - 2. Xy67Y*h+ ___
 - 3. 25072004 ____
 - 4. happy ____
 - 5. MstF1350

SPEAKING 😽

Answer the following questions.

- What is "netiquette" and what is the importance of it? Share your ideas with your friends.
- How do we use the Internet safely? Give your opinions about Internet security. Why is it important?

4 WRITING

a Look at the expressions below and decide which expression is formal, which one is informal and which one is used for both.

Expression	Formal/ Informal/ both
1. Dear	
2. Hi	
3. Best wishes	
4. Regards	
5. Take care	
6. See you soon	
7. How is it going?	
8. I would like to say	
9. How much is it?	
10. Could you tell me how much it costs?	
11. Bfn/ see u	

b	Look at the sentences below and find out
	which rule is a must in formal e-mails (F)
	and which one is for informal (IF) and which
	one is for both (B).

1.	In the	e-mail,	the	title	part	should	be
	writte	n					

- **2.** One can use abbreviations, contractions and smileys. ___
- **3.** Generally, the mail starts with "Dear" to address the receiver.
- **4.** The common expressions for ending are "many hugs, lots of love, bye for now". ____



5. Those kinds of
e-mails are generally
used in the events
related to work.

- **6.** The language of those e-mails is similar to spoken language.
- 7. Don't use the name of the receiver, use the surname.

CHECK THIS OUT!

TEXT LANGUAGE

U	You
Pls	Please
Bfn	Bye for now
@	at
GR8!	Great!
gonna	Going to
wanna	Want to
Sk%l	School
Lol	Laughing out loud
	Lots of love

c Read the e-mail below and choose the correct options to fill in the blanks.

1	Jessica!

What's ²______? If you ask me, everything is perfect! As you know, I was trying to complete my courses in high school for a while. And, finally I managed ³_____ graduate. What about you? What r u doing? Did u complete your courses? By the way, I have some plans for the weekend. I'll call you ⁴_____ for the details.

Take 5_____.

Lots of 6 !

Susan

1.	a. Dear	b. Hi!	c. Mr	d. Mrs
2.	a. up	b. in	c. at	d. on
3.	a. that	b. be	c. too	d. 2
4.	a. now	b. again	c. 18r	d. that
5.	a. ahead	b. up	c. above	d. care
6.	a. wishes	b. regard	c. love	d. thx

- d Is the mail in part c is formal or informal? Explain why.
- e Write an e-mail to one of your friends whom you haven't seen for a while. Give the recent news of your life and use the abbreviations in CHECK THIS OUT! box.

MEDIA IN DIGITAL ERA

LEAD IN

How do you get the news in your daily life? Choose one of the options below and give more information about your preference.

- **a.** I generally listen to the news on TV or on the radio.
- **b.** I learn the news from social media.
- **c.** I listen to the podcasts.

LISTENING & SPEAKING



1 SPEAKING 🖼

Answer the questions below.

- a. Do you know any podcast applications?
- b. Do you also have a website or blog on which you share your podcasts?



2 LISTENING (Track 6)))

Listen to the podcast about the recent news. Fill in the blanks with the correct information.

	What happened?	When did it happen?	Where did it happen?
1.			
2.			
3.			



- Listen again. Fill in the blanks with "which/ where" and "who".
 - 1. A Russian military plane ___ was carrying 92 people crashed into the black sea early in the morning.
 - **2.** Chile is a country _____ a lot of severe earthquakes happened in recent years.
 - 3. He was a popular singer and songwriter _____ died at the age of 53.

WHAT IS PODCAST?

It is a way of sharing information as an audio file. People can share and download podcasts. Generally, you should subscribe to the website first in order to download them. They can be about news, **PODCAST** sketches, stories, or

CHECK THIS OUT!

- Mark Zuckerberg is an American computer programmer who founded one of the most famous social networking website.
- This is a wonderful shop where/ in which you can find various sizes of cables.
- Vlog is a blog which contains video content.
- + 2000 is the year when vlogging started.
- Did you meet the boy in music class whose video had 2 million views?

Work with a partner and make a full sentence as in the example below.

1. Find the name of the journalist who invented the term podcast.

Ben Hammersley is the journalist who invented the term *podcast*.

2. Find the name of the inventor wh	0
invented the digital camera.	

3.	Find	the year	when	the	first	electro	nic
T	V was	invented	d.				

4. Find the country which	has	the	highest
number of Internet users.			

5. Find a famous film which is about technology and the use of social media.	
	5. Find a famous film which is about technology and the use of social media

READING

Read the passage and underline the new words emerged in the digital era according to the text. The first one is given in bold as an example.

You can hear many new words when you listen to the news. Does a language change? Of course, it does because it is like a living organism. The digital era has added many words to English language or it added some meanings to the words which have already existed.

Let's take a look at the new words of English language. Recently, people got used to the idea of blogging, but now in 2017 a new word vlog is added to the dictionaries. Podcast is also a new word and it means to make audio files about a specific topic and share it with other people. Unfriend (or defriend) is another example. If you defriend someone, it means that you remove him/ her from your friend list in social media. Cybercrime is also a new term. It means the crimes committed on the Internet such as stealing personal information or infecting a computer with a virus.

Moreover, new meanings are added to some already existing words. For example, in the past when someone said cookie, just a small cake came

COOKIC also refers	to a
computer file. Too	lay CONNECTION
when someone	INFOR
says avatar,	MESS
nobody thinks	CONNE
of its original	TECHI
meaning, but	CONNECTION WORLD WORLD
an image of	N
computer games ı	ised to come to
mind. "Trojan ho	rse" is no longe
,	U

to mind. But today cookie also refers to a MESSAGE INFORMATION COMMUNICATION TION OLOG OMMUNICATION the wooden, tricky horse of Greeks in Troy, but a virus.

Match the words stated in the passage with the definitions given below.

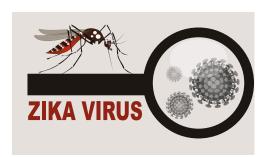
Ι.	is a website where a person
	writes regularly about a topic.
2.	is a website where a person uploads videos regularly.
3.	is a word which means doing illegal things using the Internet.
4.	is an image which represents the user especially in video games and social media.

READING & WRITING



READING 1

Read the texts about the current news of the world. Fill in the blanks with "who, which, when" and "where".



1. Zika Virus Alarm in the Usa

Zika virus ¹______got its name from Uganda's Zika Forest is a dangerous virus. It is a virus transmitted by a special kind of female mosquitoes called Aedes. 1947 was the year ²_____the virus was first discovered. Since 2014, it has been seen in Asian and African countries ³_____a lot of people suffered from the disease. This year the epidemic spread to Mexico and the USA. There has been no treatment or vaccine for the virus until now. The World Health Organization (WHO) is working on the vaccine, but they announced that it can take years to complete the study. It is difficult to notice the illness because the symptoms are a mild fever, skin rash, fatigue, and muscle pain. The virus is extremely dangerous for pregnant women as it causes babies to be born with "microcephaly". It is an illness ⁴_____ causes severe brain damage on babies. Babies who have this illness have smaller heads than the healthy babies. Brazil is the country ⁵_____ there are many people with this disease. It is estimated that 1 in 150 babies were born with the illness in the country last year. What's worse, the virus spreads out very quickly and the long term consequences of the virus are not clear.



2. A Large Seal Smashes the Car in Tasmania

Yesterday, the residents ⁶_____live in Tasmania got shocked when they see a large seal which was wandering in the streets. After wandering around the street for a while, it climbed to a car and smashed the wind screen of it. The distance between its natural habitat and the city is about 50 kilometers, so it is estimated that it used the river 7_____ is located between the suburb and its habitat for its transfer to the city center. The crazy seal is named Mr Lou-Seal and in a few hours it was tranquilized and released to its habitat after a check-up. It is important to note that these fur seals can grow up to 2 meters long and can weigh more than 360 kilos!



3. An Amazing Discovery From High School Students in Turkey

Two high school students from Turkey, Doruk Tatlıdil and Faruk Ekin, discovered an amazing substance for the treatment of cancer. They found out a medicine _ they produce from the skin of insects and then they injected it into one of the strongest medicine which is used in chemotherapy. As it is known the medicines 9_____ are used in chemotherapy destroy not only cancer cells but also healthy cells as well. By means of this medicine, the healthy cells were not harmed while cancer cells got destroyed. With their studies, they got a local award from TÜBITAK (the Scientific and Technological Research Council of Turkey) in March, 2016 and they are going on with the experimental studies. It is clear that it is going to be a breakthrough in medicine.

b	Look at the highlighted words in the texts and match the words with their definitons given
	below.

5415 W	
1. An area on the edge of a large town/ city	
2. Thanks to	
3. An important discovery/ event that is for the benefit of humanity	
4. To go/ walk aimlessly	
5. Relating to scientific tests	
6. A substance which provides immunity against many diseases	
Complete the sentences with your own words.	
1. Zika is a virus which	
2. The habites who have gilte views	

3. A large seal is an animal which _____

4. Doruk Tatlıdil and Faruk Ekin found a medicine which ______.

d Read the texts again and find out the answers of the following questions.

Which article	
talks about an epidemic disease?	Article 1
gives information about the treatment of a disease?	
talks about a funny but real event?	
explains the symptoms of a disease?	
gives good news?	

2 SPEAKING 🖼

5. March 2016 is the month when ___

c

Do you know what happened in the world this week? Prepare a list of important news of the world. Don't forget to add some good news to your list. Then share them with your friends in class.

v _			
<u></u>			
_ _			
Ø _			

3 WRITING

Prepare a news report for the school magazine. Give detailed information about the people, places and events. In your task, don't forget to do these:

- Give detailed information about the people, the place and the events. Try to use clauses with "which/ who/ when/ where" in your sentences.
- Explain how those events in your school affect the people in your school.
- Write not only about the students but also about your teachers and school staff.

4 EVERYDAY ENGLISH

- a Look at the picture below and describe the picture by answering the questions.
 - 1. Do you think they are friends? Why?
 - 2. How are they feeling now?
 - 3. What happened?



b Read and listen to the dialogue and answer the questions in part 4a again. (Track 7))

Nicole: Did you hear what happened to Jake today?

Jasmin: No, I didn't. I hope it isn't

something bad. What's up?

Nicole: Well, that is not good news

unfortunately. He had an accident with his motorbike a few hours ago.

Jasmin: Hey are you kidding me? I saw him in the morning. He was in school.

Nicole: I swear it's true. He left the school early today and he had an accident on his way home.

Jasmin: So, what happened? Did you call him or his family? How is he now? Oh, That is too bad!

Nicole: Hey, Nicole please calm down. We could reach neither him nor his family, but I'm sure he is OK.

Jasmin: Oh, let's try again.

c Read the expressions below and decide whether we use them for giving "bad news", "good news" or "both".

Expression	Good/ Bad/ Both
1. Great news for you!	
2. You won't believe it, but	
3. Did you hear the news?	
4. I regret to inform you that	
5. I am sorry, but	
6. I am really pleased to tell you	
7. I'm afraid to tell you, but	
8. I am really sorry to hear that.	

CHECK THIS OUT!

Asking about news

- What happened?
- What's up?
- What is happening?
- What is the story?

Reacting to news

Positive	Negative
• Wow!	• How terrible!
• That's great news!	That's shocking!
How wonderful!	That's too bad!
That's excellent!	◆ Oh, no!
• Well done!	• Are you kidding
Congrats!	me?
• Good for you!	•I am so sorry to hear that

- d Listen to the second part of the dialogue and answer the questions below. (Track 8)))
 - **1.** What happened after the accident?
 - 2. Is Jake feeling well now?
 - **3.** Is he going to come to school next week?
- e Listen again and note down which expressions Jasmin used while she was reacting to the news. Look at the CHECK THIS OUT! box again.

5 SPEAKING

Act out the situations given below.

Situation 1	
You are a teacher and one of your students won the essay contest in your school. Give good news to him/ her.	React to the good news.
Situation 2	
Your family did not let you join the school trip which you were planning to go with your best friend. Call your friend and give her/ him the bad news.	React to the bad news.
Situation 3	
You learned that you got the best mark in the Math exam. Call your friend and give her the news.	React to the good news.
Situation 4	
You learned that one of your favorite teachers would give up working in your school next term. Give the bad news to your classmate.	React to the bad news.

PROJECT TIME



Look at the girl on the photo. What is she doing?

Listen and choose the correct option. (Track 9)

- 1. What is her vlog about?
 - a. health
 - **b.** make-up
 - c. travelling
 - **d.** cooking
- 2. How many followers has she got?
 - a. 35.000
 - **b.** 350.000
 - c. 3500
 - **d.** 350
- 3. How many videos has she uploaded to her channel?
 - a. 53
 - **b.** 67
 - **c.** 16
 - **d.** 60
- 4. What is her biggest dream?
 - **a.** to win the cooking contest.
 - **b.** to have a good job in the future.
 - **c.** to travel all over the world.
 - **d.** to live healthy.
- 5. What did she want from her followers to
 - **a.** to give thumps up.
 - **b.** to share her video.
 - c. to write comments.
 - **d.** to follow her blog.
- Prepare a Vlog to introduce yourself and your culture. You are going to prepare your vlog for native speakers of English, so give detailed information about your culture and your country.







UNIT 19

HEROES AND HEROINES

19A Supernatural Powers19B Patriots of My Land19C You are My Hero

In this unit you will be...

- talking about imaginary situations.
- expressing wishes.
- asking for and giving clarification.
- talking about supernatural powers.
- talking about national, moral, and cultural values.

SUPERNATURAL POWERS

LEAD IN



Answer the following questions.

- 1. Which supernatural power would you like to have and why?
- **2.** Look at the pictures of the animals below. Match their abilities with the pictures.
 - a. flying very fast
- **b.** running so fast
- **c.** seeing in the dark
- d. walking on walls









3. If you had a chance to have a supernatural power, which ability of the animals above would you like to have and why?

LISTENING & SPEAKING



LISTENING))

Listen to Linda, Carol, and İncisu talking about the features and the abilities of superhero(ine)s and decide if the statements below are true (T) or false (F). (Track 1)



- 1. Heroes are strong and brave people. ___
- 2. They love animals. ___
- **3.** Heroes can do things that others can't
- 4. Someone who helps his mother is a hero. ___
- **5.** Heroes work for a better world. ___
- **6.** They have courage to face with difficulties. ___
- 7. Heroes earn a lot of money. ___
- **8.** Heroes have supernatural powers. ___

b Listen to the next part of the conversation. Now they are watching a short cartoon about superhero(ine)s. Tick (\checkmark)the abilities of the hero(ine)s they mention. (Track 2)

1. He can climb up to tall buildings.	
2. She can fly.	
3. He can be invisible.	
4. He can run very fast.	
5. He can throw fire balls from his hands.	
6. She can freeze people.	
-12 cm 12	

2 SPEAKING 🖼

Work in pairs. Who is your hero(ine) in real life? Why? Talk about your hero(ine) to your partner, but don't tell the name of the superhero(ine) to him or her. Let your friend guess who your hero(ine)s.

3 PRONUNCIATION))

a Read the definitions below about word stress b on the two syllable nouns, adjectives, verbs and prepositions. Then, listen and repeat. (Track 3)

WORD STRESS

In most two syllable nouns and adjectives the stress is on the **first** syllable.

- HAPpy
- · RAIny
- · NOTEbook
- · CARtoon

In most two syllable verbs and prepositions the stress is on the second syllable.

- · beTWEEN
- · deCIDE
- · reLAX
- · aMONG

Listen and repeat the following words below. Then, underline the syllables which have stress. (Track 4)

1	2	3
purple	rebel	handsome
4	5	6
present	graceful	select
7	8	9
invite	climate	knowledge
10	11	12
require	arrange	admit
13	14	15
release	center	flower
16	17	18
object	dinner	above
19	20	21
travel	over	abroad

READING & WRITING



DISCUSSION TIME

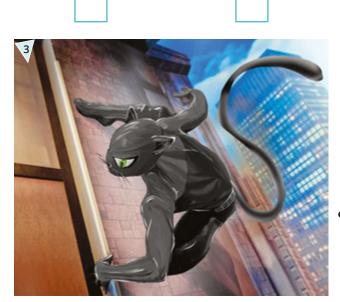
Look at the drawings below. Guess the supernatural powers of these hero(ine)s. Discuss them in class.

2 READING

- Do you know the names of the superhero(ine)s below? Match the names with the pictures.
 - a. Catman
 - **b.** Ironman
- c. Cyborg







- Read the texts about the animation movie characters whose photos you have seen in Exercise 2a. Find out which character is described in each paragraph. Write their names in the blanks.
 - _____ is an engineer, scientist, and a successful businessman. He has a durable, and powerful armoured suit and he tries to protect the world. He first appeared in 1963 and his name is Tony Stark. His company is called "Stark Industries". He can fly and has super human powers.
 - _, whose real name is Victor Stone, is a very clever and intellectual character, first appeared in 1980. His body is replaced by mechanical parts; therefore, he has an internal computer system. This system makes him powerful, fast, and strong. He has numerous functions such as sensors and weapons. He is a very famous fictional superhero who is good at hand to hand combat.
 - _, whose real name is Simon Zepower, is an orphan. He was raised up by his grandmother. He is a real superhero who is very fast and agile. He can see through the walls. He can easily cling to most surfaces and throw a special rope made of steal from his rope. He saves people in need.
- Highlight the words and phrases which are used to define the hero(ine)s in Exercise 2b.

d	Match the words from the text with the definitions.		
	1. cling	a. special metal cloth to protect the body from weapons	
	2. hand to hand combat	b. able to move fast and quick	
	3. armoured suit	c. fight by physical contact without using fire arms and weapons	
	4. agile	d. ability to stay strong for a long time without getting weaker	
	5. durable	e. a child whose parents died	
	6. rope	f. to hold on tightly	
	7. orphan	g. very strong, thick string, made by twisting many thinner strings	
e Answer the following questions about the text. 1. What is Ironman's job?		s about the text.	
2. What does Tony Stark wear? Why?			
	3. Who is like a robot? Why?		
	er system used for?		
5. Who raised up Catman? Why?			
6. Which animation character do you like most? Why?		do you like most? Why?	
_			

CHECK THIS OUT!

We use "If I were ... / If I had ..." to talk about imaginary situations in the present.

- If I were a superhero, I would help other people.
- If I were rich, I would buy a new car.
- If I had superpowers, I could be invisible.
- If I were you, I'd tell the truth.

Be careful;

- If I had time, I would come to your party tonight.
 - (I don't have time so I won't come an imaginary situation, not possible)
- If I have time, I will come to your party.
 - (I may come to your party a possible situation)

3	Read the CHECK THIS OUT! box and fill in
	the blanks with the given verbs in parentheses.

1. If Janet's boyfriend ¹ (not/come)
to see her today, she ² (leave) him.
(He rarely comes to see her.)
2. If I ³ (live) in England for a
year, I ⁴ (learn) English better. (I
live in Ankara.)
3. If you ⁵ (hit) your father's car,
he ⁶ (get) very angry. (Your
father loves his car very much.)
4. If I ⁷ (be) your mother, I
8 (not/ let) you go to that party
this weekend. (I'm not your mother.)

4 PROJECT TIME

Imagine that you are a superhero(ine). What kind of supernatural powers would you have? What kind of suit would you wear? What would you do with these supernatural powers? Describe yourself to your friend so that he/ she can draw your picture as a hero. Then let him/ her tell himself/ herself and you draw him as a hero. Present your hero

TODAY'S PROVERB

"Every cloud has a silver lining."
Be optimistic, even difficult times will lead to better days.

5 LISTENING)

posters in class.

- a Do you like going to the cinema? Which film have you seen last? Did you like it? Why/ Why not?
- b Fill in the missing parts in the dialogue below by using the words in the box. Then, listen and check. (Track 5)

Robert and Ahmet are at the cinema. They are talking about the movie during the intermission.

- happen ◆ break ◆ probably ◆ would ◆ awful
- shoes ◆ bored ◆ cure ◆ could ◆ rescue ◆ help

Ahmet: Do you like the film, Robert? I'm a bit 1_ **Robert:** The scenes are fine, but the main hero is ² . Ahmet: Well, I didn't like him as well. If I were him, I 3____ cure the diseases. What would you do if you were in his 4 ? Robert: Not sure, but 5_____ if I had supernatural powers, such as healing I could 6_____ those sick people. **Ahmet:** Oh! Come on, the ⁷_____ is over. Let's see what will 8_____ in the next part. I wish they 9____ help those sick people and 10____ them.

Robert: Yeah, we'll see. Let's go.

6 Work in pairs. Choose a film which you and your friend have both seen and talk about it. Tell your ideas about the characters, scenes, plot, etc.

7 VOCABULARY

a Match the adjectives with their definitions.

__ 1. inspiring **a.** having or showing courage

__2. caring **b.** having or using imagination to do something new

__ 3. brave c. someone or something that makes you excited

__ 4. courageous **__ d.** being able to wait for a long time without complaining

__ 5. fair e. not talking much about your own abilities

__ 6. patient **f.** having no fear

__ 7. modest g. behaving equal to others

__ 8. creative **__ h.** giving attention and thinking about someone or something

b Find the adjectives that you can use to describe a hero(ine) in the puzzle below.

									•
С	Ο	U	R	A	G	Е	Ο	U	S
R	D	W	Y	Е	C	A	Н	M	T
Е	U	Е	S	R	L	F	A	I	R
A	В	R	A	V	E	A	T	С	Ο
T	С	В	A	A	V	S	Е	A	N
I	P	A	Т	I	E	N	T	R	G
V	С	N	A	D	R	Е	P	I	L
Е	В	A	Ο	W	G	L	Ο	N	M
Z	A	M	A	D	Н	A	Е	G	G
Ι	N	S	P	I	R	I	N	G	S

- ◆ CLEVER ◆ COURAGEOUS
- ◆ FAIR ◆ BRAVE
- ◆ PATIENT ◆ MODEST
- ◆ CREATIVE ◆ CARING
- ◆ INSPIRING ◆ STRONG

8 GAME

Play "Hang Man" with the adjectives above. You can add other adjectives you know as well.

9 WRITING

Write a paragraph between 100 and 150 words describing your imaginary hero(ine). Then, form groups of 4 or 5 with your friends and write a scene with your characters and act it out in class.

LEAD IN



Answer the following questions.

- 1. What do you think is the meaning of patriotism?
 - a. Feeling of love, passion, and devotion to one's country.
 - **b.** Ambition to command the army of a country.
- **2.** Who do you think is a patriot?
 - **a.** Someone who is the richest man of the country.
 - **b.** Someone who has a strong bond with his country.
- **3.** Give examples to patriots from your country.

TODAY'S PROVERB

"The greatest hero is the one who has control over his desires"

You are a real hero if you can control yourself, your wills and ambitions.

LISTENING & SPEAKING



2

Listen to the conversation between Melanie, her friend Sabri, and his grandpa and tick (🗸) the sentences you hear.

- __ 1. I'm not quite clear what you say.
- **__ 2.** Do you get the picture?

LISTENING (Track 6))

- __ 3. Could you say that again?
- __ 4. Can you speak up a bit?
- __ **5.** Could you please repeat that?
- __ **6.** I have a question.
- __ 7. I didn't catch what you said.
- **__ 8.** Could you tell a little more about it?
- __ 9. I don't get what you say.

Listen to the conversation once more and then answer the questions.

- 1. How old is the grandpa?
- 2. What is the topic of Melanie and Sabri's project?
- 3. What did the grandpa do when Atatürk
- **4.** Can the grandpa answer the questions properly? Why? Why not?
- 5. How will Melanie and Sabri get the necessary information for their project?



SPEAKING 🖼

- Look at the picture. Who do you think they are?
- Do you have grandparents? How old are they?
- Have you ever met an old (wo)man who suffers from hearing loss?
- Have you had any trouble while communicating with him or her?

3 READING

- a Read the article that Sabri and Melanie prepared about Atatürk for presentation. Then, choose the sentence which summarizes it best.
 - **1.** Atatürk gained the respect and the admiration of the leaders of the world.
 - **2.** Atatürk gained an award from the politicians of the world.

Atatürk was not only a military leader and the founder of the Turkish Republic, but he was also one of the greatest man of the 20th century. Therefore, his death in 1938 was a loss both for his country and the world. The tears of people from all over the world showed that he inspired all the other nations and gained their admiration as well. His successes received a sincere respect all around the world from many politicians and the leaders of the other countries of his period. Here are some sample quotes below about Atatürk from the world leaders.

Franklin D. Roosevelt, President of the United States of America:

"During a conversation with the Foreign Affairs Minister of the Soviet Union, Litvinov, I asked him who was, according to him, the most valuable and remarkable statesman of Europe. He replied that the most valuable and interesting leader in the world was the President of the Turkish Republic, Mustafa Kemal Atatürk."

"My sorrow is that, it is no longer possible to fulfill my strong wish to meet this great man."

D. Lloyd George, Prime Minister of the United Kingdom:

"We meet genius people very rarely in centuries. It is so unlucky for us that in this century great genius person belongs to the Turkish Nation."

Eleutherios Venizelos, Prime Minister of Greece:

"In the life of a nation it is very seldom that changes to such a radical degree were carried out in such a short period of time. Without a doubt, those who have done these extraordinary activities have earned the attributes of a great man in the complete sense of the world. And because of this, Turkey can be proud of itself."



Jawaharlal Nehru, Prime Minister of India:

"Kemal Atatürk or Kemal Pasha by which name we knew him in those times was my hero during my youth. I was very moved when I read about his great reforms. I was inspired by the efforts made by Atatürk on the course of modernizing Turkey. His dynamism, undauntedness and unawareness of fatigue created a great effect on people. He was one of the builders of the modern age in the orient. I continue to be among his greatest admirers."

Hayato Ikeda, Prime Minister of Japan:

"We feel a great admiration for Atatürk in his efforts towards ensuring the modernization of Turkish society by separating religion and politics from each other and by carrying out the Turkish Language Reforms.

- b Answer the following questions according to the article.
 - **1.** What was the strong wish of the President of the USA?
 - 2. What is rarely found according to the Prime Minister of the United Kingdom?
 - **3.** Why did the Prime Minister of Greece think that Turkey can be proud of itself?
 - **4.** Who was the hero of the Prime Minister of India when he was young? Why?
 - **5.** Why did the Prime Minister of Japan admire Atatürk?
- c Make a search and find more quotes about Atatürk or about another patriot from your history and prepare a poster about him or her.

CHECK THIS OUT!

While communicating we sometimes need to make things clear. We also want to make sure we understand everything we hear. So, we use some clarification expressions.

ASKING FOR CLARIFICATIONS

I beg your pardon?

Sorry, I didn't catch that.

Can you explain more?

Would you mind repeating that?

Sandra: Betty, can you explain more? e.g.

Betty: All I'm saying is, tomorrow is Saturday!

Sandra: I beg your pardon?

Betty: What I mean is, let's do something amusing!

Sandra: OK. Then, let's go to a movie. There are lots of new films I want to see.

LISTENING)

Students taking a history class are at an Art Museum with their teacher. They are looking at the paintings of important people. The museum is very crowded because it is the weekend. Read the conversation below and fill in the missing parts with the clarification expressions.

Ms. Osborne: OK. Class, have you got any questions?

Student 1: Ms. Osborne, shall we visit the patriots' room?

Ms. Osborne: 1_____?

Student 1: Are we visiting the patriots' room?

Ms. Osborne: 2_

Student 1: What I'm trying to ask is if there is a room where the private objects of these heroes are exhibited.

Ms. Osborne: Oh, yes. We'll be there in a minute. Come and follow me.

Student 2: Teacher, when are we having lunch? I'm starving.

Ms. Osborne: 3____

Student 2: I'm hungry Ms. Osborne.

Ms. Osborne: Well, let's have lunch first. We are all tired and hungry. We can go on our

tour later.



GIVING CLARIFICATIONS

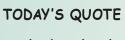
What I 'm trying to say is...

What I'm getting at is...

What I mean is...

All I'm saying is...

Listen to the conversation and check your answers. (Track 7)



"The lion who breaks the enemy's ranks is a minor hero compared to the lion who overcomes himself."

Mevlana Celaleddin-i Rumi



- **1.** What does Mevlana mean with this quote?
- 2. Do you agree with him? Why, why not?



5 SPEAKING 🖼

Choose one of the situations below and prepare a dialogue with your partner. Use the clarification expressions in CHECK THIS OUT! box. Then act it out in class.

- **a.** You are on the phone making a weekend plan with your friend.
- **b.** You are on a tour and talking with your tour guide.
- **c.** You are at a restaurant ordering a meal to the waiter/ waitress.
- **d.** You are at a shopping-mall with your aunt.

6 DISCUSSION TIME

Work in pairs. Categorize the moral, national, and cultural values below. Add one more value to each column and discuss them in class.

- historical artifacts + trustworthiness + customs and traditions
 - faithfulness national artists and scientists honesty

MORAL VALUES

NATIONAL and CULTURAL VALUES

 1	 - 1
	 - /
	- 1
/	

READING & WRITING



READING 1

- Look at the title and the pictures. What do you think the reading texts are about?
- Read the texts and match with the pictures.









Hafız İbrahim Demiralay was born in Isparta in 1883. During the Turkish War of Independence, he established his own army and **defended** Isparta region. He was a teacher and a great warrior. He gave various speeches to the people of Isparta to get them up and fight against the enemy armies. He was a real patriot. He was awarded by the red-green ribbon war of independence medal which was given to very few people who showed real patriotism in this historical war.

Seyit Ali Çabuk was a Turkish soldier in the First World War who fought at the Battle of Gallipoli. He carried the artillery shells weighing 215 kg. and caused a battleship to sink. This was a real heroic act because of the **immense** weight of the shells that he carried.

Nene Hatun is a Turkish National Folk Heroine who was born in Erzurum in 1857. She fought against Russian Forces. She was known as the "Mother of the Third Army". In 1955, she was named as "the mother of all mothers" on the Mother's Day.

\mathbf{D}_{\perp}

Hasan of Uluabat was a Timarli Sipahi in the service of Mehmet the Conqueror (Sultan Mehmet II) during the Siege of Constantinople. On May 29, the last day of the siege, he climbed to the walls of Constantinople and placed the Ottoman Flag and died as a result of arrows stuck in his body.

- Match the headings with the texts.
- __ Die for the flag
- __ Mother of the Third Army
- __ Soldier carrying a miracle
- Protecting land by heart

d	Read the paragraphs about Turkish patriots again and decide if the following statements are true (T) or false (F).	2	SPEAKING SWORK IN PAIRS. Talk about patriotism with your partner. Search about a hero(ine) in
	1. Nene Hatun lived in Eskişehir		your history. Present him or her to class.
	2. She fought against Greek forces	3	WRITING
	3. She was born in the 19 th Century	3	What makes someone a hero(ine)? Write
	4. Hasan of Uluabat was killed by the arrows of the enemy		a composition about 150-200 words. First make an outline for your composition and
	5. Seyit Ali Çabuk was a soldier in the Second World War		take notes. Write 3 paragraphs; first an introduction, then a body, and finally a conclusion.
	6. The shells that Seyit Ali Çabuk carried wasn't heavy		Title to your composition
	7. Hafız İbrahim Demiralay established his own		
	army 8. Many people had the red-green ribbon War of		Introduction Introduce your ideas. Write your description of a hero(ine)
	Independence medal during the war		Main Body What makes someone a hero? Write down the necessary qualifications.
e	Fill in the blanks with the words in bold from the passages.		•
	1. Armies the countries.		•
	2. It's impossible to lift up a(n)		•
	because it is very heavy.		Conclusion Write your final idea as a
	3. Atatürk Grand National Assembly in 1920.	77	summary.
	4. Hurry up! There is an		
	amount of work we should do.		
	5. Mehmet the Conqueror was a great		
	6. The soldiers their enemies in the wars.		
	7. My grandfather was good at shooting		
		ALL	
The same		V.	
1			
			S AS A TOTAL
THE REAL PROPERTY.			381

LEAD IN



Answer the following questions.

- 1. Do you think there are hero(ine)s in daily life?
- 2. Have you ever faced a heroic event recently?
- 3. Discuss the meaning of 'Everyday Hero'?

LISTENING & SPEAKING



SPEAKING 🖼

Look at the picture below. Who do you think they are? Do you think they are married? Why are they dressed like that?

LISTENING) 2

Listen to the poem and explain what it means. (Track 8)

I wish I were a pigeon

Dancing above the clouds,

In order to find you

I wish I could fly

Up and up through the sky.

I know you are my angel now,

Floating above.

I wish I were a hero,

Who could find you

And bring back somehow.



CHECK THIS OUT!

(PRESENT) - I wish she were here.

(She is not here now.)

(FUTURE) - I wish we were going to Spain this summer.

(We won't go to Spain this summer.)

- · I wish I had some free time.
- · I wish you were here.
- · I wish I could fly.
- · I wish I could stop biting my nails.

Read the quote from Bobby Bonilla. Whom does he talk about as the real heroes? Try to explain his quote.

Kids today are looking for idols, but sometimes they don't have to look any farther than their home because those are the people that love you. They are the real heroes.

Bobby Bonilla

Write a poem with your partner in which b you express your wishes about a better world.

SPEAKING 🖼 3

What are your wishes? Make a list and compare your list with your friends. Try to make similar sentences like the ones in the CHECK THIS OUT! box above.

4 LISTENING)

a Look at the photos below. What do you think has happened and what is going on? Talk about each picture.







- b You are going to hear three radio news about some hero(ine)s who helped people during a disaster. Listen and match the headings with the pictures. (Track 9)
 - __ 1. Fire at the kindergarten
 - __ **2.** Suffering for food
 - __ 3. Rescue from the flood

- c Listen to the radio news again and decide if the following statements are true (T) or false (F).
 - **1.** An electrical fault caused the fire in Toronto. __
 - **2.** The fire was reported very late. ___
 - **3.** The roof of the kindergarten was damaged a lot in the fire. __
 - **4.** The teacher opened the front door and saved the children. __
 - **5.** Not enough help was sent to the area after the hurricane in South Korea. __
 - **6.** There was a lady called 'Angel heart' and nobody knew her real name. __
 - 7. After the hurricane, there wasn't much destruction. __
 - **8.** A crew jumped to the water and rescued the driver in Malaysia. __

5 WRITING

Think of such stories about everyday hero(ine)s from your daily life and tell these stories to your partner. Then, work together and write a short paragraph about your hero(ine)s. Use 100-120 words.

	 1
	- 1
	 -1
K	 - {
a	

6 SPEAKING 🖼

a Do you know who Plato is? What do you think he wants to say in his quote below?

A hero is born among a hundred, a wise man is found among a thousand, but an accomplished one might not be found even among a hundred thousand men.

Plato

b Write your own saying about heroism and discuss with your friends.

READING & WRITING



READING

- Talk about the picture on the right. Who do you think this man is? What is he doing?
- Read the title of the article. What do you think the article is about?

MY MORNING WALK HERO

I wake up early in the mornings and go for an hour walk in the park where I meet so many charming people. Every morning, I see the same people and feel their energy. There is a young lady with a small dog. She grins all the time and makes me happy. There is an old man sitting at the same bank every time reading his morning paper. There is that young guy jogging every morning with full concentration and an old lady feeding the birds.



Her aura is **magnificent**. She really makes me feel better.

However, there is a hero, a real hero whom I first didn't understand what he was doing. Every morning, at 7 a.m. he is walking towards me with a garbage bag which is hand-tooled. He is picking up the trash from the street. Now I know his name, his name is Bob Hammond, a technician, working in the local hospital downtown. He goes to work at 10 a.m. every weekday and before going to the hospital, he cleans his neighbourhood. He is an everyday hero keeping our world clean. I really **admire** him.

2 VOCABULARY

Fill in the blanks with the words in bold from the text.

- 1. _____ means made by a human, not by a machine.
- **2.** _____ means interesting and amazing.
- 3. _____ means smile with joy and happiness.
- __ means impressed by someone or something.
- _ means brilliant and gorgeous.

3 Write true (T) or false (F) next to the statements below.

- 1. I meet the same people every morning in the park while I am walking. ___
- **2.** I see a young lady giving food to the birds. ___
- 3. Every morning at 7 a.m. a terrifying man is walking next to me and makes me scared. ___
- 4. Bob Hammond is an everyday hero who cleans the place he lives every morning. __

LISTENING) Listen to the song and complete the missing words. (Track 10) **HERO** There's a hero if you look inside your heart, You don't have to be afraid of what you are. And there's an answer, If you ¹_____ into your soul, And the sorrow that you know will 2_ away. And then a hero comes 3_____, With the strength to carry on. And you 4_____ your fears aside, And you know you can survive. So, when you feel like hope is gone, And then you'll finally see the truth Look 5_____ you and be strong. That a hero lies in you. And you'll finally see the truth, Lord knows dreams are hard to 11_____, That a hero lies in you... But don't let anyone tear them away. It's a long road, when you 6_____ the world ¹²_____ on, and there will be tomorrow, alone; And in time you'll find the way. No one reaches out a hand for you to hold... And then a hero comes 13 _____, You can find love if you 7_____ within With the strength to carry on. yourself. And then you 14_____ your fears aside, And then the emptiness you felt will disappear... And you know you can survive. And then a hero comes 8_____ So, when you feel like hope is gone, Look 15_____ you and be strong. With the strength to carry on. And then you ⁹_____ your fears aside And you'll finally see the truth, And you know you can survive. That a hero lies in you. So, when you feel like hope is gone That a hero lies in you... Look 10_____ you and be strong. That a hero lies in you... Read the song above and match the phrasal verbs from the song with their definitions. ____ 1. reach into a. to go on, continue ____ 2. melt away **b.** to wait for and cling to something ____ **3.** come along c. to set apart, separate ____ 4. carry on **d.** to disappear ____ **5.** cast aside **e.** to get in something ____ **6.** tear away f. to appear ____ 7. hold on g. to seek for something inside, make a deep investigation

c Where is the hero mentioned in the song? What happens if you look inside yourself?

h. to put something away and get rid of it

____ 8. search within

PRONUNCIATION)) 5

Listen and repeat. Then, complete the rules. (Track 11)

Applied to	Rule	Example
Compound nouns	Stress on the 1 part	book shelf
Compound adjectives	Stress on the 2 part	old- fashioned
Compound verbs	Stress on the 3 part	over look

Listen and repeat the following compound words and underline the stress you hear. (Track 12)

e.g. desktop				
1. hard-headed	3. understand	5. well-meant	7. greenhouse	9. stairway
2. red-haired	4. overflow	6. high-heeled	8. whiteboard	10. outperform

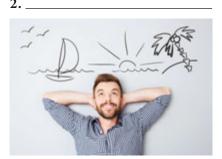
SPEAKING 🖼

Look at the people in the pictures. What are their wishes? Try to guess.



















8.

9.

b	Match	the	phrases	with	the	pictures.
---	-------	-----	---------	------	-----	-----------

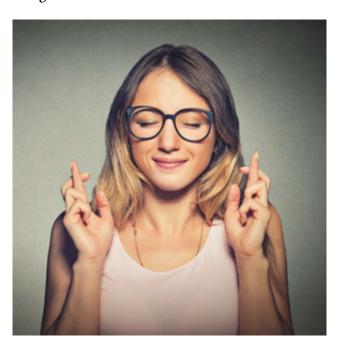
- __ have new clothes
- __ have a new job
- __ have a car
- __ get married
- __ can drive a car
- __ be an astronaut
- __ have a house in the countryside
- __ have a lot of money
- __ be on holiday

c Write the wishes of the people in the pictures.

- **1.** They **wish** they **had** a house in the countryside.
- 2._____
- 3. _____
- 4._____
- J. ______
- _
- Q
- 9. _____

7 GAME

Work in groups. Write down your wishes. Then, mime your wish without speaking. If your team can guess your wish, you get the point. The team which scores more wins the game.



8 WRITING

Read the proverb below and write a paragraph between 120-150 words about it.

"No man is an island."

Everyone needs help from each other. Nobody can be alone.



-	
(
l	





UNIT 20 SHOPPING

20A Traditional Clothes 20B More than a Market 20C Online Shopping

In this unit you will be...

- talking about different kinds of clothing and shopping.
- using quantities.
- reporting instructions.
- asking for and responding to favours.

TRADITIONAL CLOTHES

LEAD IN



Answer the following questions.

- **1.** What is the difference between tradition and fashion?
- **2.** Have you ever worn a traditional costume? When/ Why?
- **3.** Do you know any traditional clothes from different countries? What are their names? Can you describe them? (colour/ style etc.)
- **4.** Give examples to the traditional clothes in your country.

LISTENING & SPEAKING



VOCABULARY

- Look at the pictures of the traditional clothes of different countries. Write their names.
 - ◆ Kokoshnik ◆ Tracht ◆ Sombrero ◆ Chamanto









Match the traditional clothes with their countries.

a. Chile	b. Russia	
c Mevico	d Austria	

2 LISTENING)

- Answer the following questions.
 - 1. How often do you go shopping?
 - 2. What kind of clothes do you usually buy?
 - **3.** Are clothes important to you? Why, why
- Listen to the dialogue and fill in the blanks. (Track 1)



Shop assistant: Hello, ¹	I help you?
Amy: I'm ² a T-shirt.	
Shop assistant: What ³	are you?
Amy: Medium, I think.	
Shop assistant: What colour are you lo	ooking for?
Amy: Red, maybe blue.	
Shop assistant: We have got a red one	•
⁴ you are.	
Amy: Can I ⁵ it on?	
Shop assistant: The ⁶	is over
there.	
(a few minutes later)	
Amy: I'm afraid it doesn't fit me. Do y	ou have a
⁷ one?	
Shop assistant: Sure. Here you are.	
Amy: It's perfect. I'll take it. How muc	
Shop assistant: That's 8	dollars.
Amy: May I 9 by credit can	
Shop assistant: Yes, of course. Here is ¹⁰	your
Amy: Thank you, goodbye.	
Shop assistant: Goodbye.	

c	Listen to the dialogue once more and answer
	the following questions.

- 1. What is Amy buying?
- **2.** What size is Amy?
- **3.** How much is the T-shirt?
- **4.** What colour is the T-shirt?
- **5.** How does Amy want to pay?

3 EVERYDAY ENGLISH

Useful Expressions

Shop Assistant

- * What size do you wear/ what is your size?
- Of course, sure you can.
- Would you pay by cash or by card?
- Would you like to buy anything else?
- * Sorry, we are out of...

Customer

- What do you recommend?
- + Can/ May I try it on?
- How much is it?/ How much does it cost?
- No, thank you. I'm just looking.
- No, thank you/ Yes, I also need a...
- Where is the dressing/ changing room?
- I like them, they feel comfortable.

REMEMBER THIS!

Asking for, giving, and refusing permission

- Could/ May/ Can I try these pants in the fitting room?
- * Sure, it's over there.
- \bullet I'm so sorry. There is not a fitting room here.



4 SPEAKING 🖼

Work in pairs. Choose one of the situations below and create your own shop conversation like in Exercise 2b. Then, act it in class. Use the given shopping expressions in EVERYDAY ENGLISH box above.

- 1. You are at a boutique and you want to buy a coat for yourself.
- **2.** You are at a technomarket and you are going to buy a laptop.
- **3.** It's your father's birthday and you want to buy him a watch.
- **4.** You are at a bookstore and you are looking for a book which is a best seller. You will buy it for your best friend.
- **5.** You are at a shoeshop and you want to buy a pair of summer shoes for yourself.

5 PRONUNCIATION))

Listen and repeat the intonation. Then, fill in the blanks to complete the rules. (Track 2)

• Your flat is much more exPENsive than mine.

(The intonation is in the ¹ ______syllable of the comparative adjective)

- ◆ Lucy is nearly the most BEAUtiful girl in the family.

TODAY'S PROVERB

"The best things in life are free."

We don't have to pay for the things that are really valuable, like love, friendship, and good health.

READING & WRITING



READING 1

Skim the text and find the main idea.

CLOTHES FROM DIFFERENT CULTURES

Dressing is important because it gives the first impression about us to people. We all have our own ways of dressing, our different tastes in fashion, and clothes. Clothes are also the symbol of membership of a social group

or a profession. Moreover, every culture has its unique way of style which is also a mirror to its characteristics. Here are some glorious traditional costumes from around the world.

Sari is one of the most common outfit and national dress of Indian women.

> A sari is basically a long strip of cloth. The length of sari varies from four to nine meters. A sari consists of 3 pieces. It is still one of the most popular outfits in India. A large variety of sari is available. They differ from each other on the basis of design, fabric, drapes, and colours.

There is a large variety of outfits available in the markets, but no other dress can be more elegant than sari. It can be used for formal events, dinners, parties and on many more occasions.

Kimono

Kimono is a traditional Japanese cloth. It has a los loose traditional Japanese robe with wide sleeves with a sash.

It simply means things to wear. 'Ki' means wear, and 'mono' means thing. The Japanese wear it for weddings, funerals, or simply for relaxing at home.

The colours are also a **reflection** of the seasons. Bright colours are often worn in summer and cooler colours are in winter.

ng				
V				
1	1000	8		100 - V
44			4 8 4	
				4

1. A S	set of clothes
C.	
2. Ha	ving great fame and honour
E_	
3. Ve	ry beautiful or attractive
G	

4. A religious ceremony for burying dead human bodies.

|--|

Read the text and answer the following questions.

Wh				
	ien do wome	n wear	Sari in Inc	lia?
Wh	at does Kimo	ono me	an?	
Wh	y do people	wear Ki	lts rarely?	

Use the underlined words in the text to complete the sentences.

1. The company is going to hold a special ______ before Christmas.

2. The inflation is _____ rising these months.

3. You can see the ______ of the tree in the glass.

4. The ______ football team is playing against Spain on Saturday.

5. The idea of home office will add ______ to our jobs.

6. I like listening to ______ folk songs.

Kilt

Kilt is a knee-length wool garment and it is part of the traditional dress of Scotland. The kilt is obviously very famous around the world.

All the shops in the country sell kilts in a variety of different colours. Today, people don't usually wear as everyday clothing. The reason for this may be that kilts are very expensive. When a man wears a kilt, he normally wears it with a special shirt, jacket, bow tie, socks, and shoes. The Scottish wear them for special occasions, such as weddings, funerals, and other big important events.



2 PROJECT TIME



Prepare a poster of different costumes and clothes of different cultures. Find their pictures and give some information about these dresses.

3 SPEAKING

Work in pairs. Describe what people wear at the following occasions.

- graduation ceremony
- job interview
- picnic
- holiday



CHECK THIS OUT!

We can modify comparatives with words like much, a lot, far, a little, a bit, slightly, etc.

- · Tom's a lot taller than his father.
- · My hair is slightly shorter than yours.

We can modify superlatives with words like by far, easily, nearly, etc.

- That is by far the most expensive in the city.
- She is nearly the most intelligent of them all.
- 4 Study the CHECK THIS OUT! box and read the sentences below. Then, circle the correct modifier.
 - **1.** This exercise is **easily/ much** more difficult than the one in that book.
 - **2.** I'm feeling **slightly**/ **nearly** better than yesterday.
 - **3.** The weather is **a lot/ easily** colder than last week.
 - **4.** Your PC is **easily**/ **a little** smaller than mine.

TODAY'S QUOTE

"You're never fully dressed without a smile."

Martin Charnin

- 1. What does Martin Charnin mean with this quote?
- 2. Do you agree with him? Why, why not?

5 SPEAKING

You are going to buy a birthday present to your little cousin with your friend. You are at a shopping mall and have 50½. You're trying to decide what to buy. Prepare a dialogue with your friend and then act it out. You can use the expressions in the CHECK THIS OUT! box. There is a sample dialogue to help you.

You: Look at that green shirt. It is by far the most cheapest.

Your friend: I don't like that. What do you think about that red and yellow jacket over there?

You: It's so expensive. I have got only 50t.

Your friend: How about this blue dress? It is cheaper than the jacket.

You: Yes, that is nice. I like that. Let's buy it.



6 WRITING

Read the complaint letter below and write a similar letter about a product with a problem.

When writing a complaint letter you should;

- describe your problem clearly,
- give the certain dates,
- identify the problem,
- tell what you will do if they don't solve the problem,
- ask for a response within a reasonable time,
- attach a copy of the receipt.

David Smith 235 Street, Oxford

Best Tool Company, 124 Street, Oxford.

Dear Sir/Madam,

I am writing to complain about the mobile phone which I bought from your store on 28th December 2016. I am unhappy with the mobile phone although I paid £259.49 for it.

It suddenly shut down itself on the first day I started using it. I waited for an hour and it worked again. The same thing happened 3 times that day. I'm sure, I carefully followed all the instructions. I think there is a problem with the battery. I cannot charge it as well. I would like you to replace it with one as the same quality.

I look forward to your reply and a resolution to my problem. I hope to hear from you within 10 days.

Thank you for your interest. Please contact me on my number 508-4973612 or you can e-mail me on davidsmith@jungle.com.

Sincerely,

David Smith

	,
	7
	,
	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
	· ·
4	·
	·
4	·
	·
4	
4	
4	
4	
4	
4	
4	
4	
4	
A	

B MORE THAN A MARKET

EAD IN 🚾	
nswer the following questions.	
1. Do you like going to supermarkets?	
2. How often do you go grocery shopping?	
3. Do you make a shopping list before you go to a supermarket?	
	-

LISTENING & SPEAKING •



1 VOCABULARY

a	Match t	he de	epartments of	a su	permarket	with	ı the	clues give	en.
---	---------	-------	---------------	------	-----------	------	-------	------------	-----

1. You can find butter and cheese for sandwiches there.	a. Deli
2. You can find cakes and other dessert type food there.	b. Dairy
3. You can find sausage and salami there.	c. Condiments
4. You can find ketchup, mustard, mayonnaise, relish, etc there.	d. Bakery

Where do you find the things in the box below in a supermarket? Write them down under each category.

•	muffins •	lettuce • cl	heese • fish	bean ◆ s	paghetti 🔸 cl	hicken ◆ yog	hurt • t	oread
+	rice • min	eral water	• egg • cake	• • orange	juice • apple	e • leek • bro	occoli	

beverages	bakery	pasta and dry legumes	meat and sea products	dairy	fruit and vegetables

2 LISTENING))

a Mia is at a grocery store. Listen to the dialogue and fill in the blanks. (Track 3)



Shop assistant: 1?
Mia: Yes, where is the ² on this biscuits?
Shop assistant: It's on the top of it, madam.
Mia: Oh! There it is. Alright, ³ two packets of biscuits, please.
Shop assistant: 4 anything else?
Mia: 5 a bottle of milk.
Shop assistant: Sure. Two packets of biscuits
and a bottle of milk. 6, isn't it?
Mia: Yes. That's it. 7 are these?
Shop assistant: They are \$ 3.75 all together.
Mia: Three seventy-five?
Shop assistant: Yes.
Mia: Here's ⁸ (\$ 5.00).
Shop assistant: Your 9 is one dollar and twenty-five cents (\$ 1.25)
Mia: Thank you.
Shop assistant: Have a nice day.

b	8			
	the following questions.			
	1. What did Mia buy at the grocery store?			

2. How much did she pay for the groceries?

3. How much change was given to her?

3 SPEAKING

Work in pairs. Prepare a dialogue with your pair using the given phrases and the instructions. Then act it out.

Student A

You are doing shopping in a supermarket. Student B works in the supermarket. Ask Student B where some things are. Use the following phrases to help you:

Excuse me.

Where's the...?

Where are the...?

Thank you.

Student	В
---------	---

You are working in a supermarket.

Student A is a customer.

Answer Student A's questions. Use the following phrases to help you:

It's over there.

They're over there.

It's/ They're next to the...

No problem!

READING & WRITING



READING

Look at the picture. What do you think the passage is about?



Jeremy was very happy that morning. It was his birthday and he was 16 after all! His friends had arranged a party for him in a cafe that afternoon. He had a shower and put on his favourite red shirt. His mum had bought him a pair of vintage trousers from the second hand shop which was very popular in their town. He wanted to buy that trouser for a long time, that's why she preferred it as a present for him. He wanted to go to the cafe with his new trouser on. He dressed very quickly and went to the bathroom to comb his hair. While he was walking, he noticed that there was something in the pocket of his new trousers. When he put his hands in the pocket, he felt some paper and took it out. This was unbelievable! It was a big amount of money. "Most probably, the owner of the trousers had forgotten this money in his pocket." his mum said with a big surprise. "We must go back to the shop and inform them. We can't keep somebody else's money with us." Jeremy thought for a while. His mother was right. "We should go back and give the money to the owner of the shop." he agreed.

In the afternoon, he was with his friends enjoying at his party with his new trousers on, but without the money in his pocket. He was proud of himself because of his honest behaviour. He would never forget his 16th birthday, the present and the advice his mother gave him.

- Read the amusing story about a shopping experience and answer the questions.
 - 1. Why was Jeremy happy?
 - 2. How old was he?
 - 3. What did his mother buy him as a the birthday present?
 - **4.** What was there in the pocket of the trousers?
 - **5.** What did he do with the money?
 - **6.** Why was he proud of himself?

WRITING

Write an amusing story that you read/ heard/ lived about shopping like the one in Exercise 1a. Write between 150-200 words.

	,
- <u></u>	
·	
i	
i	
i	
i	
l .	
i	
i	
i	
i	
i e e e e e e e e e e e e e e e e e e e	
1	

3 SPEAKING 🖼

Tell your amusing stories in class and choose the most interesting one.

4 Find the given words about shopping in the puzzle. There is a word which is missing. Find and write it down.

L	Y	В	A	R	С	О	D	E	О	Y	K	M
A	В	С	A	S	Н	I	Е	R	Е	S	Q	О
В	Т	U	С	S	Е	L	L	N	В	Q	U	N
Е	S	A	Y	Е	Y	A	P	U	R	S	Е	Е
L	Н	W	A	L	L	Е	Т	Т	R	I	U	Y
Н	Е	A	Z	Е	W	Z	В	M	G	I	Е	С
С	L	R	С	A	В	Y	A	Н	A	M	R	I
0	F	I	Т	R	О	L	L	E	Y	С	E	S
D	R	U	Т	F	L	P	С	Н	A	N	G	Е
P	A	I	S	L	Е	M	S	Е	L	R	J	N
I	В	Q	С	A	S	Н	В	В	J	P	W	X

- WALLET
- BARCODE
- PURSE
- CHANGE
- CASHIER
- PRICE
- MONEY
- QUEUE
- LABEL
- BUY
- SELL
- CASH
- RECEIPT
- SHELF
- AISLE
- TROLLEY

The missing word is

REMEMBER THIS!

Quantifiers tell us something about the amount or quantity of something. We use them with both countable and uncountable nouns.

"Some" and "any" express an indefinite quantity or number.

- If you are hungry, there are some biscuits in the cupboard. (positive)
- I don't need any help. (negative)
- Do you have any biscuits? (question)

"Many" and "Much" express a large quantity.

- There aren't many flowers in the garden. (Countable noun)
- I don't have **much** time. I have to go. (Uncountable noun)

"A few" and "A little" express a small quantity.

- There are only a few days left for the final match. (Countable noun)
- I would like a little sugar for my coffee. (Uncountable noun)

"A lot of" and "lots of" express that there is a large quantity of something.

- We have had a lot of/ lots of homework in chemistry recently. (Uncountable noun)
- There are a lot of/ lots of animals in the zoo. (Plural and countable noun)

5 Circle the correct quantifier.

- **1.** I need to buy **some/ much/ a little** flowers for my garden.
- 2. We don't have a few/ much/ a little money.
- **3.** We have **some/ much/ a few** days left before the exam.
- **4.** She has **a few/ lots of/ many** butter in the fridge.
- 5. They don't have a little/ a few/ any time left to prepare a surprise for her.



TODAY'S IDIOM

"to sell like hot cakes"

it means to sell something quickly

e.g. He sold the umbrellas like hot cakes because it was raining heavily and people were getting wet."

READING

- Read the text and choose the correct heading for each paragraph.
 - ◆ Colorful World of Spices
 - An Ottoman Bazaar in İzmir
 - Types of Bazaars
 - Bazaars in Ottoman times



BAZAARS, ANCIENT SHOPPING CENTER OF OTTOMANS

1. Bazaars in Ottoman times

The concept of bazaar has had a meaning beyond shopping throughout history in Turkish-Islamic culture. Bazaars were the places where the trade was conducted and were the centers of the social and economic activities that took place in the city. They could be considered as the places of everyday life because the central mosques and baths were built near the bazaars. They were all together the basic elements that make up this culture.

2. ___

There were two concepts of bazaars. The first concept was called 'arasta', shops built both opposite and next to each other and provided income to the mosques. Spice Bazaar in İstanbul is one of the most beautiful examples of arastas in which shopping activities still continue today. The second concept was 'bedesten' which started to spread in the 15th century. They were the places where goods, more precious than the ones in arastas, were bought and sold. Bursa and İstanbul Grand Bazaar are the examples of the bedestens which are still very popular. Here are some other famous historic and touristic bazaars in Turkey.

When you go to Eminönü in İstanbul and visit the New Mosque, you will notice a sharp scent of spice that surrounds everywhere. If you follow that smell, you will find yourself at the gate of the Spice Bazaar with its magical atmosphere. Colourful spices, authentic souvenirs, jewelleries, dry nuts, Turkish delight, coffee shops, tourists with curious eyes... You can find all these in Spice or Egyptian Bazaar which was built in 1660 by Kazım Ağa, the chief architect of Turhan Sultan. Originally known as the New Bazaar or Valide Bazaar, its name changed after the 18th century. It is said that this is because it was made by the taxes taken from Egypt and the products sold in this bazaar were also from Egypt. The bazaar is still a popular trade and shopping center today as in the old times.

Kemeraltı, which is considered as one of the most crowded and active shopping spots of İzmir today, is actually an Ottoman Bazaar. The bazaar which starts from Anafartalar Street to Konak Square was built between 1650 and 1670. Being located on the seashore, Kemeraltı was an important trade center in that period. Although it is in the form of a closed bazaar, it consists of open streets today. In the past, families with less income used to meet their shopping needs from small shops in Kemeraltı, but today mostly boutiques and cafes are placed instead.

Write true (T) or false (F) next to the statements below.

- **1.** Bazaars were built away from the mosques. ___
- **2.** Arastas and bedestens were concepts of bazaars. ___
- 3. Bursa Grand Bazaar is an example of arastas. ___
- **4.** Spice Bazaar is in İzmir. ___
- 5. Kazım Ağa built Eygptian Bazaar in 1660. ___
- 6. Kemeraltı is an Ottoman Bazaar in İstanbul. ___
- 7. Only rich people were shopping in Kemeraltı. ___

PROJECT TIME



Choose a famous bazaar in Turkey from Ottoman times which is still popular like the ones in the text above. Prepare a poster and give some brief information about the bazaar. Use photos to decorate your poster.

8 READING

Alice is going to graduate from the university. Her mother and grandpa want to buy her a car as a graduation present. They are looking at a brochure and discussing the qualities of the cars. Read the dialogue and highlight the quantity words.

Graduation Present

Alice's Mum: Dad, do you have an idea? I'm not sure if Alice will like this car or not.

Alice's Grandpa: Well, I like this car. She'll probably like it as well. It has lots of qualities.

Alice's Mum: Really? But, isn't it a little expensive?

Alice's Grandpa: No problem. I have some money and it is enough. We can afford it. We must go to

the gallery and have a close look at this car. We don't have much time.

Alice's Mum: Dad, there are many other cars in this catalogue. We mustn't decide quickly. Let's not panic. There is a lot of time till her graduation. We may find something cheaper and better.

Alice's Grandpa: OK. Let's look for more.





Year: 2017 Highway Fuel Consumption: 4.1 lt.

Engine Type: Petrol Avarage Fuel: 4.6 lt.

Transmission: 5 speed manuel Tank Capacity: 35 lt.

Engine Volume: 998 cc

Max Power: 68 HP

Width: 1630 mm.

Height: 1465 mm.

Max. Speed: 157 km/hr.

Boot capacity: 199 lt.

City Fuel Consumption: 5.5 lt.

9 WRITING

a Look at the information above. It is from the catalogue that Alice's mother and grandpa are looking at. Write a short informative paragraph about this car using the given information.

Alice's mother and grandpa are planning to buy her a car as a graduation present. It is 2017 production and \$12,000_____

b Prepare another car information chart and give a choice to Alice's mum and grandpa. Write an alternative informative paragraph with a short description. Write 100-150 words in your paragraph.

LEAD IN

Answer the following questions.

- 1. What do you think about online shopping?
- 2. Have you ever bought something on the Internet? What was it?
- 3. Are you perfectly happy to buy it?
- 4. What kind of things do you buy online?

LISTENING & SPEAKING



VOCABULARY

Match the following expressions about shopping in bold with their definitions.

- 1. Shop owners are fed up with the 'window shoppers because they just look around and buy nothing.
- 2. I don't ² have money to burn. I really work hard to earn it.
- **3.** Those services will ³**not come cheap**. You are going to 4pay big bucks.
- 4. Mothers usually manage to 5tighten their belts and live within their means.

- ___ **b.** to be very rich and spend too much money on useless things
- ___ c. looking at the windows of the shops without buying anything
- ____ **d.** something qualified, therefore expensive
- ____ **e.** to pay a lot of money

LISTENING)

- Listen to the dialogue about online shopping and put the sentences in the correct order. (Track 4)
 - a. Linda: Really? How do you buy a dress on the Internet? ____
 - **b. Amy: No,** it may take a few days. ____

- c. Linda: Your dress looks wonderful. Where did you buy it from? <u>1</u>
- d. Amy: No problem. I usually buy something on the Internet. It is convenient and cheap. ____
- **e. Linda:** How do you pay? _
- **f. Amy:** I ordered it from a site on the Internet.
- **g. Linda:** Do you think online shopping is safe and reliable? ____
- h. Amy: It is up to you. You can pay in cash if they provide a home delivery service. ____
- i. Linda: Can I have a dress on the same day? ____
- **j. Amy:** Yes, you probably could. They have everything online nowadays. You need to register with a user name, create a password, and provide some personal information. ____
- **k. Linda:** I can wait a few days for the delivery. No problem. Let's order it right now. ____
- **l. Amy:** It's easy to buy a dress online. I find a site that sells dresses I love. Then I choose one and pay for it. ____
- m. Linda: Do you think I could find one online, too? ____
- Have you bought anything on the Internet recently? What was it?

3 SPEAKING

Work in pairs. What are the people in the pictures below doing? Then, match the dialogues with their pictures.







- **a.** "Can you do me a favour? I can't reach this box. Could you please give it to me?" "Of course, here you are."
- ____ **b.** "I need a favour. Could you please help me with these bags? They are too heavy." "Yes, certainly."
- ___ c. "Could you please help me cross the street?."

 "Of course."

CHECK THIS OUT!

ASKING FOR A FAVOUR

Formal

Would you be able to do me a favour?

Can I ask you to do me a favour?

Could you do me a favour?

Can you do me a favour?

I need to ask a favour.

I need a favour.

Informal

RESPONDING TO A FAVOUR

- · Yes, certainly.
- · Of course.
- · Sure. No problem.
- · Help yourself.
- · I'd be glad/happy to help.
- · It's my pleasure.
- · No, I'm sorry.
- し・Actually, I can't.

4 SPEAKING

Work in pairs. Choose from the below situations and prepare dialogues expressing favour. Read the sample dialogue to help you.

- Turn on the air conditioner
- Turn off the TV
- Take a photo for me
- Give me a ride to school
- e.g. A: Excuse me, I need a favour.
 - **B:** Sure, what is it?
 - **A:** Well, I'll be in Italy next week. Could you take care of my cat while I'm abroad?
 - **B:** No problem. It's my pleasure.
 - A: Thanks a lot.

DO YOU KNOW THIS?

Favor (American English)
Favour (British English)

5 READING

a Answer the following questions.



Are You A Shopaholic?

- **1.** Do you feel a strong desire to spend money when you are not feeling well?
- **2.** Do you feel drifting for shopping and spending money even when you don't have time and energy?
- **3.** Are your family and friends worried about you because of your shopping habits?
- **4.** Are there things you buy, even if you do not need them or do not use them?
- **5.** Do you feel guilty, regretful, or anxious after you buy unnecessary things?
- **6.** Do you have difficulty in stopping yourself after you start spending money?
- 7. Do you sometimes feel compelled to shop?
- **8.** Do you buy more than you need?
- **9.** Do you still keep spending too much money although you have credit card or other debts?
- **10.** Do you prefer going shopping alone rather than going to the cinema with friends?

- b Work in pairs. Do you know anyone who is addicted to shopping? Talk about him or her with your pair.
- c Read the article and put the paragraphs in the correct order.

____ Some shopaholics are happy even they see shopping packages. Contrary to what is thought, shopaholism can be seen not only in women but also in men. Men prefer mobile phones, electronic goods, automobile parts while women prefer clothes, shoes, perfumes, and household goods. Surveys show that self-esteem of these people is generally low.

1 Shopaholism is a serious problem as well as a psychological disturbance to be treated. People feel relieved, happy, and strong by shopping. However, after a while their mood changes into the opposite.

An ordinary woman can shop on average between four and six hours while a shopaholic can do it from 10 a.m. to 7 p.m. Besides, it is not necessary for shopaholics to have a certain budget. If necessary, they can borrow money and go shopping. They can go shopping again and again even there are unopened packages at home.

____ These people need professional help. In general, drug treatment or psychotherapy are applied to them. Recently, in some European countries, group therapies are made for shopaholics as well.

____ Shopaholism is also called oniomania. It manifests itself by spending money unnecessarily and uncontrollably. When people feel angry, anxious, or sad, they often feel the need to shop and have pleasure and enthusiasm while shopping and feeling of guilt, distress, and embarrassment in the long run.

6 Write the instructions under the pictures to complete the sentences.

• drive carefully. • bring the books to the library. • read the message.







CHECK THIS OUT!

- We use reporting verbs like say, ask, tell, order and put 'to' before the reported command, advice or request.
- -In negative sentences, we use 'not to'.
- Some of the reporting verbs are tell, ask, forbid, order, warn, etc.

EXAMPLES

Direct speech

The teacher said to me, "Stop talking!"

"Don't open the window," he said.

Indirect speech

The teacher told me to stop talking.

He asked me not to open the window.

7 SPEAKING 🖼

Margaret and her grandma Dorothy are making cookies. Report their instructions to your friend.

Then write them down.

3. Don't pour

2. Mix them slowly:

1. Put some butter into the bowl

- 8. Give me some eggs.
 - 7. Pass me the flour.
- hot milk.

6. Don't turn on the mixer.

- 4. Add some sugar
- to the mixture.

the cookies.

5. Give form to

- 1. Dorothy asked Margeret to put some butter into the bowl.
- 2. Dorothy warned her ______.
- **3.** Dorothy told ______.
- **4.** Dorothy told __
- 5. Margaret asked ______.
- 6. Margaret told _____
- 7. Margaret told _____
- 8. Margaret asked _____

READING & WRITING

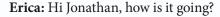


READING

Read the text and do the exercises.



Erica is a shop assistant at a department store in Dublin. One day, at her lunch break, she goes to the book store where her boyfriend works. He is waiting for her at the cash desk looking at the people who are *shopping around*. He loves her a lot. Erica is also in love with him. She wishes to marry him.



Jonathan: Well, I have to sell down these story books today.

Erica: Oh, my younger brother likes reading books. He can buy some of them with his pocket money. He always saves money and buys books.

Jonathan: Really? But, actually, a man phoned this morning and he said he'll come and buy them up this afternoon.

Erica: Well, that's good then.

Jonathan: Erica, can you do me a favour?

Erica: Yes, of course. What is it?

Jonathan: Can you give me my credit card? It's over there in the drawer.

Erica: Sure, here you are. Why do you need that?

Jonathan: Honey, the man who phoned this morning not only wants to buy the story books, but he also wants to buy out this book store.

Erica: Interesting! What does your boss say to

Jonathan: That man who called today can sell ice to Eskimos. He speaks in a very convincing way. She'll most probably accept his offer because one of her friends sold her out. Therefore, she has



been having financial problems for some time. Her friend really sold her a bill of goods. Because of her, she had to cut prices to the bone this month. In my opinion, she'll sell out this store to this man who called today.

Erica: Sad to her. But, I still don't understand why you ask for your credit card.

Jonathan: Erica, this man who wants to buy this store made me an offer. He wants me to be the manager of this store with a very satisfying salary.

Erica: Jonathan, that's good news, now! Congratulations! But, are you sure that he isn't selling wolf tickets?

Jonathan: Of course I'm sure. That's why I want my credit card.

Erica: Darling, you're talking like a puzzle. Come to the point, please.

Jonathan: OK. I want my credit card because I saw you were looking at a solitaire ring on the Internet last week and I'll order it. I'm the manager, forget? I can easily afford it. So, will you marry me Erica?

Erica: Oh, Jonathan, I'm so happy! Of course, I will.

a Identify the compound nouns about shopping from the dialogue above. Write the missing letters.

1. p_c k_t m__ey

3. s_o_ a__i_t_n_

5. b_o_ __o_e

2. cr__it _a_d

6. _a _ h _ e _ k

b	The verb "sell out" is used in two different meanings in the dialogue. Try to guess their meanings.				
	1. "one of her frien	nds <u>sold</u> her <u>out</u> "	a. to sell the shares of a c	company	
	2. "she'll sell out this store"		b. to betray or abandon s	someone	
c	There are some phrasa definitions.	. Match them with their			
	1. shop around	a. to buy the total of e	verything as a whole		
	2. sell down	b. to walk around the before buying	shops in order to search for a	nd compare the goods	
	3. buy up	c. to buy the shares of	a person or a company		
	4. buy out	d. to reduce somethin	g buy selling		
d	•	-	nen he doesn't answer her qu ng of this idiom with your fr	•	
e	Here are some idioms	about shopping from	the dialogue. Match them w	ith their meanings.	
	a. to decrease the price	a bill of goods of a product to the bot	ttom b. to cheat or deceive s	•	
	c. to bluff and make en	—	d. to be able to persuad accept something unno	de people and make them ecessary	
2	DISCUSSION TIM Work in groups. Discus store.		sadvantages of online shoppir	ng and shop in-person at a	
	SHOP ONLINE (ON THE NET	SHOP IN-PERS	ON AT A STORE	
	ADVANTAGES	DISADVANTAGES	ADVANTAGES	DISADVANTAGES	

3 WRITING

Some people prefer online shopping whereas some others like to shop in-person at a store. Write a composition between 200-250 words to compare them. Use the notes that you took in Exercise 2a above.

IRREGULAR VERBS LIST

V1	V2	V3
Base Form	Past Simple	Past Participle
awake	awoke	awoken
be	was, were	been
beat	beat	beaten
become	became	become
begin	began	begun
bend	bent	bent
bet	bet	bet
bid	bid	bid
bite	bit	bitten
blow	blew	blown
break	broke	broken
bring	brought	brought
broadcast	broadcast	broadcast
build	built	built
burn	burned/ burnt	burned/burnt
buy	bought	bought
catch	caught	caught
choose	chose	chosen
come	came	come
cost	cost	cost
cut	cut	cut
dig	dug	dug
do	did	done
draw	drew	drawn
dream	dreamed/ dreamt	dreamed/ dreamt
drive	drove	driven
drink	drank	drunk
eat	ate	eaten
fall	fell	fallen
feel	felt	felt
fight	fought	fought
find	found	found
fly	flew	flown
forget	forgot	forgotten
forgive	forgave	forgiven
freeze	froze	frozen
get	got	gotten
give	gave	given
go	went	gone
grow	grew	grown
hang	hung	hung
have	had	had
hear	heard	heard
hide	hid	hidden
hit	hit	hit

V1 Base Form	V2 Past Simple	V3 Past Participle
hold	held	held
hurt	hurt	hurt
keep	kept	kept
know	knew	known
lay	laid	laid
lead	led	led
learn	learned/ learnt	learned/ learnt
leave	left	left
lend	lent	lent
let	let	let
lie	lay	lain
lose	lost	lost
make	made	made
mean	meant	meant
meet	met	met
pay	paid	paid
put	put	put
read	read	read
ride	rode	ridden
ring	rang	rung
rise	rose	risen
run	ran	run
say	said	said
see	saw	seen
sell	sold	sold
send	sent	sent
show	showed	showed/shown
shut	shut	shut
sing	sang	sung
sit	sat	sat
sleep	slept	slept
speak	spoke	spoken
spend	spent	spent
stand	stood	stood
swim	swam	swum
take	took	taken
teach	taught	taught
tear	tore	torn
tell	told	told
think	thought	thought
throw	threw	thrown
understand	understood	understood
wake	woke	woken
wear	wore	worn
win	won	won
write	wrote	written

PHONETIC CHART

VOWELS

ı	e	<mark>ʊ</mark>	u:	æ	a:
sh <u>i</u> p	b <u>e</u> d	b <u>oo</u> k	sh <u>oe</u>	c <u>a</u> t	c <u>a</u> r
i:	ə	3:	o:	۸	b
S <u>ea</u>	pap <u>e</u> r	sk <u>i</u> rt	d <u>oo</u> r	b <u>u</u> s	d <u>o</u> g

DIPHTHONGS

ıə	eə	eı	
<u>ea</u> r	ch <u>ai</u> r	r <u>ai</u> n	
oı	aı	aʊ	อช
t <u>o</u> y	k <u>i</u> te	h <u>ou</u> se	arr <u>o</u> w

CONSONANTS

p	b	t	d	f	v
parrot	<u>b</u> at	<u>t</u> ea	<u>d</u> ig	<u>f</u> ish	<u>v</u> an
θ	ð	m	n	ŋ	h
<u>th</u> umb	mo <u>th</u> er	gu <u>m</u>	nose	k <u>ing</u>	<u>h</u> and
tʃ	dʒ	k	g	s	z
<u>ch</u> eese	jam	<u>c</u> ane	bag	<u>s</u> un	<u>z</u> ebra
∫	3	l	r	w	ј
<u>sh</u> ip	televi <u>s</u> ion	<u>l</u> eg	<u>r</u> ed	whale	<u>у</u> о- <u>у</u> о

COMMON CONSONANT DIGRAPHS

ph-	kn-	wr-	ch-	sh-
photo	<u>kn</u> ife	wright	<u>ch</u> ef	<u>sh</u> ark
th-	wh-	qu-	-tch	-ng
thief	wheel	<u>qu</u> een	wa <u>tch</u>	si <u>ng</u>
-gh	-ch	-sh	-th	-ck
laugh	swit <u>ch</u>	bu <u>sh</u>	ear <u>th</u>	du <u>ck</u>

REFERENCES

Milli Eğitim Bakanlığı (2016). Hazırlık Sınıfı Bulunan Ortaöğretim Kurumları İngilizce Dersi (Hazırlık 9,10,11 ve 12.Sınıflar) Öğretim Programı. Ankara

Retrieved from https://conserve-energy-future.com/causes-effects-and-solutions-ofwildfires.php 15/02/2017

Retrieved from https://dictionary.com/browse/30.11.16

Retrieved from https://learning-potential-and-school-performance#_ednref1that-shaped-the-world/16/11/2016 17.02

Retrieved from https://abc.go.com/shows/blackish/cast/zoey-johnson 13.02.2017

Retrieved from https://agathachristie.wikia.com/wiki/Cat_Among_the_Pigeons 17.02.2017

Retrieved from https://anRetrieved from https://anRetrieved from https://kaplumbaga.ims.metu.edu.tr/index.php?option=com_content&view=article&id=2<emid=02/01/2017

Retrieved from http://articles.extension.org/pages/68774/3-ways-nutrition-influencesstudent- 05/04/2017

Retrieved from http://bangkok.com/whats-on-events/loy-krathong.htm 03/04/2017

Retrieved from http://bbc.co.uk/timelines/zwjmtfr 10.01.2017

Retrieved from http://bbc.co.uk/webwise/guides/about-netiquette 25.12.2016

Retrieved from http://bhangrakids.com/info/sari.shtml 01.01.2017

Retrieved from http://biography.com/news/stephen-hawking-biography-facts 05.01.2017

Retrieved from http://biography.com/people/agatha-christie-15.02.2017

Retrieved from http://biography.com/people/james-d-watson-9525139

Retrieved from http://biography.com/people/michio-kaku-21429817 12.01.2017

Retrieved from http://biography.com/people/muhammad-ali-9181165 15.12.2016

Retrieved from http://biography.com/people/robert-stroud-birdman-of-alcatraz 19.02.2017 Retrieved from http://biographyonline.net/writers/agatha-christie.html 15.02.2017

Retrieved from http://biyografi.info/kisi/ayse-kulin 11.02.2017

Retrieved from http://blog.world-mysteries.com/science/ancient-chinese-inventions-anddiscoveries-03/04/2017

Retrieved from http://brainden.com/logic-riddles.htm 04.01. 2017

Retrieved from http://busy teacher.org 01.01.2017

Retrieved from http://Childrens-Learning-Potential-and-School-Performance/(Aralık 2016)

Retrieved from http://dictionary.cambridge.org 09/04/2017

Retrieved from http://dictionary.cambridge.org/dictionary/english/5.01.17

Retrieved from http://dnaftb.org/19/bio.htm 13.02.2017

Retrieved from http://ducksters.com/biography/scientists/stephen_hawking.php27.12.2016

Retrieved from http://ecdc.europa.eu/en/healthtopics/zika_virus_infection/Pages/index.aspx 22.01.2017

Retrieved from http://ehow.com/info_8515620_effects-volcanic-eruptions.html?ref=Track2&utm_source=IACB2C 17/01/2017

Retrieved from http://elitefeet.com/the-legend-of-cliff-young 12.02.2017

Retrieved from http://empathy-grief-extinction-science/06/01/2017

Retrieved from http://encyclopedia.jrank.org/articles/pages/5802/Kulin-Ayse-1941.html 12.02.2017

 $Retrieved from \ http://english-for-students.com/The-Wise-Judge.html \ 01.03.2017$

Retrieved from http://EnglishPedia.net 12. 01. 2017

Retrieved from http://englishteachermelanie.com/how-to-use-the-english-verb-go 15/04/2017

Retrieved from http://eonline.com/news/843351/black-ish-star-yara-shahidi-is-soready-for-college-she-just-has-to-choos 12/04/2017

Retrieved from http://esl.about.com/od/intermediatepronunciation/ 25.01.17

Retrieved from http://esl.fis.edu/grammar/rules/some.htm (01.01.2017)

Retrieved from http://esolcourses.com/content/topics/tv/tv-show-genres.html20.01.17

 $Retrieved from \ http://etiquettescholar.com/dining_etiquette/international_dining_etiquette.html\ (Aralık\ 2016)$

 $Retrieved from \ http://famous birthdays.com/people/corey-fogelman is. html\ 10.02.2017$

 $Retrieved\ from\ http://famous birthdays.com/people/yara-shahidi.html\ 13.02.2017$

 $Retrieved from \ http://folklor.gen.tr/halk-giysileri/trabzon-yoresi-giysileri.html (20.04.2017)$

Retrieved from http://footballtop.com/players/arda-turan 05.01.2016

Retrieved from http://girlmeetsworld.wikia.com/wiki/Corey_Fogelmanis 12.02.2017

 $Retrieved from \ http://goethe.de/ins/tr/lp/prj/cub/aut/kul/enindex.htm\ 11.02.2017$

 $Retrieved\ from\ http://goodreads.com/author/show/2882488.Ay_e_Kulin\ 11.02.2017$

Retrieved from http://goodreads.com/book/show/16342.Cat_Among_the_Pigeons16.02.2017

Retrieved from http://gsb.gov.tr/HaberDetaylari/3/39325/cimnastikte-2-altinmadalya%E2%80%8F.aspx 21.04.2016

Retrieved from http://hawking.org.uk 29.11.2016

Retrieved from http://hawking.org.uk/about-stephen.html 27.12.2016

Retrieved from http://he-penultimate-word.com/2016/03/15/burglar-in-the-house-a-short-shortstory-by-jed-waverly/ 21.02 2017

 $Retrieved from \ http://history.com/this-day-in-history/the-birdman-of-alcatraz-is allowed-a-small-taste-of-freedom 17.02.2017$

Retrieved from http://huffingtonpost.com/2014/09/15/online-shopping (01.01.2017)

 $Retrieved from \ http://humanesociety.org/assets/pdfs/farm/hsus-fact-sheet green house-gas-emissions-from-animal-agriculture. (Mart 2017) and the properties of the properti$

Retrieved from http://imdb.com/name/nm2780578/13.02.2017

 $Retrieved from \ http://imdb.com/name/nm4396310/\ 11.02.2017$

Retrieved from http://iml.jou.ufl.edu/projects/Fall02/Kim/introduction.htm (01.01.2017)

Retrieved from http://kiddyhouse.com/Themes/frogs/ 13/02/2017

Retrieved from http://learnenglish.britishcouncil.org/en/ 03.02.17

Retrieved from http://learnenglish.britishcouncil.org/en/magazine/superstitions (Aralık 2016)

 $Retrieved from \ http://listverse.com/2015/02/27/10-crime-stories-with-strange-coincidences/19.02, 2017$

Retrieved from http://livescience.com/27320-elephants.html 06/01/2017

Retrieved from http://livescience.com/33556-earthquake-safety-tips.html 09/01/2017

Retrieved from http://livescience.com/40380-james-watson-biography.html13.02.2017

Retrieved from http://macmillandictionary.com/dictionary/british/30.11.16

Retrieved from http://mevlana.net/wedding_day.html 21/02/2017

Retrieved from http://murderpedia.org/male.S/s/stroud-robert.htm 19.02.2017

 $Retrieved from \ http://murphys-laws.com/murphy/murphy-true.html\ 03/04/2017$

Retrieved from http://news.nationalgeographic.com/news/2014/02/140221-elephantspoaching-03/04/2017

Retrieved from http://nobelprize.org/nobel_prizes/medicine/laureates/1962/watsonbio.html12.02.2017

Retrieved from http://notablebiographies.com/Ch-Co/Christie-Agatha.html16.02 2017

Retrieved from http://paganfederation.org/what-is-paganism/ (Aralık 2016)

Retrieved from http://pbs.org/wgbh/nova/blogs/secretlife/physical-science/michiokaku/13.01.2017

Retrieved from http://philippinecountry.com/philippine_festivals/kadayawan_sa_dabaw.html (Aralık 2016)

Retrieved from http://philippinestravelhub.com/events/kadayawan-festiva (Aralık 2016)

Retrieved from http://plagscan.com/highlight?doc=11176044&source=1&cite=0#jump Retrieved from http://psychiclibrary.com/beyondBooks/superstition-room/ (Aralık 2016)

Retrieved from http://sahikaercumen.com/ 22.11.2016

 $Retrieved from \ http://sensationalcolor.com/color-meaning/color-around-the-world/india-holi-festival-colors-1941 \#WPOlc0XyjlU 03/04/2017$

Retrieved from http://seventeen.com/celebrity/interviews/a46309/yara-shahidiinterview/13.02.2017

Retrieved from http://smh.com.au/national/large-fur-seal-climbs-on-car-smasheswindscreen-in-launceston-adventure-20161226-gthwsq.html 28.12.2016

Retrieved from http://socialnetworking.procon.org/02.01.2017

Retrieved from http://space.com/15923-stephen-hawking.htm 07.01.2017

Retrieved from http://st-andrews.ac.uk/students/advice/personal/managingexamstress/ 20/12/2016

Retrieved from http://starsonice.ca/ 14.02.2017

Retrieved from http://starsonice.ca/news.html 10.02.2017

Retrieved from http://starsonice.ca/tour.html 14.02.2017

Retrieved from http://starsonice.com/tour-history.html 10.02.2017

Retrieved from http://swfl.naturalawakeningsmag.com/SWFL//Nutrition-Improves-03/04/2017

Retrieved from http://talkwithcelebs.com/viral/corey-fogelmanis-contact-details/ 10.02.2017

Retrieved from http://thetoptens.com/best-ancient-civilizations/ 16/11/2016 16.41

Retrieved from http://timeforchange.org/are-cows-cause-of-global-warming-meatmethane-CO2 (Mart 2017)

Retrieved from http://traditions.cultural-china.com/en/16T9161T13273.html13.02.2017

 $Retrieved from \ http://turkishculture.org/lifestyles/ceremonies/sema-220.htm? type=120/02/2017$

Retrieved from http://turkishculture.org/whoiswho/literature/ayse-kulin-863.htm12.02.2017

 $Retrieved from \ http://turkishny.com/news/turkish-professor-aziz-sancar-wins-nobel chemistry-prize\ 09.02.2017$

Retrieved from http://t-vine.com/cagla-buyukakcay-makes-history-as-first-turkishwoman-to-win-a-womens-tennis-association-singles-title/11.01.2017

Retrieved from http://tx.english-ch.com/teacher/yuri/level-c/asking-for-favor-and-repetition/(01.01.2017)

Retrieved from http://unmuseum.org/7wonders/everest.htm 10.12.2016

Retrieved from http://upstreamcommerce.com/blog/2012/02/14/8-reasons-consumer-likesshop-online (01.01.2017)

Retrieved from http://web2.uvcs.uvic.ca/elc/studyzone 01. 01. 2017

Retrieved from http://webmd.com/balance/stress-management/stress-symptomseffects_of-stress-on-the-body#1 21/12/2016

Retrieved from http://who.int/features/ga/cancer-red-meat/en/ (Aralık 2016)

Retrieved from http://xmichiokakustephenchinx.weebly.com/michio-kaku 13.01.2017

Retrieved from http://youbentmywookie.com/entertainment/movie-poster 17.02.2017

Retrieved from http://Avasirininozgun.com/alisveris-bagimliligi 01. 01.2017

Retrieved from http://healthline.com/health/balanced-diet 27.12.2016

Retrieved from https://acaquarium.com/animals/loggerhead-turtle/ 02/01/2017

 $Retrieved from \ https://accc.gov.au/consumers/complaints-problems/write-acomplaint-letter (01.01.2017)$

 $Retrieved from \ https://amazon.com/Ayse-Kulin/e/B001JORAXG\ 10.02.2017$

Retrieved from https://amazon.com/Cat-Among-Pigeons-Hercule-Mysteries16.02.2017

Retrieved from https://ataturktoday.com/AtaturkWorldPressLeadersTribute.htm(01.12.2016)

Retrieved from https://bluezones.com/live-longer-better/ (Aralık 2016)

Retrieved from https://booksplease.org/2013/03/10/cat-among-the-pigeons-byagatha-christie/18.02.2017

Retrieved from https://buffalolib.org/vufind/Record/1724781/Reviews 17.02.2017

Retrieved from https://carsontahoe.com/stress 20/12/2016

Retrieved from https://dailysabah.com/sports/2017/04/03/turkey-wins-3-golds-ateuropean-weightlifting-contest 15.04.2016

Retrieved from https://ecotourism.org/what-is-ecotourism 03/04/2017

Retrieved from https://www.ego.gov.tr/tr/haber/4224/ego-otobuslerinin-tamami-engelli-erisimine-uygun/11.07.2018

Retrieved from https://englishclub.com 31.01.2017

Retrieved from https://englishclub.com/esl-worksheets/25.01.17

Retrieved from https://etstur.com/letsgo/osmanlinin-avmleri/(01.01.2017)

Retrieved from https://famousscientists.org/michio-kaku/ 12.01.2017

 $Retrieved from \ https://famous scientists.org/stephen-hawking/\ 13.02.2017$

Retrieved from https://gsb.gov.tr 18.11.2016

Retrieved from https://istekadinlar.com/spor-saglik/altin-kiz-ayse-begum-onbasi-benmadalya-canavariyim-kendimi-h726.html 10.01.2017

Retrieved from https://learnenglishteens.britishcouncil.org/magazine/life-around-world/kilt(01.01.2017)

Retrieved from https://merriam-webster.com 03/04/2017

Retrieved from https://ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21329447 28.12.2016

Retrieved from https://nobelprize.org/nobel_prizes/chemistry/laureates/2015/sancarbio.html 09.02.2017

Retrieved from https://nsidc.org/cryosphere/snow/science/avalanches.html 16/01/2017

 $Retrieved from \ https://nwf.org/Wildlife/Wildlife-Library/Mammals/Polar-Bear.aspx 04/01/2017$

Retrieved from https://plus.google.com/+ScholartutoringCoUk 20/12/2016

Retrieved from https://pronouncecami.wordpress.com/2012/06/14/word-stress-patterns-3/(01.12.2016)

Retrieved from https://propertyturkey.coM 27. 12. 2016

Retrieved from https://scientificamerican.com/article/genetic-factors-associated-withincreased-longevity-identified/ Aralık 2016

 $Retrieved\ from\ https://simple.wikiquote.org/wiki/Stephen_Hawking\ 04.01.2017$

 $Retrieved from \ https://simple.wikiquote.org/wiki/Stephen_Hawking \ 30.12. \ 2016.$

Retrieved from https://sites.google.com/site/gsubiol2310/10-highly-effective-study-habits 03/04/2017

Retrieved from https://slideshare.net/AnnaEnglishTeacher/conversations-1 (01.01.2017)

Retrieved from https://slideshare.net/wansiri42410383/word-stress-465141(01.12.2016)

Retrieved from https://starsonicestore.com 10.02.2017

Retrieved from https://stripesarticles.wordpress.com/ 25.01.17

Retrieved from https://tarihhaber.net/osmanlı-kent-yapisinda-çarşilar/ 01.01.2017

Retrieved from https://texaschildrens.org 25.01.17

Retrieved from https://thoughtco.com/history-of-chinese-opera-19512714.02.2017

Retrieved from https://thoughtco.com/michio-kaku-biography-2699051 13.01.2017

Retrieved from https://timeanddate.com/holidays/china/spring-festival 15/03/2017

 $Retrieved from \ https://timeand date.com/holidays/turkey/ramadan-feast\ 22/02/2017$

 $Retrieved from \ https://travelchinaguide.com/intro/arts/chinese-opera.htm 13.02.2017$

Retrieved from https://vrs.org.uk/virtual-reality/what-is-virtual-reality.html 08.01.2017
Retrieved from https://walksofitaly.com/blog/venice/all-about-carnival-in-venicevenetian-masks-and-more 14/03/2017

Retrieved from https://wattpad.com/36096503-the-burglary-short-story20.02.2017

Retrieved from https://waymo.com/ 12.01.2017

Retrieved from https://wn.com/magic_jazz_mehmet_okur_interview 10.02.2017

Retrieved from https://alcatrazhistory.com/stroud.htm18.02.2017

Retrieved from https://allaboutturkey.com/marriage.htm 27/02/2017

Retrieved from https://biyografistan.com/2013/01/semih-sayginer-kimdir-biyografisi.html 21.12.2016

Retrieved from https://chinahighlights.com/travelguide/culture/traditional-operas.htm14.02.2017

Retrieved from https://chinahighlights.com/travelguide/special-report/chinese-newyear/14/03/2017

Retrieved from https://chinasage.info/opera.htm14.02.2017

Retrieved from https://comic-art.com/biographies/schulz01.htm 07/03/2017

 $Retrieved from \ https://conservation.ca.gov/index/Earthquakes/Pages/qh_earthquakes_what.aspx\ 09/01/2017$

Retrieved from https://americanenglish.state.gov (01.01.2017)

Retrieved from https://ferrebeekeeper.wordpress.com/2013/08/07/the-meaning-of-chineseopera-mask 13.02.2017

Retrieved from https://futurism.com/know-your-scientist-michio-kaku/11.01.2017

 $Retrieved from \ https://global.britannica.com/biography/Aziz-SancaR\ 09..02.2017$

Retrieved from https://josbookjourney.wordpress.com/2011/04/12/cat-among-the-pigeonsagatha-christie/ 18.02.2017

VISUAL REFERENCES

Retrieved from http://byegm.gov.tr/turkce/haber/karpuz-tuketimi-artti/63654 (Şubat 2017)

Retrieved from http://dreamstime.com 03/04/2017

Retrieved from http://haber1.com 12.01.2017

 $Retrieved from \ http://kte.mam.tubitak.gov.tr/tr/arastirma-alanlari/geri-kazanim-teknolojilerigeri \ dönüşüm (\ \Subat 2017) \ http://kte.mam.tubitak.gov.tr/tr/arastirma-alanlari/geri-kazanim-teknolojilerigeri \ dönüşüm (\ \Subat 2017) \ http://kte.mam.tubitak.gov.tr/tr/arastirma-alanlari/geri-kazanim-teknolojilerigeri \ dönüşüm (\ \Subat 2017) \ http://kte.mam.tubitak.gov.tr/tr/arastirma-alanlari/geri-kazanim-teknolojilerigeri \ dönüşüm (\ \Subat 2017) \ http://kte.mam.tubitak.gov.tr/tr/arastirma-alanlari/geri-kazanim-teknolojilerigeri \ dönüşüm (\ \Subat 2017) \ http://kte.mam.tubitak.gov.tr/tr/arastirma-alanlari/geri-kazanim-teknolojilerigeri \ dönüşüm (\ \Subat 2017) \ http://kte.mam.tubitak.gov.tr/tr/arastirma-alanlari/geri-kazanim-teknolojilerigeri \ http://kte.mam.tubitak.gov.tr/tr/arastirma-alanlari/geri-kazanim-teknolojilerigeri \ http://kte.mam.tubitak.gov.tr/tr/arastirma-alanlari/geri-kazanim-teknolojilerigeri \ http://kte.mam.tubitak.gov.tr/tr/arastirma-alanlari/geri-kazanim-teknolojilerigeri \ http://kte.mam.tubitak.gov.tr/tr/arastirma-alanlari/geri-kazanim-teknolojilerigeri \ http://kte.mam.tubitak.gov.tr/tr/arastirma-alanlari/geri-kazanim-teknolojilerigeri \ http://kte.mam.tubitak.gov.tr/tr/arastirma-alanlari/geri-kazanim-teknolojilerigeri \ http://kte.mam.tubitak.gov.tr/tr/arastirma-alanlari/geri-kazanim-teknolojilerigeri \ http://kte.mam.tubitak.gov.tr/tr/arastirma-alanlari/geri-kazanim-teknolojilerigeri \ http://kte.mam.tubitak.gov.tr/tr/arastirma-alanlari/geri-kazanim-teknolojilerigeri \ http://kte.mam.tubitak.gov.tr/tr/arastirma-alanlari/geri-kazanim-teknolojilerigeri \ http://kte.mam.tubitak.gov.tr/tr/arastirma-alanlari/geri-kazanim-teknolojilerigeri \ http://kte.mam.tubitak.gov.tr/tr/arastirma-alanlari/geri-kazanim-teknolojilerigeri \ http://kte.mam.tubitak.gov.tr/tr/arastirma-alanlari/geri-kazanim-teknolojilerigeri \ http://kte.mam.tubitak.gov.tr/tr/arastirma-alanlari/geri-kazanim-teknolojilerigeri \ http://kte.mam.tubitak.gov.tr/tr/arastirma-teknolojilerigeri \ http://kte.mam.tubitak.$

Retrieved from http://Pexels Free photo 02.03.2017

Retrieved from http://Pexels Free photo 10.03.2017

Retrieved from http://Pexels Free photo 17.03.2017

Retrieved from http://zanda.com/items/things/17.02.2017

Retrieved from https://turkiyeburslari.gov.tr/turkiyede-yasam/turk-mutfagi/ resim aşçı (Şubat 2017)

shutterstock.com 03/04/2017

DICTIONARIES

Retrieved from http://dictionary.cambridge.org/11/01/2017

Retrieved from http://ldoceonline.com/ 14/04/2017

Retrieved from http://macmillandictionary.com/ 13/01/2017

Retrieved from http://oxfordlearnersdictionaries.com/ 01/05/2017

Retrieved from https://merriam-webster.com 03/02/2017